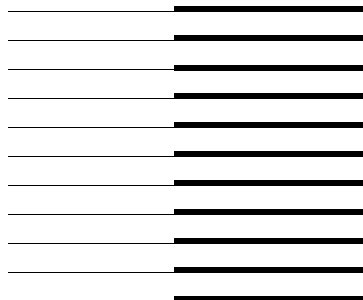# Océ Repro Desk

User Manual

océ

Océ-Technologies B.V.

This manual contains a description of the Océ Repro Desk software version 4.30.5.

Trademarks

Products in this manual are referred to by their trade names.
In most, if not all cases, these designations are claimed as trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

Copyright

US

Table of Contents

Chapter 6

Handling jobs

Chapter 7

Check and process drawings

Chapter 9

Imaging properties

Chapter 10

Set pen parameters

Chapter 11

Define Stamps and Overlays

Chapter 15

Print on an Océ 9400

Chapter 16

Print on an Océ 9600

Chapter 17

Print on Océ 9700 or Océ 9800

Chapter 18

Print on Océ 3165

Chapter 19

Unattended printing

Chapter 20

Multiple machine support

Chapter 21

Chapter 22

Chapter 26

ApFTP: Remote Client

Chapter 27

Supported RCF commands

Chapter 28

Supported OJT commands

Chapter 29

Key Operator Settings

Appendix A

Miscellaneous

Chapter 1
Introduction

océ

What is Océ Repro Desk

Océ Repro Desk is a software application that is used for high speed digital printing. The complete Océ Repro Desk system consists of two major software applications: Océ Repro Desk Server and Océ Repro Desk Remote Client.

Océ Repro Desk Server

Océ Repro Desk Server is a application for printing or archiving digital files. Océ Repro Desk Server contains software for receiving jobs from remote clients by modem, network, FTP or disks, as well as tools for organizing, preparing and printing digital files.

Received jobs can be modified, using the same facilities as offered by the Remote Client application to create the job.

Océ Repro Desk Scan-to-file is an optional software application, used to scan paper originals and store them as digital files.

Océ Repro Desk Remote Client

The Océ Repro Desk Remote Client application is the client version of the Océ Repro Desk system.

There are three versions:
- Océ Repro Desk Remote Client, which enables you to create a job, process, preview and submit drawings for printing via LAN, modem and FTP communication. You can print check prints on an A3/A4 (A or B) size Windows printer. When you are satisfied with the appearance of the drawing, you can print to an Océ 9400, 9600, 9700 or 9800 server on a local network or via modem / ISDN or internet FTP connections.
- Océ Repro Desk Remote Client LAN, permits you to create a print job, process, preview and submit drawings for printing via LAN communication.

You can print check prints on an A3/A4 (A or B) size Windows printer or print to an Océ 9400, 9600, 9700 or 9800 server on a local network

■ Océ Repro Desk FM Remote (Facilities Management), which enables you to create a print job, process, preview and submit drawings via LAN communication (only), without the facility to create queues.

Océ Repro Desk Remote Client enables you (the customer) to take responsibility for the actual output and not the reprographer or print room operator. As you are the best person to verify and approve the proposed output, Repro Desk Remote Client provides all the tools needed to do so.

Thus, Repro Desk Remote Client permits you to define job settings, pre-process and view the proposed output on a WYSIWYG basis.

Additionally, Repro Desk Remote Client provides the you with intuitive, meaningful feedback and pre-emptive warnings before a print job is actually sent to the server.

Some users may already be using (Océ) applications that produce RCF commands. For this purpose, Repro Desk includes support for RCF output (see 'Supported RCF commands' on page 479).

The concept, Remote version

The complete concept of the Océ Repro Desk Remote Client version can be
summarized in the following illustration:
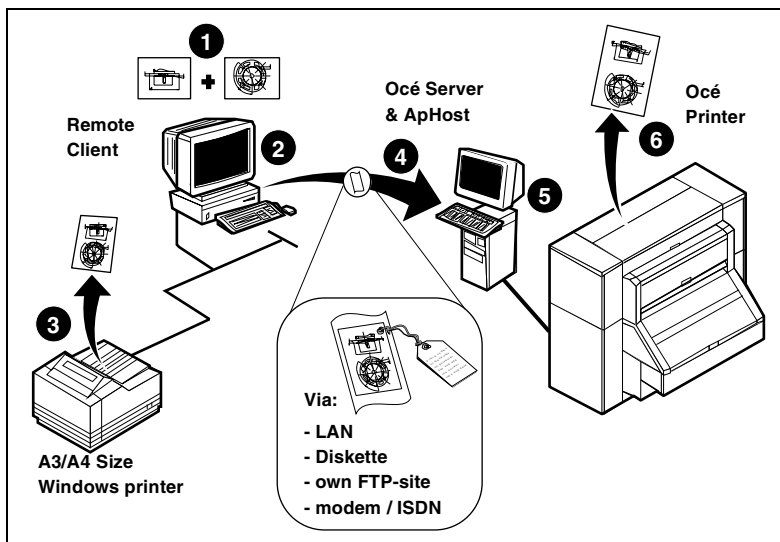
[1] Concept Repro Desk

1 You prepare your job at your local Repro Desk Remote Client.

2 Repro Desk processes the files into vector image compressed format (VIC
file).

3 You check your job on a local Windows printer.

4 Depending on the version of the Repro Desk Remote Client:
You save your job on a diskette which is sent to the print server
or
You send your job via a modem/ISDN to the print server
or
You send your job via your own FTP site to the job printer.

5 Your job is loaded on the Repro Desk Server.

6 The job is printed on the Océ printer (Océ 9400, 9600, 9700 or 9800) or on a
Windows printer.

The concept, LAN version

The complete concept of the Océ Repro Desk Remote Client LAN version can be summarized in the following illustration:
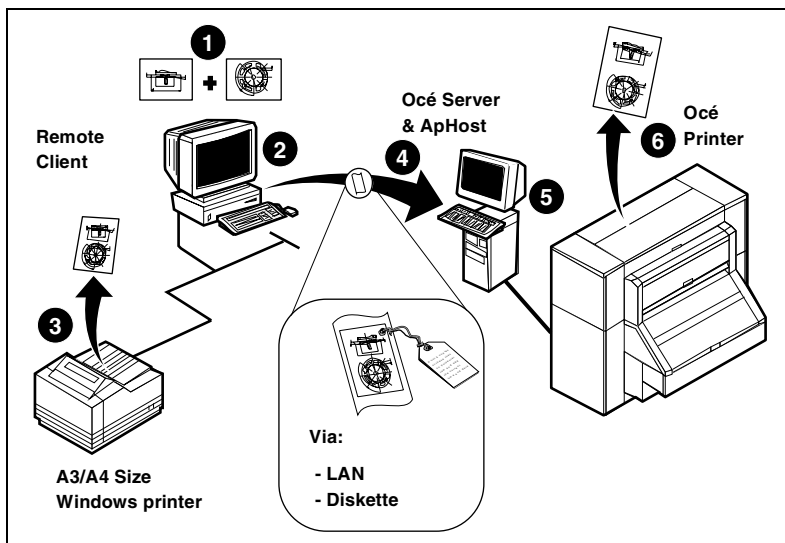
[2] Concept Repro Desk Remote Client LAN

1 You prepare your job at your local Repro Desk Remote Client LAN.

2 Repro Desk processes the file(s) into Vector Image Compressed format (VIC file).

3 You check your job on a local A3/A4 size Windows printer.

4 You save your job on a diskette which is sent to the print server.
or
You send your job via local area network directly to the queue of the job printer.
or
You send your job via your own LAN to the job printer.

5 Your job is loaded on the Repro Desk Server.

6 The job is printed on an Océ printer (Océ 9400, Océ 9600, Océ 9700 or Océ 9800).

The concept, Facilities Management

Facilities Management describes the placement of reprographer-owned large-format printers and controllers at a customer's site so they can perform local printing. The reprographer charges the customer for use of the equipment, as determined by a meter on each device or accounting information software that keeps track of printing.

In those Facilities Management installations, the customer's personnel don't need all the functions of ReproDesk Remote. Using FM Remote the customer can process files and send them via LAN to Océ Repro Desk Server, also installed at the customer site. Repro Desk Server is a workstation that hosts the software; it is not an operating system server. The FM Remote users cannot print to Océ equipment, send files via modem or FTP, or create/configure queues. They can print to a local Windows printer and send files to the server-based Repro Desk installation at their site.

Default is set to off for all forms of accounting in FM Remote. Because you cannot print to the Océ equipment with FM Remote, accounting is irrelevant.

JOB.INI set to FM configuration. The installation of Repro Desk Remote and FM Remote put exactly the same files in the exact same locations. The computer knows the difference though, because the installation process inserts a value in the registry letting job.exe know that the FM Remote button (and therefore the FM Remote settings) was chosen in the Major Product dialog box. All of this happens behind the scenes; no additional steps are required beyond those in the regular installation procedure.

Reprographers can customize the work order if they wish and save the customized work order to a disk, according to the instructions in chapter 23, 'Work order customizer' on page 411. They can then install this customized version at the FM remote site, using the instructions in the same chapter.

Resumé of the Océ Repro Desk products

Océ Repro Desk Remote   Used to set up remote communications from customer to Reprographer.

Océ Repro Desk FM Remote   Used to set up client / server systems within a customer's organization. Print and Queue buttons are disabled, along with the Communications function in 'Send job to'. Windows printing is available.

Océ Repro Desk Remote LAN   Unlimited use of Océ Repro Desk within an organization with the ability to set up queues and communications.

Some definitions

ODBC Open Database Connectivity

Sheet accounting Also known as ODBC sheet accounting, which tracks information based on drawings rather than jobs. Information about each drawing is logged in one record.

JOB.INI The initialization file that contains default settings for such things as paper sizes and directories. In Repro Desk 4.25, a similar file, job.xml has been added, which is affiliated with the new graphical interface: Configuration Manager. We urge customers not to attempt to modify job.ini or job. xml files. Instead, you can go to the 'Configure' menu and choose 'Defaults' to get the 'Configuration' dialog box with many tabs, or 'Advanced' to get the 'Configuration Manager'.

FM Configuration The group of default settings for FM Remote contained in the job.ini.

WOC Work Order Customizer (see page 411).

Getting help

In addition to the User Manual, Océ Repro Desk software version 4.30 has Windows on-line help.

On-line help

If you need help while using the Océ Repro Desk software, the on-line help provides a quick explanation of options and procedures.

▼ **Accessing the on-line help**

1 From the Help menu, choose Index.
The help dialogue box appears.
2 Select the index tab and follow the instructions.

Tool tips

Tool Tips provide a short explanation of the button your mouse is pointing at. Point at a button with the mouse, and wait a second or two. A box appears with a short explanation of the function of the button.

About this manual

This manual is part of a user documentation set consisting of two manuals:

■ Océ Repro Desk User Manual, (this manual)
■ Océ 9600 Repro Desk System Hardware User Manual.

The User Manual covers all software related aspects of Océ Repro Desk. The Hardware User Manual contains a description of all hardware elements of the Océ Repro Desk printer.

Chapter 2
Installation

océ

Introduction to installation

At the reprographic shop

The server PC software includes:
- Repro Desk Server
- ApHost (communications software).

Installation procedure at the reprographic shop

Install Repro Desk Server.

During the installation,you have the opportunity to install ApHost as well. (If you wish, ApHost can be installed later).

Prior to installing at a client site, a user ID is created on the Repro Desk Server PC in ApHost for each remote site.

After you install Repro Desk, you must customize the work order for your Remote Client users.

At the client site

The remote PC software includes:
- Repro Desk Remote
- ApModem (communications software).

Installation procedure at the client site

The 'Diskette Customizer' is run to setup a script file and cutomize a *.ini* file to make it possible for the remote PC to dial in to the server PC.

Repro Desk Remote is then installed.

During the installation,you have the opportunity to install ApModem as well. (If you wish, ApModem can be installed later).

After ApModem is installed, you are prompted to configure the modem, connection, etc.

Install Océ Repro Desk Server

Prior to installing the software, be sure to have the CD key available as well as the Authorization code that enables the print capability.

■ Read and follow the instructions on the Welcome screen.
■ Carefully read the Software Licence Agreement screen.

▼ **Install Océ Repro Desk Server**

   1 Place the CD in the CD-ROM drive.
   A message appears 'Setup will now determine your system configuration'.
   2 Click 'OK'.
   Setup displays a System configuration.
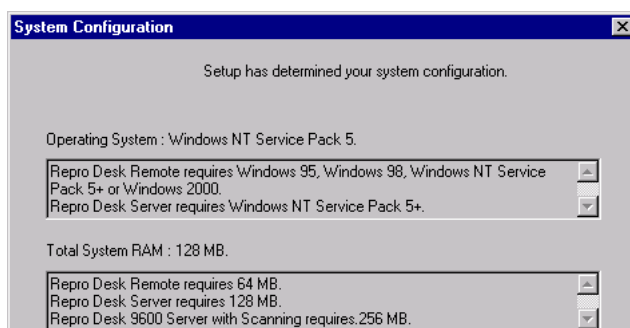
[3] Partial System configuration window

   This screen informs you about your system configuration, hardware and software.
   It also informs you about the Repro Desk requiremens to ensure a correct installation, before you continue to install.
   3 Read this dialog box carefully.
   Note: *If some areas are incorrect, make a screen capture of the dialog (For example, press ALT and PRINT SCREEN key) then save the file. Thiswill help correct the system requirements.*
   4 If all areas of the 'System Configuration' dialog allow a correct installation, press 'Continue'.

The following dialog box appears.
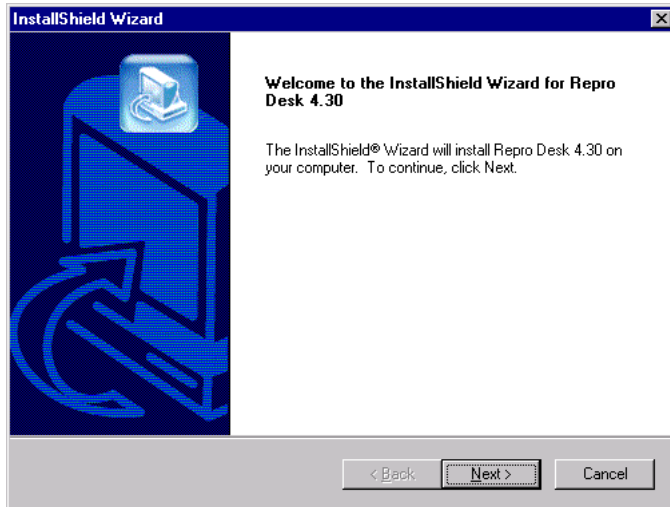
5 Click the 'Next>' button to continue.

The 'Software License Agreement' dialog box appears.

6 Click the 'Yes' button to continue.

The 'User Information' dialog box appears.

7 Enter the appropriate user name and company information.

8 Click the 'Next>' button to continue.

The 'Major Products'dialog box appears.
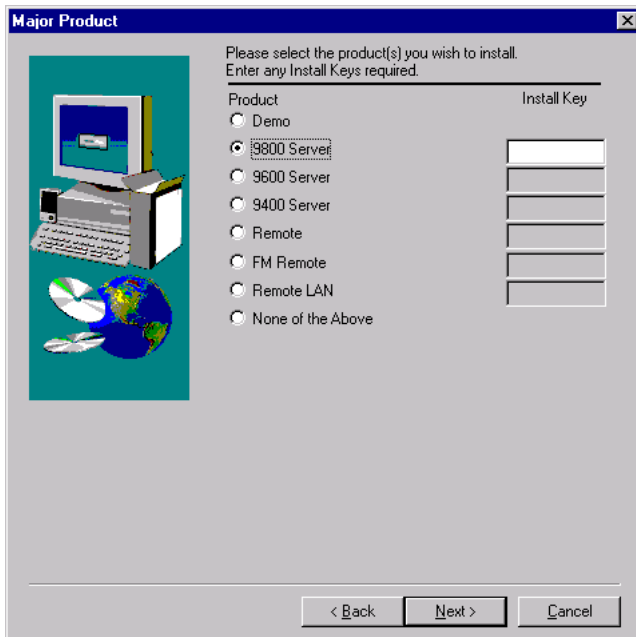
[4] Select major products

9 Select the desired Server.
10 Enter the appropriate Install Key in the 'Install Key' text box.
11 Click the 'Next**>**' button to continue.
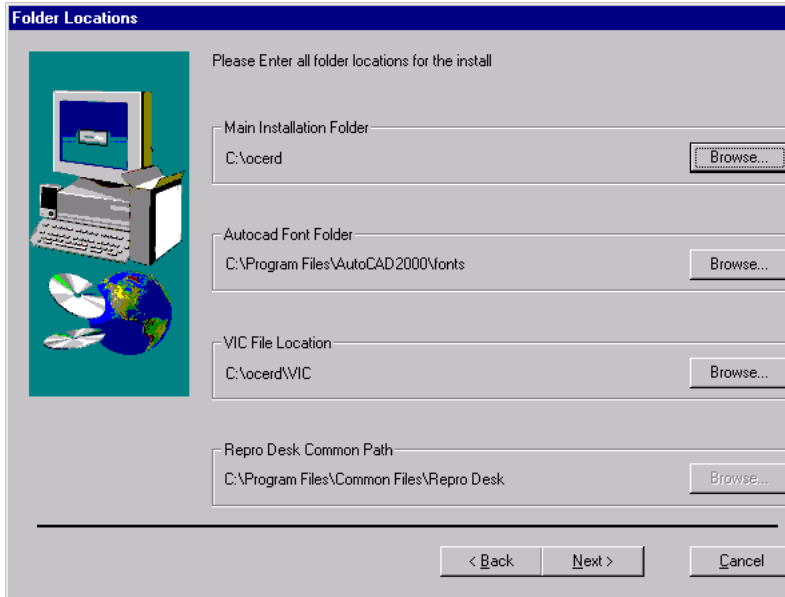
The 'Minor Products' dialog box appears.
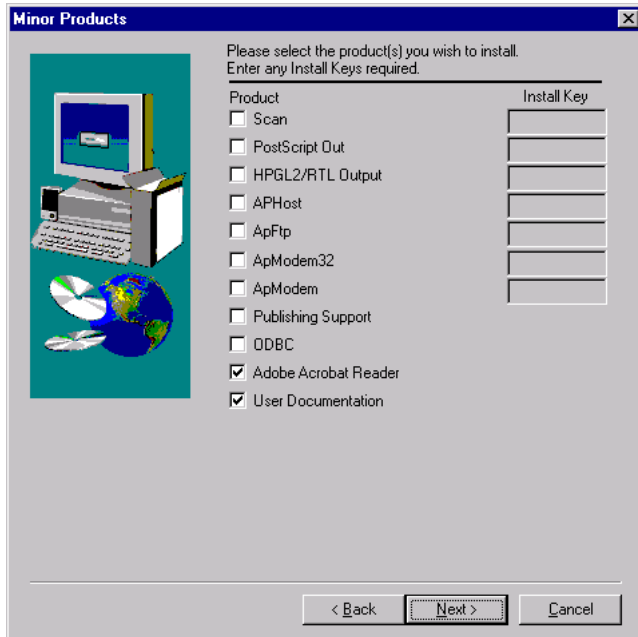
[5] Select minor products

12 Select the desired products.

13 Enter the Install Key in the appropriate 'Install Key' text boxes.

14 Click the 'Next**>**' button to continue.

The 'Folder Locations' dialog box appears.
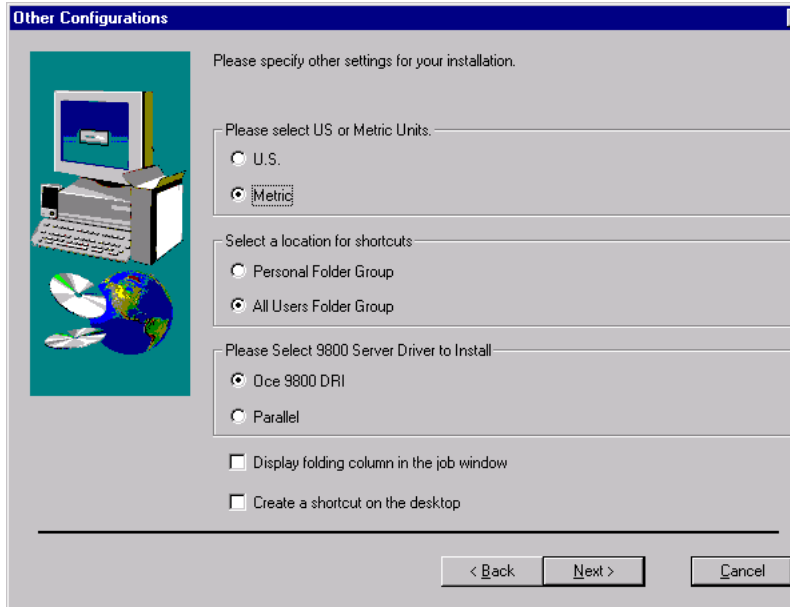
[6] Folder Locations

15 If you wish to change the location, click the 'Browse' button and select a different location.
16 Click the 'Next' button.

The 'Other Configurations' dialog box appears.

[7] Other Configurations

17 Select one radio button in each of the three sections.
18 If necessary, select either or both of the check boxes.
19 Click the 'Next>' button to continue.

The 'Select Program Folder' dialog box appears.

InstallShield Wizard

Select Program Folder

Select the location where setup is to create new shortcuts.

Setup will add program shortcuts to the Program Folder listed below. You may type a new folder name, or select one from the Existing Folders list. Click Next to continue.

Program Folder:

Repro Desk

Existing Folders:

Administrative Tools (Common)
Adobe Acrobat 4.0
Startup
Windows NT 4.0 Option Pack

InstallShield

< Back   Next >   Cancel

[8] Select Program Folder

20 Accept the defaults or choose another location.

21 Click the 'Next>' button.
The file copy process begins.
Based on the minor products and communications software installed, additional message boxes appear, asking if you wish to install these items.

22 Respond as appropriate to these message boxes.

23 Near the end of the copy process, you are prompted for the location of the custom files. Enter the path and press 'OK'.
If you have no custom files, press 'Cancel'.

24 When the copy process completes, the 'Setup Complete' dialog box appears.
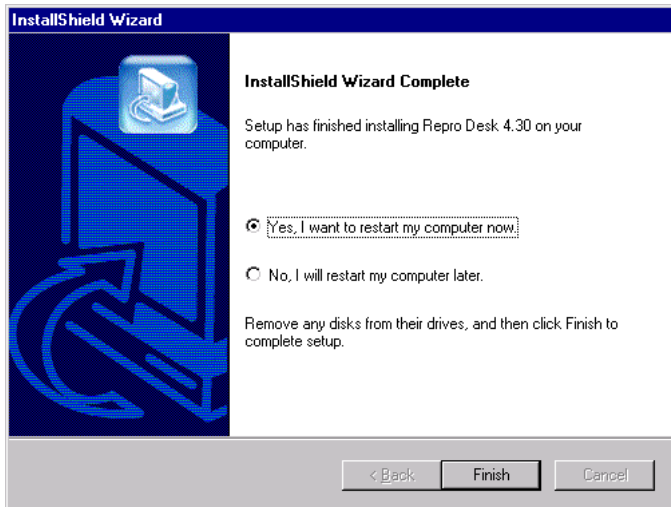
[9] Select Restart

25 Select the desired option.
26 Click the Finish button.
At this point you may be prompted to configure your communications software.
Note: *Please remember that you must restart the computer prior to using the software.*

Install Repro Desk Remote at a Client Site (ApModem)

Prior to installation be sure that the following items are available:

- Install key for Remote
- User entry in ApHost
- ApModem script file

The remote installation requires preparatory work to be done prior to visiting the client site and installing the software.

▼ **Set up ApHost for the New User**

1 Decide on a First Name, Last Name, and Password for your new user.
2 Add that user to your ApHost user list. (See 'Users' on page 433).
3 Write these down for step 6 in the next procedure: 'Create an ApModem customized script file'.

Create customized files

The 'Diskette Customizer' utility is included with Repro Desk. The reprographer can use it to create an ApModem script file and copy it to a diskette, CD or network drive.

The Diskette Customizer also contains a section that allows the reprographer to set default Work Order values for Remote customers.

▼ **Create an ApModem customized script file**

1 Go to the 'Configure' menu
2 Select 'Diskette Customizer'.
   The Diskette Customizer dialog box appears:
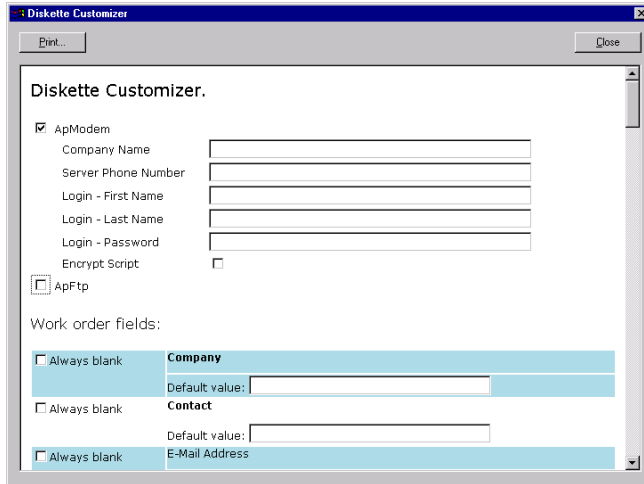
[10] Diskette customizer dialog

3 Select the 'ApModem' check box.

4 Enter the appropriate company name.

5 Enter the phone number for the modem.

6 Type in the user name and password *exactly* as you entered them into ApHost (see step 3 on page 36), being especially careful of spaces before or after. They will be accepted by ApHost as part of the name or password.

7 If you don't want anyone to be able to read the script after it is created, click the 'Encrypt Script' check box. The downside to this is that you won't be able to edit it in Notepad if needed.

8 Change the Work Order Defaults as needed. See 'Customize the work order defaults' on page 50.

9 Click 'Submit' at the bottom of the Diskette Customizer dialog box.
A preview of the Work Order information appears.

10 Click 'Back' to make more changes in the Diskette Customizer dialog box, or click 'Save Changes' to continue.

11 A 'Select Directory' dialog box appears.

12 Navigate to the appropriate directory and click OK.
The Diskette Customizer creates the following directories and files:
- apmodem.scri
- formoptions.dat
- reproinfo.dat
- winnt (containing jobcomm.ini)
- wopics (containing logobitmap.gif and logobitmap2.gif).

Install Océ Repro Desk Remote

Prior to installing the software, be sure to have the Install Key available as well as the Activation Key that enables the print capability.

- Read and follow the instructions on the Welcome screen.
- Carefully read the Software Licence Agreement screen.

▼ **Install Océ Repro Desk Remote Serve**

1 Place the CD in the CD-ROM drive.
A message appears 'Setup will now determine your system configuration'.

2 Click 'OK'.
Setup displays a System configuration.

System Configuration	☒
Setup has determined your system configuration.	

Operating System : Windows NT Service Pack 5.

Repro Desk Remote requires Windows 95, Windows 98, Windows NT Service Pack 5+ or Windows 2000.
Repro Desk Server requires Windows NT Service Pack 5+.

Total System RAM : 128 MB.

Repro Desk Remote requires 64 MB.
Repro Desk Server requires 128 MB.
Repro Desk 9600 Server with Scanning requires.256 MB.

[11] Partial System configuration window

This screen informs you about your system configuration, hardware and software.
It also informs you about the Repro Desk requiremens to ensure a correct installation, before you continue to install.

3 Read this dialog box carefully.
Note: *If some areas are incorrect, make a screen capture of the dialog (For example, press ALT and PRINT SCREEN key) then save the file. Thiswill help correct the system requirements.*

4 If all areas of the 'System Configuration' dialog allow a correct installation, press 'Continue'.

5 Select a language.

The following dialog box appears.

Welcome to the Reprodesk Setup program. This program will install Reprodesk on your computer.

It is strongly recommended that you exit all Windows programs before running this Setup program.

Click Cancel to quit Setup and then close any programs you have running. Click Next to continue with the Setup program.

WARNING: This program is protected by copyright law and international treaties.

Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this program, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under law.

6 Click the Next> button to continue.

The Software License Agreement dialog box appears.

7 Click the Yes button to continue.

The User Information dialog box appears.

8 Enter the appropriate user name and company information.

9 Click the 'Next**>'** button to continue.

The 'Major Products' dialog box appears.

[12] Select major products

10 Select the desired Remote products.
11 Enter the install key in the appropriate 'Install Key' text box.
12 Click the 'Next>' button to continue.

The 'Minor Product's dialog box appears.
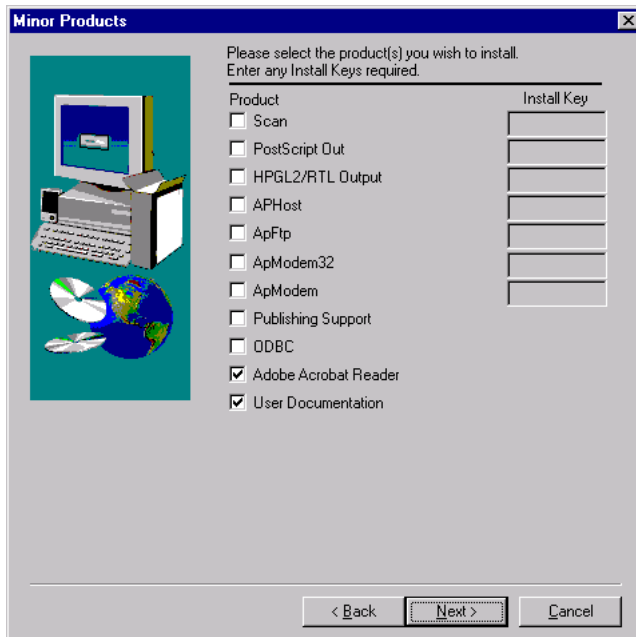
[13] Select minor products

13 Select the options required.

14 Select the appropriate ApModem option.

15 Enter the Install Key in the appropriate 'Install Key' text boxes.

16 Click the Next> button to continue.

The 'Folders Locations' dialog box appears.

Folder Locations

Please Enter all folder locations for the install

Main Installation Folder
C:\ocerd   Browse...

Autocad Font Folder
C:\Program Files\AutoCAD2000\fonts   Browse...

VIC File Location
C:\ocerd\VIC   Browse...

Repro Desk Common Path
C:\Program Files\Common Files\Repro Desk   Browse...

< Back   Next >   Cancel
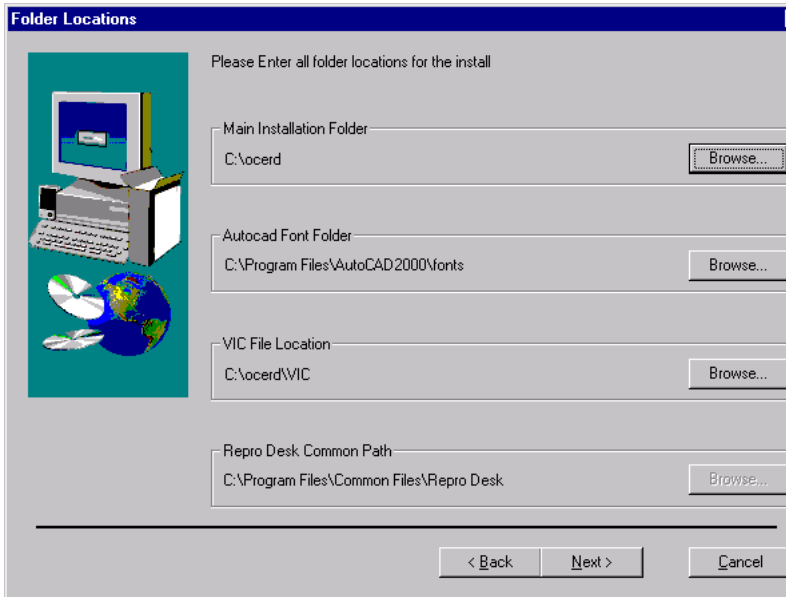
[14] Folder Locations

If you wish to change the location, click the 'Browse' button and select a different location.

17 Click the Next> button.

The 'Other Configurations' dialog box appears.
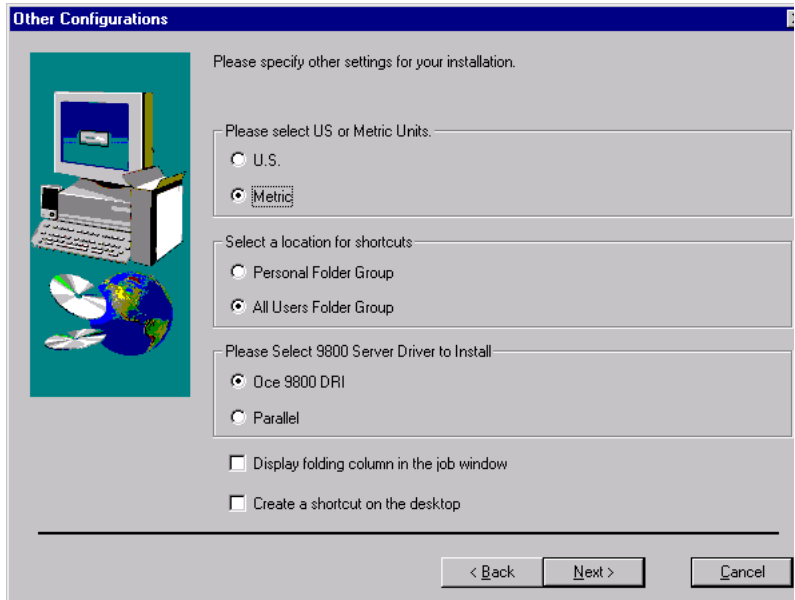
[15] Other Configurations

18 Select one radio button in each of the three sections.

19 If necessary, select either or both of the check boxes.

20 Click the Next> button.

The 'Select Program Folder' dialog box appears.
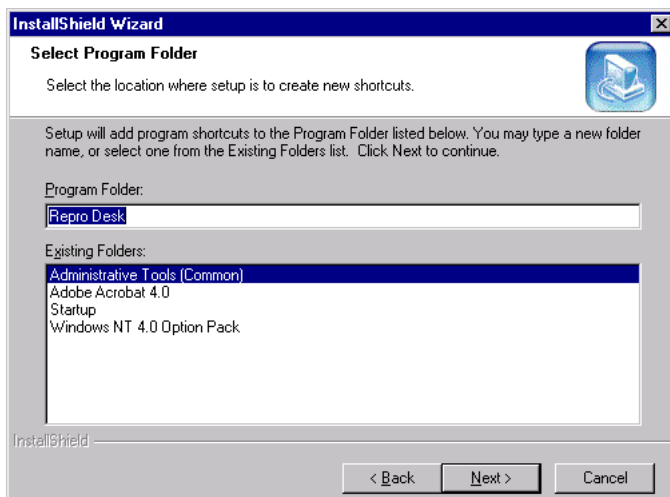
[16] Select Program Folder

21 Accept the defaults or choose another location.

22 Click the 'Next>' button.

The file copy process begins.

23 Near the end of the copy process, you are prompted for the location of the custom files. Enter the path and press 'OK'.

If you have no custom files, press 'Cancel'.

When the copy process completes, you will be prompted to configure ApModem.

24 Click the 'Yes' button.

A dialog box appears allowing you to select the appropriate modem and various other settings.

One of the following dialog boxes appear, based on which APModem option you selected earlier in the installation process.

■ Either:
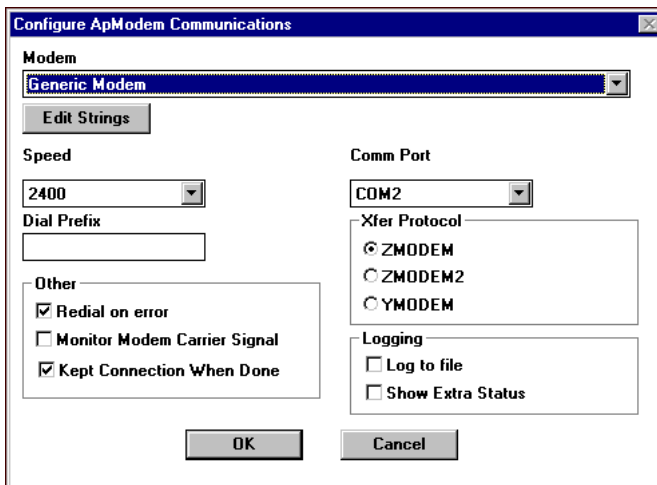
[17] Configure ApModem

■ or:
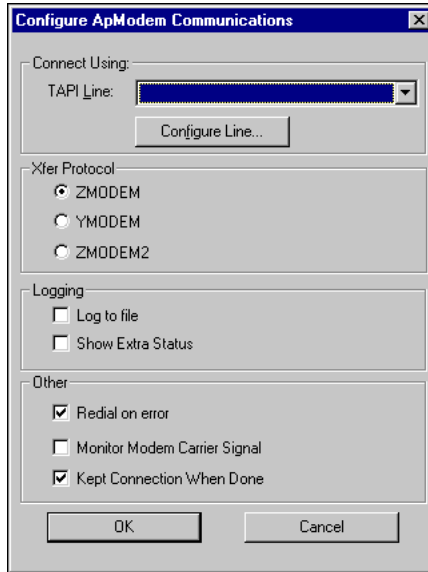
[18] Configure ApModem 32

See 'ApModem: Remote Client' on page 447 for a more detailed look at how to best configure ApModem.

25 When finished, click the **'**OK' button.

The 'Installation Complete' dialog box appears.

26 Click the 'Finish' button.

Note: *Please remember that you must restart the computer prior to using the software.*

Configure communications

See also 'Configure the software' on page 67.

Note: *For Repro Desk LAN, the Communications settings are not used.*

▼ **Configure communications**

1 Start Océ Repro Desk.
2 Go to the 'Configure' menu.
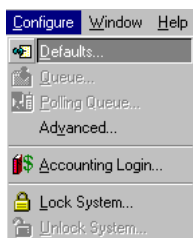
[19] Configure menu

3 Select 'Defaults'.
   The 'Configuration' dialog box appears.
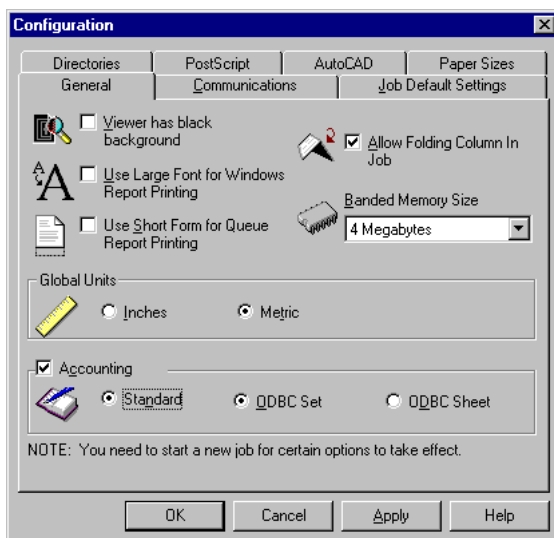
[20] Configure the software: General tab

4 Click the 'Communications' tab.

The following options appear.

[21] Communications tab

5 Select the 'ApModem' entry.

6 Click the 'Configure' button.

The 'Configure Communications Method' dialog box appears.
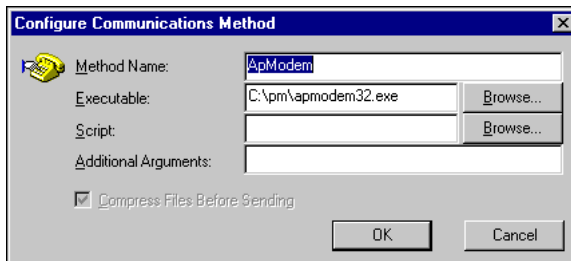
[22] Configure Communications Method

Note: *Script refers to the file you created with the Diskette Customizer,called 'apmodem.scr'. (See 'Create customized files' on page 36).*

7 Be sure that the entries in the boxes are pointing to the correct files.

8 In the script field, click 'Browse' to navigate to the file you created with Diskette Customizer. See 'Create Customized Files' on page 49.

9 Click the 'OK' button.

10 Click the 'OK' button in the 'Configuration' dialog box.

Install Repro Desk Remote at a Client Site (ApFtp)

Before you install ApFtp at a remote site be sure that the following settings are in place on the server PC.

■ FTP Server Information
Third party FTP server software needs to be installed prior to setting up remote clients with ApFtp. The software should be configured to handle multiple users, simultaneous transfers and provide the functions required to meet the remote clients' needs.

■ User Rights

▼ **Establish user rights**

1 If your users are sending files directly to a queue via FTP, the following rights and settings need to be in place:
- Read
- Write
- Delete
- Make Directory
- Change Directory
- Subdirectories (sometimes referred to as "Inherit subdirectories").
Note: *Directory Listing is NOT required for this to work.*

- The 'FTP to Queue' check box needs to be enabled in ApFTP.
- The 'home directory' for each user should be the queue folder
(For example, D:\incoming).
Note: *If FTP is setup without the 'FTP To Queue' feature enabled for remote customers to be able to send jobs, the home directory can be any folder, but it should NOT be a queue folder.*

2 If your customers are not sending files directly to a queue via FTP the following rights and setting must be in place:
- Read
- Write
- The 'FTP to Queue' check box needs to be disabled in ApFTP.
The 'FTP to Queue' feature allows the incoming FTP jobs to be automatically put into an existing queue. If this is checked, then all jobs sent via this method will be extracted and added to the queue automatically. If this feature is not

checked, then the file will arrive as a zip file in the users home directory, named after the time (24 hour) which it was submitted. (for example, 102413.zip means it came in at 10:24:13 am)

Prior to installation at a remote client site, be sure that the following list of items is available:
■ Install Key for Remote
■ User Entry in FTP Server Program

The remote installation requires preparatory work to be done prior to visiting the client site and installing the software.

Create Customized Files

The 'Diskette Customizer' utility is included with Repro Desk Server. Reprographers can use it to generate an ApFTP configuration file and save it to a client's Repro Desk Remote diskette, CD or network drive.

▼ **Create an ApFTP customized script file**
To generate a set of remote files for an ApFTP installation, follow these steps:

1 Go to the 'Configure' menu
2 Select 'Diskette Customizer'.
   The 'Diskette Customizer' dialog box appears:

[23] Diskette Customizer dialog box

3 Select the 'ApFTP' check box and enter the following information:
   - The domain name of your FTP server (For example, ftp.reprographer.com) or your IP address.
   - Your client's login ID.
   - Your client's password.

4 Make changes to the 'Work Order Defaults' as needed.
   See 'Customize the work order defaults', below.

5 Click 'Submit' at the bottom of the form.
   A preview of the Work Order information appears.

6 Click 'Back' to make more changes.

7 Click 'Save Changes' to continue.
   The 'Select Directory' dialog box appears.
   Navigate to the directory where you wish to save the file and click 'OK'.

   The Diskette Customizer saves the following directories and files:
   - formoptions.dat
   - reproinfo.dat
   - winnt (containing jobcomm.ini)
   - wopics (containing logobitmap.gif and logobitmap2.gif).

Customize the work order defaults

Instructions for the work order default section of the Diskette Customizer are the same for reprographers who wish to install either ApModem or ApFTP for their clients.

▼   **To use the Work Order Defaults section**

1 Go to the 'Configure' menu

2 Select 'Diskette Customizer'.
   The 'Diskette Customizer' dialog box appears.

If necessary, scroll down slightly to see the Work Order Defaults section:

[24] Diskette Customizer

3 Choose one of the following for each field:

■ To set up default values that will appear each time the customer accesses the work order, type the appropriate information in the text boxes.

■ To get the fields to show up as blank each time the customer accesses the work order, select the 'Always Blank' check box.

■ To get the fields to retain the last value the customer used, deselect the 'Always Blank' check box and leave the 'Default Value' text box blank.

4 Click 'Submit' at the bottom of the form.

5 A preview of the information appears.

6 Click 'Submit' at the bottom of the Diskette Customizer dialog box.

A preview of the Work Order information appears.

7 Click 'Back' to make more changes in the Diskette Customizer dialog.

8 Click 'Save Changes' to continue.

Install Océ Repro Desk Remote

Before you install the software, be sure to have the Install Key available as well Sas the Activation Key that enables the print capability.

- Read and follow the instructions on the Welcome screen.
- Carefully read the Software Licence Agreement screen.

▼ **Install Océ Repro Desk Remote**

1 Place the CD in the CD-ROM drive.
A message appears 'Setup will now determine your system configuration'.

2 Click 'OK'.
Setup displays a System configuration.
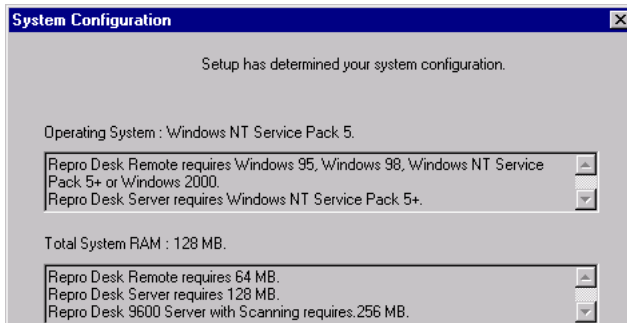
[25] Partial System configuration window

This screen informs you about your system configuration, hardware and software.
It also informs you about the Repro Desk requiremens to ensure a correct installation, before you continue to install.

3 Read this dialog box carefully.
Note: *If some areas are incorrect, make a screen capture of the dialog (For example, press ALT and PRINT SCREEN key) then save the file. Thiswill help correct the system requirements.*

4 If all areas of the 'System Configuration' dialog allow a correct installation, press 'Continue'.

5 Select a language.

The following dialog box appears.

6 Click the 'Next>' button to continue.

The 'Software License Agreement' dialog box appears.

7 Click the 'Yes' button to continue.

The 'User Information' dialog box appears.

8 Enter the appropriate user name and company information.

9 Click the 'Next**>**' button to continue.

The Major Products dialog box appears.
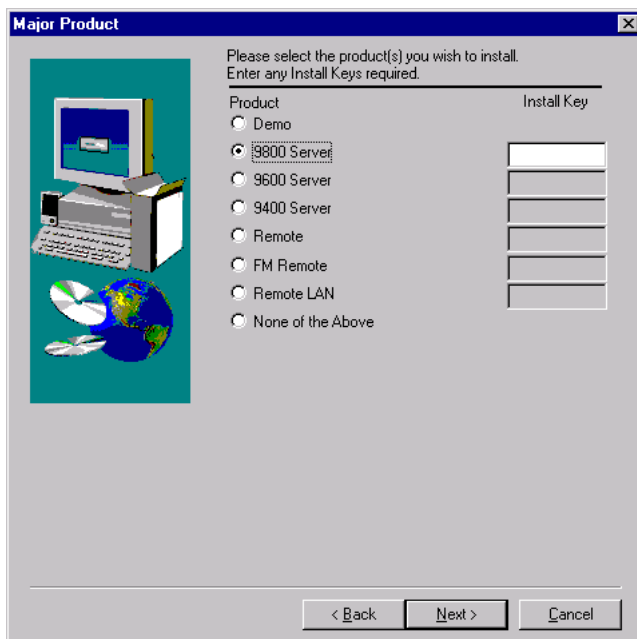
[26] Select major products

10 Select the desired Remote products.

11 Enter the install key in the appropriate 'Install Key' text box.

12 Click the 'Next>' button to continue.

The Minor Products dialog box appears.
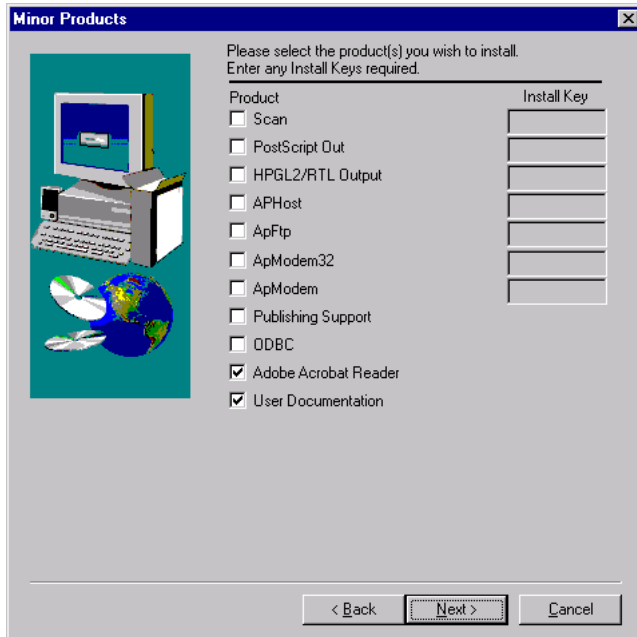
[27] Select minor products

13 Select the 'ApFTP' check box.

14 Select any other options required.

15 Enter the Install Key in the corresponding text box.

16 Click the 'Next>' button.

The 'Folders Locations' dialog box appears.

[28] Folder Locations

If you wish to change the location, click the 'Browse' button and select a different location.

17 Click the 'Next>' button.

The 'Other Configurations' dialog box appears.
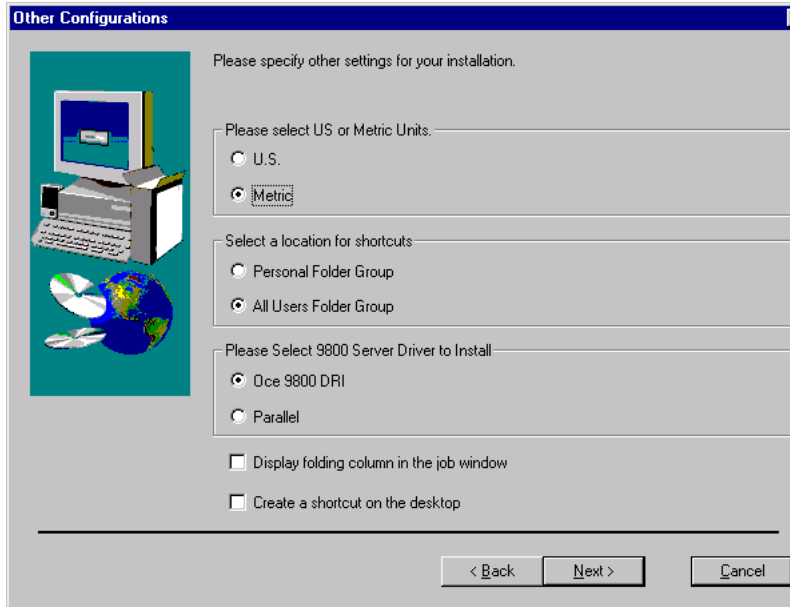
[29] Other Configurations

18 Select one radio button in each of the three sections.

19 If necessary, select either or both of the check boxes.

20 Click the 'Next>' button.

The 'Select Program Folder' dialog box appears.
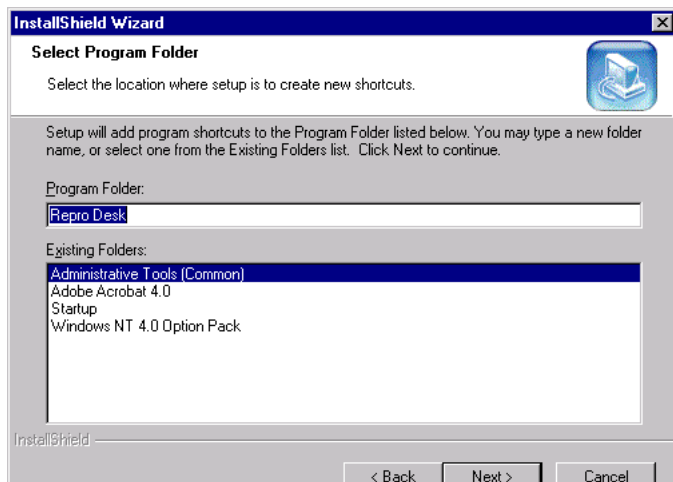
[30] Select Program Folder

21 Accept the defaults or choose another location.

Click the 'Next>' button.

When the copy process completes, you will be prompted to configure ApFTP.

22 Click the 'Yes' button.

A dialog box appears allowing you to configure FTPs.

[31] Configure ApFTP communications

23 Enter the appropriate information.

See 'ApFTP: Remote Client' on page 469 for a more detailed look at how to best configure ApFTP.

24 When finished, click the '**OK**' button.

The 'Installation Complete' dialog box appears.

25 Click the 'Finish' button.

26 After installing, the configuration is automatically entered in Repro Desk and is ready for use.

27 The master 'Install' dialog box reappears, allowing you to install additional components of the software, such as the DWG interpreter.

Uninstallation of Océ Repro Desk

Before you uninstall Océ Repro Desk software, close the Océ Repro Desk application.

▼ **To uninstall the Océ Repro Desk software**

1 Open the 'Program Group'.
2 Locate the uninstall icon in the' Océ Repro Desk' group.

Uninstall Repro Desk

3 Double click the 'Uninstall' icon.
A window pops up asking you to confirm the file deletion.
4 Click 'OK'.
The program and the .INI files are removed.

Chapter 3
Configuration

This chapter describes the Configuration Manager application. This section is intended for system administrators or advanced users.

océ

What is the Configuration Manager

The CONFIG.XML file stores all of the configuration settings for the Repro Desk program. The Configuration Manager is a user-friendly interface which allows you to view and modify the settings stored within the CONFIG.XML file. Due to the complexity of the CONFIG.XML file, it is strongly recommended that all modifications be managed through the Configuration Manager.

Access the Configuration Manager

The Configuration Manager is opened from the Configuration menu of the Repro Desk application window.

▼   **Access the Configuration Manager**

1 Go to the Configure menu.
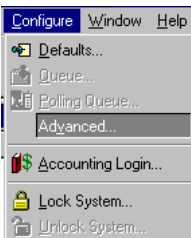
2 Select Advanced.

The Configuration Manager appears.
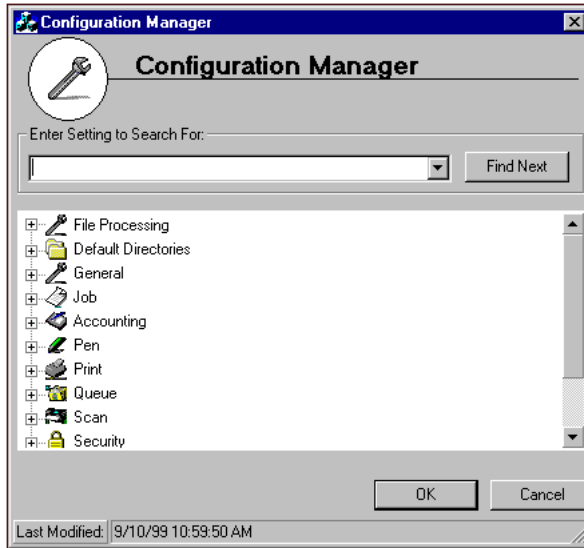
[32] Configuration manager

Note: *Please note that the program settings displayed in this window are dependent on the version of Repro Desk installed on your system.*

3 Select the desired setting.

4 Double click the setting as necessary to display the available options as shown below.
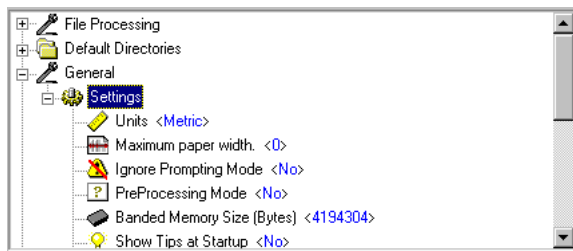
5 Select the desired option.

6 Make other changes as necessary.

7 Click the OK button to accept the changes and close the Configuration Manager window.

What the settings mean

Listed below is a brief description of the settings displayed in the Configuration Manager window.

File Processing Controls how each supported file type (ASCII, AutoCAD, CalComp, HP-GL, PostScript and VIC) is processed in the Repro Desk program.

Default Directories Controls the default storage location for drawing files as well as program related files such as labels, pen sets, scans, and VIC files.

General Controls standard program settings such as the measurement units and maximum paper size.

Job Controls default settings for job files and work orders (job tickets).

Accounting Controls the default system used for logging accounting information.

Pen Controls the default settings for any newly created pens.

Print Controls default print settings for a specified printer such as banner page, collation, delivery, folding, roll selection, stamping and stapling.

Queue Controls the default settings for queue administration and reporting.

Scan Controls scan resolution, viewing, and template settings.

Security Displays the CD keys and print secure codes used for installing the Repro Desk program and printing to one of the supported printers.

Image Viewer Controls the properties of the Viewer window such as background color

Communications Controls the communication methods used for transferring jobs between the Repro Desk Server and Repro Desk Remote applications.

Locate specific settings

Since there are so many settings that can be modified, a find feature is incorporated into the Configuration Manager. By entering a text string into the 'Enter Settings to Search for:' text box, it is possible to locate all settings containing that string.

▼ **Locate specific settings**

1 Enter a text string resembling the desired setting as closely as possible.

2 Click the Find Next button.

Find Next

3 The first setting containing the text string appears.
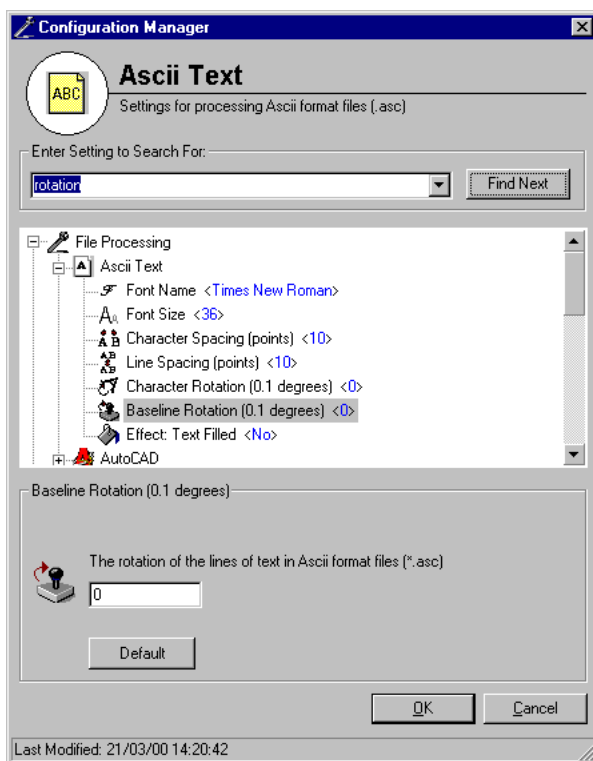
[33] An example of Find next

4 Click the Find Next button again to locate the next setting.

Reuse a previous search

The text strings used to locate settings are saved in a list attached to the text box where you entered the text string originally.

▼ **Access the search list**

1 Click the arrow at the right end of the text box.
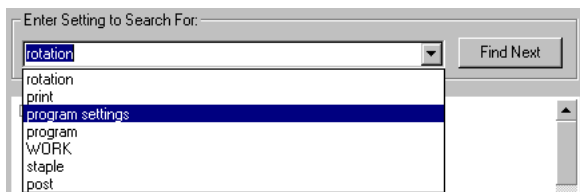
[34] Search drop down list

2 Select the desired text string from the drop down list.

3 Click the Find Next button.

Configure the software

At installation, Océ Repro Desk modem software is installed in a default directory. The default pen set, log files and job files are also saved in this directory. It may be, however, that you want to check or change any of the configuration items.

▼   **Configure the software**

1 Select 'Defaults' in the 'Configure' menu
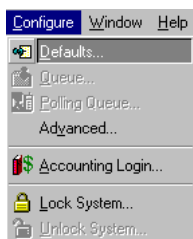
[35] Select Defaults in the Configure menu

2 The following window will appear:
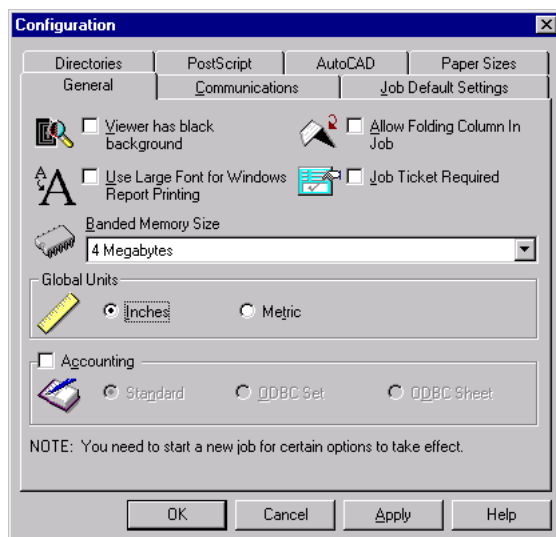
[36] Configure the software - General tab

3 Make the necessary changes (see following pages).

4 Click OK to save the changes and close the window.

General

In the General tab you can check and change:

Viewer has black background Check this box so that you will always have a black background when you open the viewer.

Use Large Font for Windows Report Printing Check this box so that when you print out an electronic work order, large fonts will be used for easier reading.

Allow Folding Column in Job Allows you to select a folding method from the Jobs window

Banded Memory Size This is the amount of banded memory that will be used when printing a file to a Windows printer. If you increase the amount of memory, performance will improve.

Global Units The default units of measurement.

Accounting You can select:
- Standard: Accounting information will be written and read from binary files
- ODBC Set: Uses Set accounting table
- ODBC Sheet: Uses Accounting information table.

See 'Accounting' on page 357 for more information.

Note: *You need to start a new job for certain options to take effect.*

Communications

Usually, the communication methods are already filled in during installation of the software. You can use this window to make changes or add new communication methods. See also 'Configure communications' on page 46.

In the Communications tab you can specify the following communication settings:
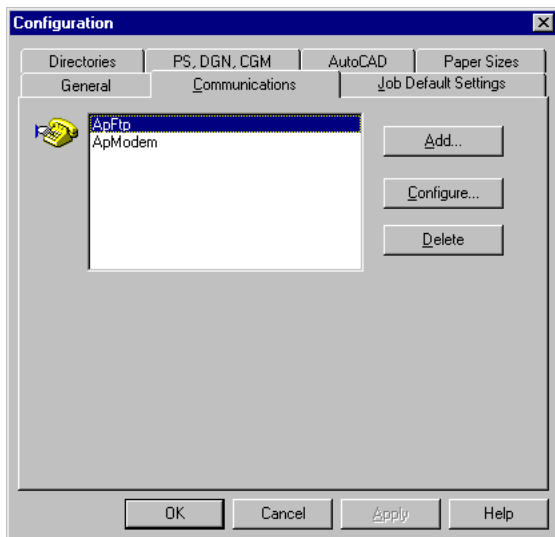
[37] Specify Communication settings

Add To add communications methods.

Configure To configure the selected communication method.

Delete To configure the selected communication method.

Note: *For communication details, see also 'ApModem: Remote Client' on page 447, 'ApHost: Server' on page 419 and 'ApFTP: Remote Client' on page 469.*

Job default settings

In the Job Default Settings tab you can check and change the following settings:
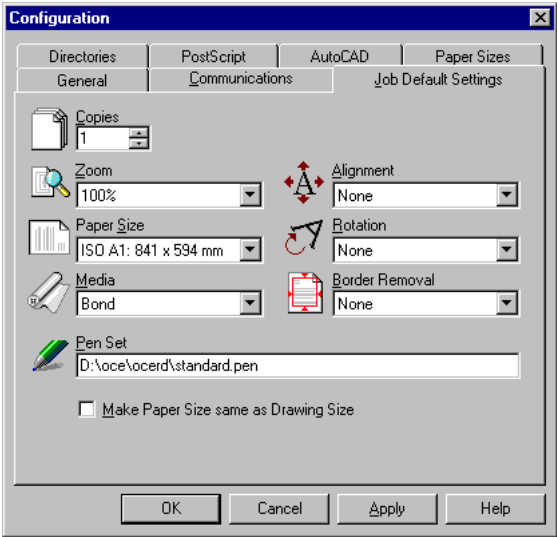
[38] Specify job default settings

Copies The default number of copies that will be applied for each file added to the job.

Zoom The default zoom ratio when printing a job. Choose between 25% and 400%. You can also select 'Fit Page'.

Paper size The paper size that will be applied by default to a drawing each time it is added to a Job.

Media The default media to be used. Choose between Bond (paper), Transparent or Film (polyester).

Pen set The name and path of the default pen set that must be applied each time a drawing is added to a Job.

Make paper size same as drawing size This means that the printer will print to the appropriate size roll whenever possible.

Alignment The alignment to be used by default.

Rotation The required rotation (in degrees) and whether you want the drawing to be mirrored.

Border Removal The required default border removal: choose 'None' or:
- 0.05" (1.3 mm)
- 0.10" (2.5 mm)
- 0.25" (6.3 mm)
- 0.50" (12.7 mm).

Directories

In the Directories tab you can check and change:
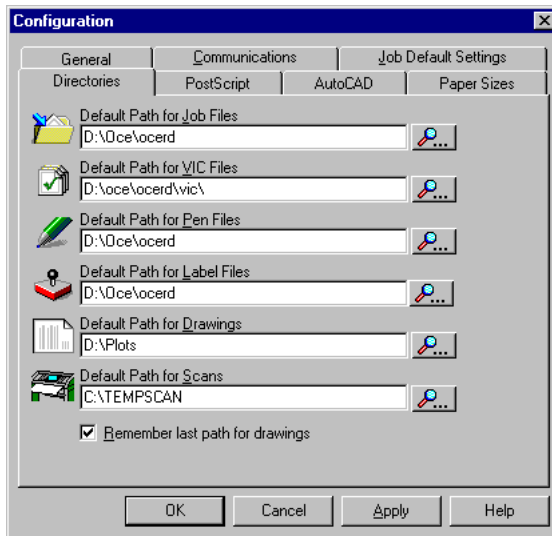
[39] Specify directories

Default path for Job Files The default path and directory where Job files will be stored.

Default path for VIC Files The default path and directory where VIC files will be stored (Vector image compressed format).

Default path for Pen Files The default path and directory where Pen Files will be stored.

Default path for Label Files The default path and directory where label files will be stored.

Default Path for Drawings The default path and directory where Drawings to be added to a job should be searched for.

Default path for Scans The default path and directory where Scans to be added to a job should be searched for.

Remember last Path for drawings Retains the last directory used in Add Files.

PostScript tab

This tab has settings for using PostScript files if you are using a supported third party application which converts PostScript to TIFF.
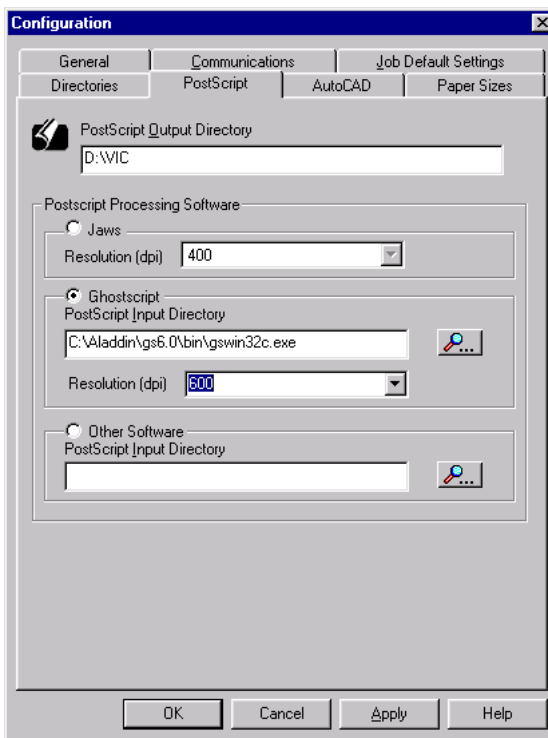
[40] Configuration: PostScript

PostScript output directory The default path and directory where the converted TIFF files will be stored. The default is C:\VIC or D:\VIC.

PostScript processing software These settings must be defined if you install an optional third-party converter. They are described in the installation instructions for the converters.

You can choose among third-party converters:
Jaws If Jaws is installed on your system, this option will be available.
You can choose the resolution from the list or type a number between 200 and 1200.

Ghostscript If Ghostscript is installed on your system, this option will be available.
Type the location of the executable file in the text box or use the Browse button to navigate to the desired location.
Choose a resolution from the list or type a number between 200 and 1200.

Other Software Reserved for future use.

Note: *If you use a* third-party converter, *you should also check Configure menu\Advanced\Configuration Manager\File Processing\PostScript for additional options.*

[41] Configuration manager - PostScript

▼   **PostScript settings**

1 If available, choose Jaws or Ghostscript.
2 Type the location of the executable or click Browse and navigate to the desired location.

Note: *You can include command line parameters if you include a space after the executable name.*

3 Choose a resolution from the list, or type a resolution between 200 and 1200.

4 Click 'Apply'.

5 Click 'OK'.

Note: *Apprentice 4.25's internal interpreter cannot read PDF files created in Acrobat 4.0. Use the third-party interpreter to read such files.*

AutoCAD tab

See 'How to process AutoCAD files' on page 123.

Paper sizes

In the Paper Sizes tab you can specify what paper sizes will appear in menus. For example, you can specify only ISO-A settings in this window. In that case, when you want to specify the paper size for a certain drawing in a Job window, you can only choose from the ISO-A sizes.
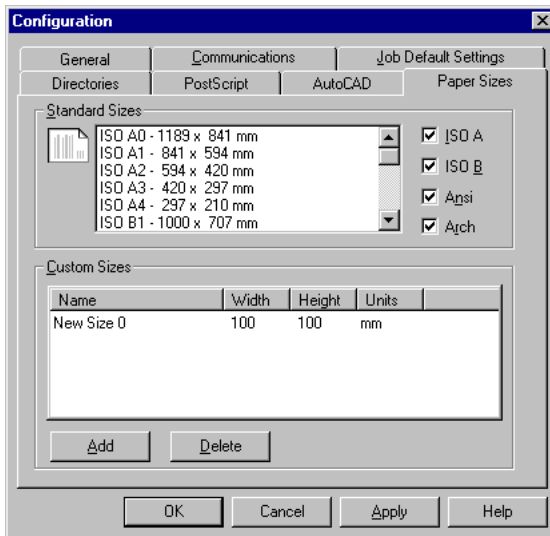
[42] Specify what paper sizes will appear in menus

Standard Sizes You can select one or more ranges of standard sizes: ISO-A, ISO-B, ANSI and Architecture.

Custom Sizes You can specify your own paper sizes, and add them to the list of available sizes.

▼ **Add a new custom size to the list**

1 Click the 'Add' button.
A new size will be added to the list
2 Specify the name of the new custom size.
3 If needed, double-click on the specified unit for the new drawing size, to switch from inches to mm and visa versa.
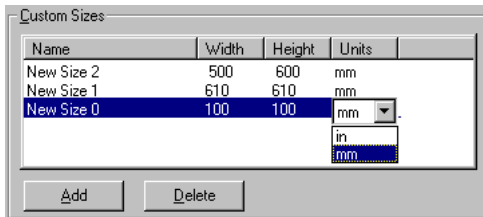
[43] Custom paper size - Units

Note: *If you change the unit afterwards, the specified width and height will change automatically to correspond to the new unit.*

4 Double click on a value to specify the width of the new drawing size.
5 Double click on a value to specify the height of the new drawing size.
6 Click 'Apply'.

▼ **Change an existing custom size**

1 Double click on any field of the custom size you want to change, and specify new settings.
2 Click 'Apply'.

▼ **Delete an existing custom size**

1 Select the custom size you want to delete.
2 Click 'Delete'.
The selected custom size will be deleted.
3 Click 'Apply'.

Chapter 4
The software interface

This chapter describes the different parts of the user interface. It also explains the different ways in which options can be accessed.

océ

Starting Océ Repro Desk

You can start Océ Repro Desk in several ways just like any other Windows program. Follow the procedure below. Quitting Océ Repro Desk is explained later in this chapter (see 'Quit Océ Repro Desk' on page 86).

In general, the server software will be pre-installed, and starts automatically. However, if problems occur contact your job printer to re-install the software, or contact Océ service if this software was provided by Océ.

▼　**Starting Océ Repro Desk**

　1　Double click the Océ Repro Desk icon in the Windows screen.

[44] Océ Repro Desk Icon

The user interface

When you start the Océ Repro Desk software the main window is displayed.
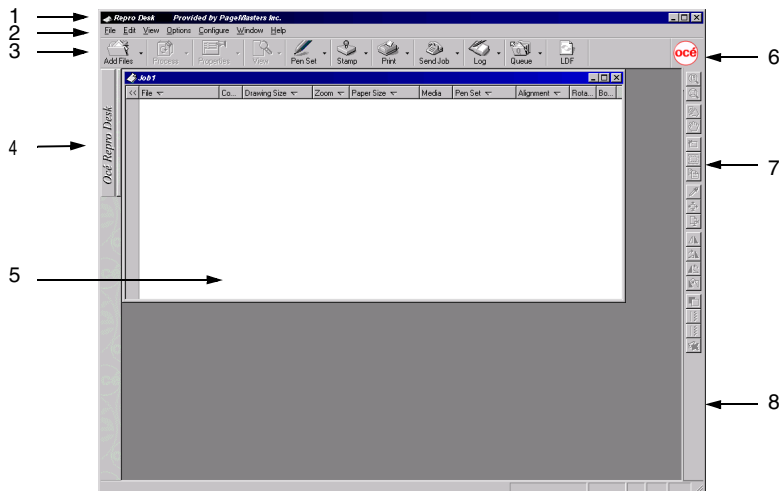
[45] Main Window

The main window can be divided in eight parts:

1 the title bar

2 the menu bar

3 the button bar

4 the information bar

5 the window

6 the logo

7 the view toolbar

8 the status bar

Menu bar

The menus available on the menu bar depend on the mode you are using: job mode, queue mode or view mode.

This illustrations is an example of the menu bar in job mode.

File Edit View Options Configure Window Help
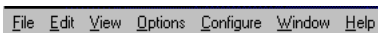
[46] The menu bar in job mode

The menu bar in job mode contains six menus: File, Edit, View, Options, Window and Help. When you click with the left mouse button on one of these options a pull-down menu appears. The menus and the options in the pull down menu depend on the mode you are in.

Button bar and Quick menus

[47] The Button bar

The Button bar exists of two parts:

■ Buttons with an icon. When you click on an Icon button the option of the button is activated. The Icon buttons contain the most used option of the menu.

■ Quick menus. When you click on the arrow, a pull-down menu will appear with menu options.

Note: *You may not always be able to use all the buttons. This depends on the mode you are in.*

Information bar

The Information bar is on the left side of the Main window (see next figure).

When a file is selected in a job, the information displayed is related to the selected file.

Paper Size: 1189 x 841 mm
Drawing Size: 1153 x 817 mm
Resolution: 400 dpi
File Name: C:
    \DRAWINGS\00136.hp2
Pen Set: c:
    \ocerd98\standard.pen
File Size: 85807 bytes
File Date: 06/24/98 12:47:47
HPGL-2
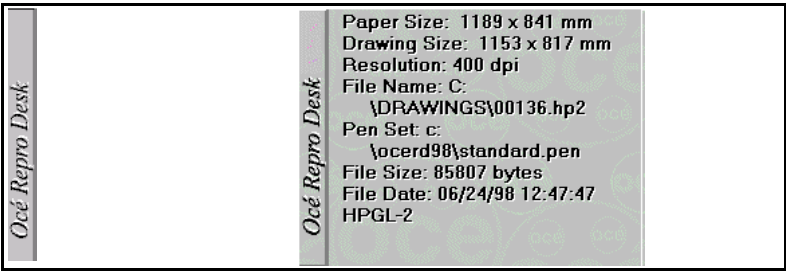
[48] Closed Information barOpen Information bar

When you move your mouse over the Information bar, it highlights.
When you click the Information bar it opens.
If a drawing is selected this bar provides information on the drawing settings.

Pen overview

If you are viewing a drawing, Océ Repro Desk shows the used pens below the Information bar. Selecting one of these pens opens the Pen settings window (see 'Pen settings' on page 164). If the drawing uses more Pens than fit on the current screen, you can hold down the left mouse button and move to the top or bottom to browse through the whole list.
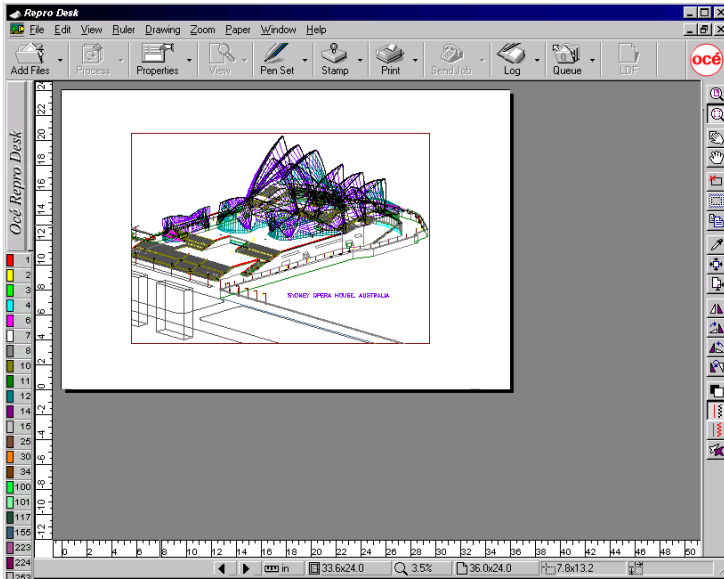
[49] Used pens in the left border of the window

Window

How the main window looks depends on the mode you are using. Each mode uses a different window. There are 5 different modes:

- job
- viewer
- pen
- log
- empty

More than one window type may be open at a time, but only one mode can be active. The options available in the menus and toolbars depend on the mode which is being used.

Logo

The logo indicates the following:
1 When the logo turns into a moving sheet of paper, the program is processing.
2 When the logo turns into a moving press/stamp, the program is printing.
Note: *When you click on the logo, the open job will be saved.*

View tool bar

The View toolbar is visible in every mode. But you can only use the buttons when you are using the View mode.

The View toolbar contains two different tools. Both make changes in the viewing mode. But some tools do not affect the drawing and other do. The functionality of the different tools on the View toolbar is explained in chapter 8, 'View drawings' on page 133.

Title bar

The title bar is at the top of the window Status bar

Status bar

There is a status bar at the bottom of the window, showing extra information about selected windows or functions:

How to access the menus and options

Most of the time you have several ways to open or use an option in Océ Repro Desk:

Menu bar When you click on a menu of the Menu bar, a pull-down menu appears. You can select an option from the menu.

Button bar When you click on the icon button the selected option opens. When you click on an arrow on the Quick menu bar a pull-down menu appears. You can select an option from the pull-down menu.

Right mouse click When you click with the right mouse button in the main window, a pop-up menu appears. This pop-up menu contains the most used options and settings. You will not have access to all the available options with this method. This is a quick way of accessing the most common option.

Double left mouse click If you double click on a setting in the job or pen window, a list box appears. You can choose an option from the list box.

Note: *To maximize a window double click the title bar.*

Set preferences

In job mode, you can set preferences in the Options menu. A check mark next to an option indicates that it is 'On', while an icon or no check mark indicates that it is 'Off'.

Ignore prompting mode If you check this option, the prompt windows will not be displayed when problems occur.
Note: *This option is recommended only for unattended printing.*

Pre-processing mode Select this option to store VIC files in the VIC directory for reuse. The drawback is that this takes up space on your hard disk.

Ignore RCF Headers Select this option to ignore the print information created by an Océ driver.

Windows printer uses colors Check this option if you want to print to a Windows color printer.

Windows printer scale 100% Check this option if you want to print to a wide-format Windows printer.

Invert paper image The image is inverted so that black pixels are turned to white, and white pixels to black.
Note: *This option uses a lot of printer toner.*

Auto detect paper size If this option is checked, the best fitting paper size will be selected when the file is processed.

Auto paper rotate If this option is checked, the drawing will be rotated, if necessary, in order to fit onto the selected paper size.

In addition to these options, the menu contains the following functions:

Save job default settings now Selecting this option will change the Default Job Settings to the most recently-changed settings in the job window.

Clean VIC directory   Deletes existing files from the VIC directory.

Quit Océ Repro Desk

If you have finished working with Océ Repro Desk, quit the application. Do not quit Océ Repro Desk while jobs are still being printed. It is good practice to make sure that jobs sent to the printer have been completed before quitting Océ Repro Desk.

▼ **Quit Océ Repro Desk**

1 Wait until the active job has been sent to the printer completely.
2 From the 'Fil'e menu, choose 'Exit'.
The Océ Repro Desk software is closed.

Chapter 5
A Quick Tour through
Océ Repro Desk

*This quick tour gives you an impression of what you can do
with Océ Repro Desk. It leads you along the most important
features of Océ Repro Desk in no longer than 5 minutes.*

Purpose of this quick tour

This quick tour is meant to introduce you to the very basics of Océ Repro Desk in a more or less active way.

Once you have achieved this exercise you can go to the other sections in this manual for more details.

This Quick Tour consists of the following parts:

Start Océ Repro Desk and add files to a job

1 Start Océ Repro Desk by double clicking on the Océ Repro Desk icon.

The main screen appears with the first job description ready to fill in:
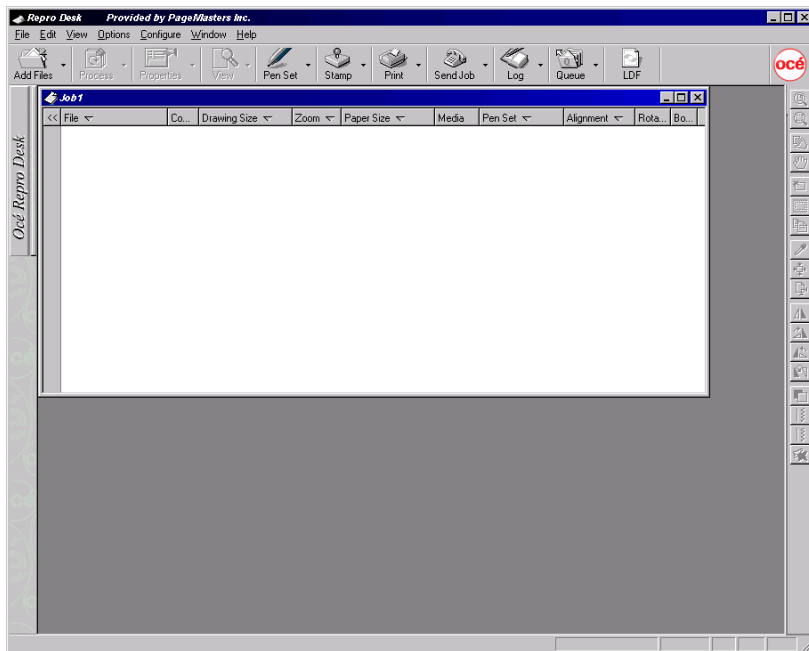
2 Click the 'Add files' button.

Two windows are displayed; the second one is shown below:
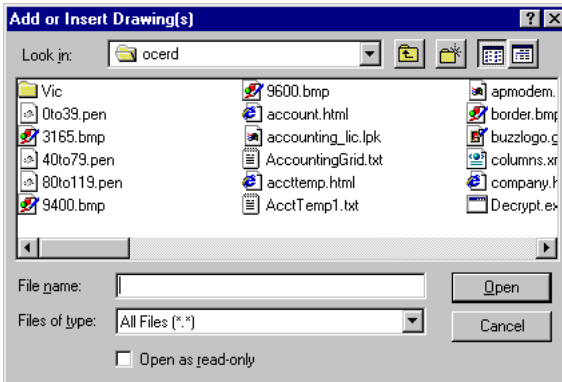
3 Select the files you wish to add to the job and press OK

The job window pops up. It lists the drawings you wish to print
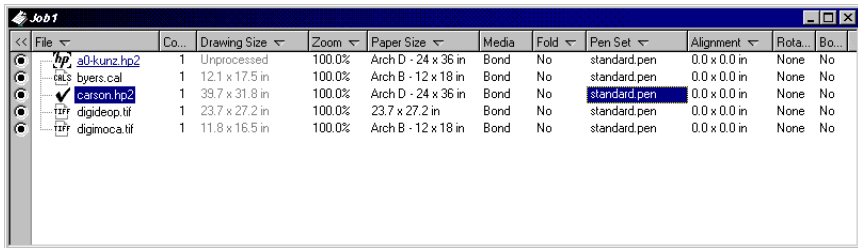
4 Select 'Save Job' from the 'File' menu.

5 Fill in the file name of the new job, using the default extension and file type (.JOB).

View, check and print files

1 Double click any of the files to view it.
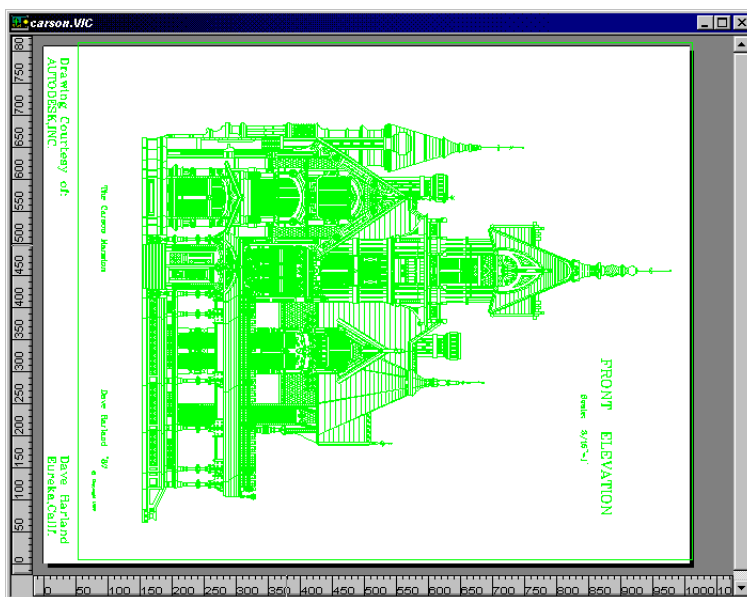
You are now able to fine tune the selected files for printing, but this kind of editing is beyond the scope of this quick tour.

2 Alternatively, you may want to have Océ Repro Desk check the files for you. To do so, select 'Check All Drawings' from the 'Process' menu.
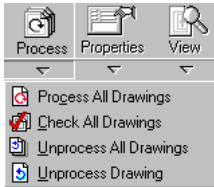
Océ Repro Desk will issue a warning whenever it sees a drawing that is likely to be printed incorrectly.

3 Answer 'Yes' to each warning until you see the message: 'All plot files checked'.

4 Press the print button to print the selected files to your local printer.

5 Your job is now ready to be forwarded to a local or remote printer.

This concludes our quick tour through Océ Repro Desk.

Refer to 'Handling jobs' on page 93 for detailed information on how to further handle jobs.

Chapter 6
Handling jobs

This chapter describes what a job is, how to manage a job and how to change drawing settings within a job.

What is a job

A job is a folder for holding a drawing or set of drawings. A job also has the controls that allow you to customise each drawing in a set. You can change the order of the drawings within a job, set the number of copies, set the size of each drawing, select a scale, create reductions or enlargements, set a paper size, select media, apply a pen set, set an alignment, define the degrees of rotation, and enable border removal.

A Job file keeps track of the drawings you want to print and the settings that affect how theese drawings will appear on paper. When a Job file is created, it includes several pieces of vital information. In addition to the drawings and their settings, the job will include the selected pen set(s) for the drawings, and an electronic work order in which the sender is specified along with delivery information and special instructions. If none of this information has been set, Océ Repro Desk will apply a default pen set and a blank work order. This information is stored on all jobs prepared in Océ Repro Desk, whether stored on diskette or sent by modem. Job files are stored with the extension Job. Océ Repro Desk allows you to have multiple jobs open during one session.

Create a new job

When Repro Desk is started a job window, called Job 1, will appear. Creating another new job can be done as shown below.

▼   **Create a new job**

1   From the File menu, choose New.
2   Select Job
3   Click OK.
4   A Job window opens. You have created a new job.

Add files to a job

A new job does not contain any files. Drawings to be printed must be placed in a job.

▼ **Add a new file to a job**

1 Click Add Files in the Button bar.

2 The Add or Insert Drawings dialogue appears.

3 Select the drive and the directories that contain drawings to be added.

4 Select the file name(s) of the drawing you want to add.

Note: *You can select more than one file name by holding the Ctrl button or the Shift button (for a range of files) while selecting the file name.*

5 Click OK. The drawing files are added to the job.
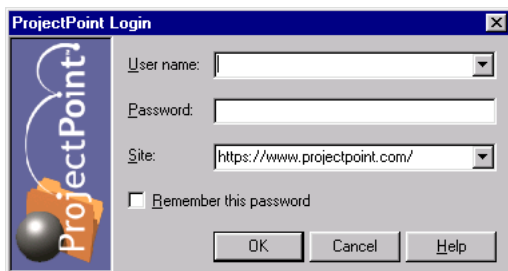
Add drawings from ProjectPoint™ sites

Buzzsaw.com and Repro Desk are integrated so that you can send and receive between them. You must have a ProjectPoint account set up to use this function.

▼ **Add files from ProjectPoint sites**

1 With the job window active, click the Add Files quick menu.
A submenu appears.

2 Click 'Add Files from ProjectPoint'.

3 The ProjectPoint login appears:

4 Type your Username and Password if necessary, and choose a site from the list.

5 Click OK.

The 'Open' dialog box displays ProjectPoint sites to which you have access:
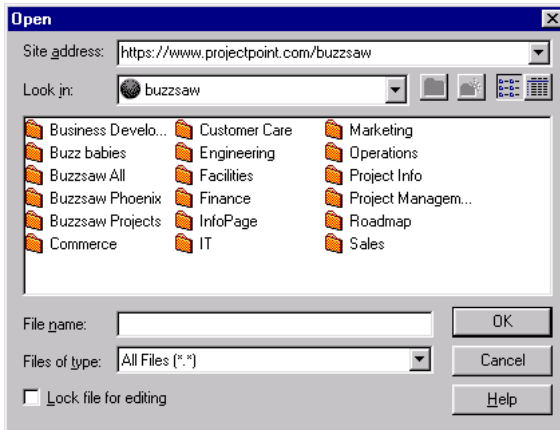
6 Navigate to the desired files and click OK.
The files are added to the top of your job.

Insert a drawing into a job

You can insert a drawing into a certain position in a job, rather than adding it to the bottom of the job.

▼   **Inserting a new file in a job**

1 Select the drawing that is below the point where you want to insert a drawing.
The selected drawing is highlighted.
2 From the 'Add Files' quick menu, choose 'Insert Drawing'.
3 The 'Insert Drawing Files' dialogue appears.
4 Select the drive and the directories that contain drawings to be added.
5 Select the file name of the drawing you want to add.
Note: *You can select more than one file name by holding the Ctrl button or the Shift button (for a range of files) while selecting the file name.*
6 Click OK.
7 The drawing files are inserted above the highlighted drawing in the job.

Add files from a text file

In addition to adding separate files to a job, you can use a special text file to add several drawings at once. This file should be formatted as a number of lines, each specifying the path and filename of the drawing to add.

▼ **Add new files from file list**

1 Open your favourite text editor.
2 Type the path and file name of every drawing on a separate line.
3 Save and close the text file.
4 Go to Océ Repro Desk and select 'Add Drawings' from the 'Add Files' quick menu.
5 Select the file which you saved with the text editor.
  Every file specified in the file list is added to the current job now.

Note: *An extra blank line must be added at the end of the file list..*

Save a job

When you have defined all the settings in a job for each drawing, save the job to keep these settings.

▼ **Save a job**

1 From the 'File' menu, choose 'Save Job'.
  The 'Save As' dialogue box opens.
  Note: *If you have opened a job and want to save it with a different name, use the Save Job As command instead of Save.*
2 Select the drive and directory where you want to save the job.
3 Define a descriptive file name for this job.
4 Click OK.
  The job is saved.
  Note: *Once you have saved a job the 'Save Job' option will no longer ask for a file name.*

Close a job

You can close a job also without saving it. Use this option if you made a
mistake in handling a job. If you made any changes to the job (like adding or
deleting drawings or change any settings) Océ Repro Desk will ask you to
confirm that you wish to close without saving.

▼ **Close a job**

1 Make sure the job you wish to close is active.

2 From the File menu, choose Close.
If you have made any changes, Océ Repro Desk will ask you if you want to
close without saving, otherwise the job closes.

Open an existing job

You can use Job files that have been saved on the print server, a network
workstation, or on diskette.

▼ **To open apreviously saved job**

1 From the 'File' menu, choose 'Open'.
The 'Open' dialogue box appears.

2 Select the drive and directory where the job to be opened is located.

3 Select the job you wish to open

4 Click OK.
The selected job opens.

Merge a job with another job

You can add the contents of one job to another. Drawings will be placed in the
order they are merged.

▼ **Merge jobs**

1 Open the first job to be merged.

2 From the 'File' menu, choose 'Merge Job File'.
The 'Merge Job File' dialogue box opens.

3 Select the next job to be merged.
The two jobs are merged.
Note: *The drawings of Job 2 will be attached to the drawings of Job 1.*

Remove a drawing from a job

A drawing can be removed from a job.

▼ **Remove a drawing from a job**

1 Select the file you want to remove. The selected drawing name is highlighted.
2 From the 'Add Files' quick menu, choose 'Delete Drawing File'.
   The 'Job' window appears and informs you that the reference of the selected file will be deleted.

JOB	✕
❓ Delete reference to item 00136.hp2 ?	
[OK] [Cancel]	
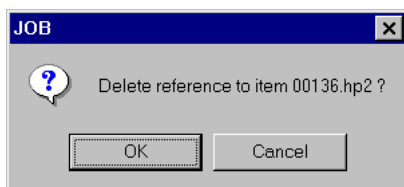
3 Click 'OK'.
   The selected drawing is removed from this job.

Delete a drawing

A drawing file can also be deleted from the disk. Once deleted, a drawing cannot be restored. When erasing a drawing from the disk it will of course also be removed from the job.

▼ **Delete a drawing from the disk**

1 Select the file you want to delete permanently. The selected drawing name is highlighted.
2 Press the 'F7' function key.
   A dialogue box asks whether you want to delete the file and the reference from the job.

JOB	✕
❓ Delete reference to item AND the file 00136.hp2 ?	
[OK] [Cancel]	
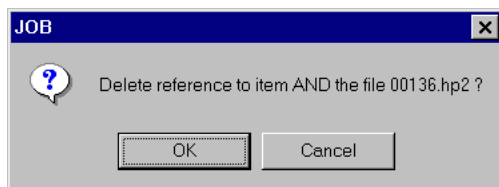
3 Verify that this what you want to do.
4 When you are sure, click the 'OK' button.
   The file is erased from the disk.

Rename a job

Give your job files a descriptive name so they can be found easily.

▼ **Rename a job**

  1 Select the desired job.
  2 From the 'File' menu, choose 'Save Job As'.
  3 Define a new name for the job file.
  The job is saved with the new name.
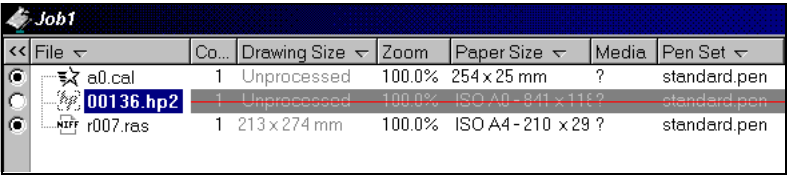
Organize drawings within a job

Drawings can be organised within a job. Drawings can be skipped, moved and copied within a job.

Skip drawings within a job

You can skip drawings which you do not want to print but want to keep in the job. If you use Océ Repro Desk to send the Job over a network or modem, skipped files will not be transferred with the Job. The boxes marked with the *indicator* are drawings that will be printed. In the illustration below, the left hand column shows the first and third files have been selected for sending or printing.

▼ **Skip a drawing in a job**

■ To skip a drawing, deselect the button to the left of the file.
A red line appears through the job information.

Move drawings within a job

You can reposition drawings within a job in order to change the printing order.

▼ **Move a drawing within a job**

1 Open the job
2 Select the drawing you want to move.
3 Click and hold the left mouse button
4 Drag the drawing to the desired position.
5 Release the mouse button.
  The drawing is moved.

Copy drawings within a job

You can make copies of a drawing inside a job.

▼ **Copy a drawing**

1 Open the job.
2 Select the drawing you wish to copy.
3 Click and hold the right mouse button.
4 Move the drawing to the desired position.
5 Release the right mouse button.
   The drawing is copied.

Job settings

When you add a drawing to a job, the default settings for drawing size, paper size, copies, zoom and so on are applied and displayed in the Job window.

Change settings for one drawing

To change a setting in one drawing you have to click the desired field with the right mouse button and a drop-down menu appears containing several popular settings. The following three options are available:

Properties The 'Imaging Properties' window will open, allowing you to change most the settings of the selected drawing.

Copy All The setting of the selected drawing will be copied to all drawings in the job

Copy Down The setting of the selected drawing will be copied to all drawings below the selected drawing.
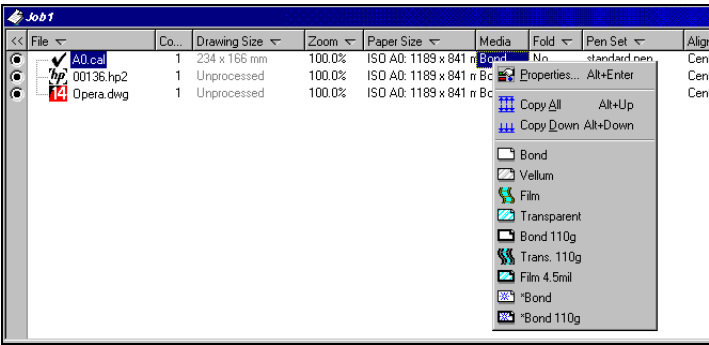
[50] Job settings - Right mouse click

Right clicking the File field for a selected drawing produces a menu with options that are generally available from the toolbar and menus.

File ▽		Co...	Drawing Size ▽

| 14 | nels-a1.dwg | 1 | Unprocessed |

	File Properties...	Alt+Enter
	View Pen Set	Ctrl+E
	View Drawing	Ctrl+V
	Insert Drawing...	Ins
	Add Overlay...	Ctrl+L
	Toggle Overlay <-> Drawing	
	Rename Drawing...	Space
	Send Single Drawing To	▶
	Send Entire Job To	▶
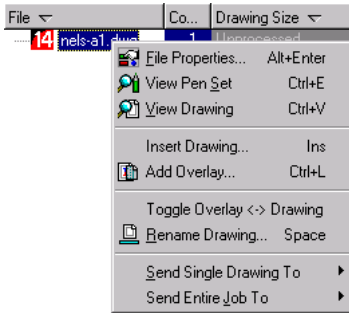
[51] Job settings - Right mouse click, selected drawing

File Properties   The file information dialog box appears.

View Pen Set   The Pen settings window appears.

View Drawing   The viewer opens.

Insert Drawing   The Add or Insert Drawing File(s) dialog box appears.

Add Overlay   The Add Overlay To dialog box appears.

Toggle Overlay   The stamp appears in the job window.

Rename Drawing   The file name turns into a text box.

Send Single Drawing To   A submenu appears.

Send Entire Job To...   A submenu appears.

Change settings for several drawing

To change a particular setting for all drawings of the job click the name of that particular setting with the left mouse button. A drop-down menu appears containing several popular default settings.

Hide: you can hide the column with the specific setting
Reduce Columns: the selected column will be set to its standard width
Expand Columns: all hidden settings will be displayed again.

File

The File field shows the name of the files in the job. The extension of the file name tells you the file format. The icon in front of the file name shows the status of the file (for example, processed, printed, viewed, etc.).

Some HP-GL formatted files incorporate their own embedded commands for specifying pen colours and pen widths. If Océ Repro Desk processes such a file the icon in front of the drawings file name becomes a green checkmark instead of a black checkmark.

You can open a File pull down menu when you click on the File button. The following items are shown:

Show Overlays Shows the overlay (text and electronic stamp).

Hide overlays Hides the overlaid drawings from the job list.

Process Drawing Files   This command converts native drawing files (vector files) into VIC files for fast printing.

Check Drawing Files If you click this option, the Drawing Files will be processed, checked whether the drawings will be clipped on paper and checked whether all pens that should be used have a pen weight set.

Unprocess All Drawing Files   This command unprocesses the VIC files into their native format.

Copies

In the Copies field you can change the number of copies.

▼ **Changing the number of copies**

1 Open the job with the desired drawings.
2 Click with the right mouse button on the Number of copies field of the drawing you want to change.
   The Copies drop-down menu appears.
3 Select the desired setting with the mouse pointer.
4 Click outside the drop-down menu to remove it.

Drawing size

This field displays the original size of the drawing.

Zoom

You can specify the zoom factor as follows:

▼ **Make an enlargement or reduction**

1 Open the job with the desired drawings.
2 Click with the right mouse button on the Zoom field of the drawing you want to change.
  The Zoom drop-down menu appears.
3 Select the desired zoom setting:
   ■ One of the predefined zoom factors.
   ■ Fit Page: Zoom factor will be changed automatically to fit the specified Paper Size.
   ■ 50% Reduction or 200% Enlargement: The Paper Size will automatically change to fit the drawing.
   ■ Select: The Imaging Properties window appears, to specify a custom zoom factor.
4 Click outside the drop-down menu to remove it.
5 Click OK when the Imaging Properties window is activated
   Note: *If you select either 50% reduction or 200% enlargement, the media size will automatically change with the size of the drawing. For other zoom settings, you must also change the paper size. If you wish to set a custom percentage of zoom, choose Select from the menu.*

Paper size

You can select from a variety of standard paper sizes to print on, or define custom paper sizes.

▼ **Change the paper size**

1 Open the job that contains the desired drawings.
2 Click with the right mouse button on the Paper Size field of the drawing you want to change.
  The paper size drop-down menu appears.

3 Select the desired paper size with the mouse pointer:

- One of the predefined paper sizes.
- User size: The Imaging Properties window appears, to specify a custom paper size.

4 Click outside the drop-down menu to remove it.

Click OK when the Imaging Properties window is activated

Media type

You can print digital drawings on different media types: bond, vellum, or film.

▼ **Change the media type**

1 Open the job with the desired drawings.

2 Click with the right mouse button on the Media field of the drawing you want to change.

The media type drop-down menu appears.

3 Select the desired media type.

4 Click outside the drop-down menu to remove it.

Fold

You can select from a variety of standard folding methods, or define a custom folding method.

▼ **Select the folding method**

1 Open the job that contains the desired drawings.

2 Click with the right mouse button on the Fold field of the drawing you want to change.

The Fold drop-down menu appears.

3 Select the desired folding method:

- One of the predefined folding methods.
- Select: The Imaging Properties window appears, to specify a custom folding method.

4 Click outside the drop-down menu to remove it.

Click OK when the Imaging Properties window is activated

Note: *Folding can only be performed if the printer is equipped with a folding unit.*

Pen set

For more information on Pen Sets, see 'Set pen parameters' on page 163.

▼ **Change the pen set**

1 Open the job that contains the desired drawings.
2 Double click on the Pen Set field of the drawing you want to change.
   The Pen Set drop-down menu appears.
3 Select:
   ■ Select New Pen: You can select another already existing pen set, by
     specifying its file name (*.pen).
   ■ View Current Pen: Opens the Pen Settings window. You can view the current
     pen settings and make changes if desired.
4 Close the Pen set window to remove it.

Alignment

This option controls how your drawing is placed on the paper in relation to the
edges of the selected paper size. You can choose from one of the standard menu
options or set custom offset size.

▼ **Change the alignment**

1 Open the job that contains the desired drawings.
2 Click with the right mouse button on the Alignment field of the drawing you
   want to change.
   The alignment drop-down menu appears.
3 Select the desired alignment setting:
   ■ One of the predefined alignment settings.
   ■ User size: The Imaging Properties window appears, to specify a custom
     alignment
4 Click outside the drop-down menu to remove it.
   Click OK when the Imaging Properties window is activated

Rotation and mirror

This option displays if and how the drawing is to be rotated on the paper. You
can either rotate the drawing or mirror the drawing horizontally.

▼ **Change the rotation**

1 Open the job that contains the desired drawings.

2 Click with the right mouse button on the Rotation field of the drawing you want to change.

The Rotation and mirror drop-down menu appears.

3 Select the desired rotation or mirrored position.

4 Click outside the drop-down menu to remove it.

Border removal

Electronically removes elements such as trim marks and borders from the drawing. You can choose one of the present values or define a custom setting.

▼ **Remove the border**

1 Open the job that contains the desired drawings.

2 Click with the right mouse button on the Border Removal field of the drawing you want to change.

The Border removal drop-down menu appears.

3 Select the desired setting:

- One of the predefined border removal settings.
- Select: The Imaging Properties window appears, to specify a custom border removal

4 Click outside the drop-down menu to remove it.

Click OK when the Imaging Properties window is activated.

Color

The color column indicates whether the file should be printed on a color printer via PSOut or HPGLOut. The choice could affect job printing costs. The default is no.

Note: *Repro desk does not automatically detect whether a file is color.*

Chapter 7
Check and process drawings

océ

To process files

Drawing files can be divided in two main types:
- Raster files
- Vector files

Raster files

Raster files such as TIFF or CALS (Group III or Group IV) are not converted (processed) before being printed.

Vector files

Most common vector files are stored as AutoCAD DWG and/or DXF, HP-GL, HP-GL/2 or CalComp 906/907. Océ Repro Desk does not print vector files to a plotter in their native format. Instead, the vector files are converted to an intermediate high speed plotting format called vector image compressed (VIC). This processing of the files increases the performance of the output device. Fonts and external reference files (Xrefs) are applied automatically. Thus, digital printing can be accomplished without the need to use AutoCAD.

Checking a vector file includes processing, plus making sure the image will not be clipped on paper and that a pen width has been set for all pens.

Unprocessed drawing files are represented in a job with icons for their file formats. The icons represent the program which generated the file. Processed drawings are represented in a job with a tick mark.

For devices attached to an Océ PCI Controller, Océ Repro Desk processes files into a proprietary format called Vector Image Compressed (VIC).

For parallel, SCSI, and other devices, Océ converts files to compressed raster data. All vector files must be processed into one of these formats before printing through Océ Repro Desk.

Supported vector formats

Océ Repro Desk 4.30 supports the following vector formats:

■ AutoCAD DWG.

The internal interpreter supports AutoCAD R2.5 to AutoCAD R2000 files.

■ Data Exchange Format (DXF)

■ HP-GL, HP-GL/2, HP-RTL

■ CalComp 906/907 PCI

■ PostScript Level 2 using the optional PostScript converter

Note: *Océ Repro Desk does not differenciate between HP-GL or HP-GL/2.*

Supported raster formats

Océ Repro Desk 4.30 supports the following raster formats:

■ CALS (Group IV, type 1)

■ NIFF (Group IV)

■ TIFF single page monochrome

TIFF implementations include the following types:

■ Group IV (6.0, tiled, striped, reverse bit order)

■ Group III

■ Packed bits

■ Uncompressed

Additionally, Océ Repro Desk permits a simple ASCII file to be used as a banner page, as well as the native label format for banner pages (*.lbl).

The author of a drawing is ideally the person who should process it. This is because often there are questions concerning scale, pen widths, or pen patterns, which only te author can answer.

To check vector files

If you are processing and printing vector files there are certain parameters that have to be correctly set in order for your drawing to be printed as you want. When Océ Repro Desk checks drawing files, it checks to make sure that all pens have been assigned a pen width, that the drawing will not be clipped and for AutoCAD files it also checks that the path of the font and other cross references are correct and that the scale is correct. If there is an error, a warning message will appear.

The options you can change depend on the file format. Select the unprocessed file and click the Properties button (see next page).

To control drawing properties

For each type of drawing, you can open a properties window. Depending on the type of drawing, this window can be used for different purposes.

▼ **Open the drawing properties sheet**

1 Select the drawing file by clicking on it.

2 Click the Properties button.

[52] Properties button

3 The drawing properties window will appear.
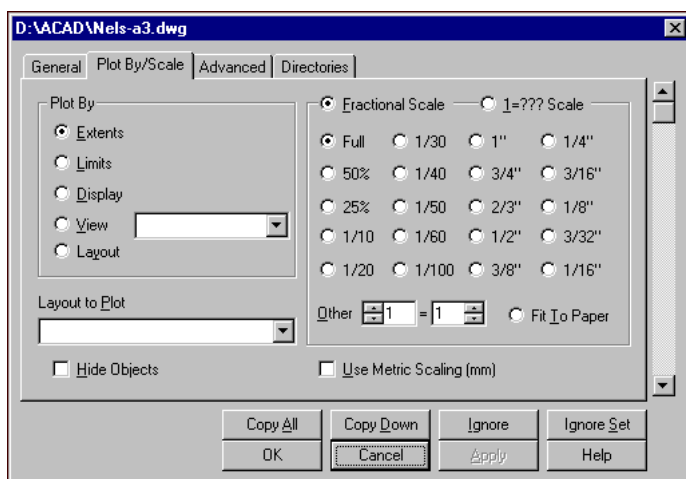
[53] Drawing properties

Further information depends on the type of drawing, and is described in the following sections.

AutoCAD DWG properties

Océ Repro Desk will compare the size of the drawing to the size of the paper. If the drawing size and the paper size do not match, a warning message will appear. If a warning message is displayed, you may have to change some parameters, such as scale, the print area and the layer control, in the AutoCAD properties sheet. For further details, refer to the AutoCAD manual.

General tab

The General tab of the drawing properties window always contains information about the file type, file size, and file date. If a preview of the files is available, it will be displayed in the preview window.
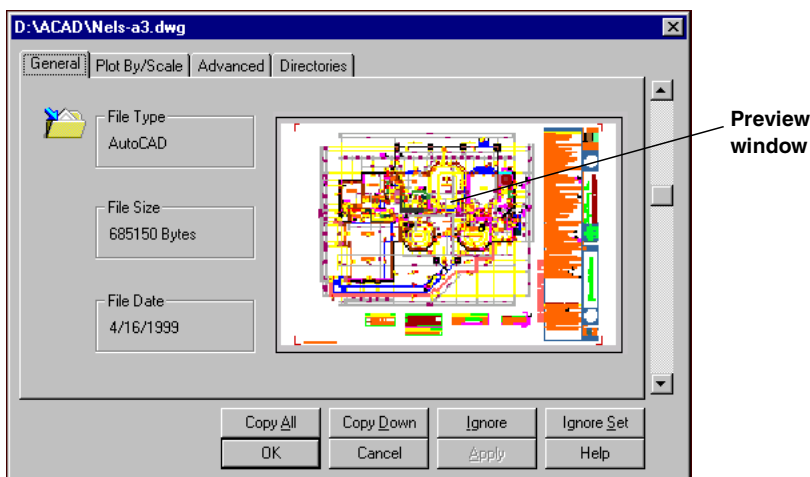
[54] AutoCAD drawing properties: General tab

Plot by/Scale tab

Scale is of vital importance in AutoCAD drawings. When Océ Repro Desk checks drawings it makes sure that the scale of the drawing is correct for the selected media size. If the scale is incorrect, Océ Repro Desk displays a warning box and gives an estimation of what the correct scale should be. The estimated scale is derived from comparing the size of the digital drawing and the selected paper size.

You can specify the scale as follows:

■ Select one of the standard fractional scale factors from the available entries.
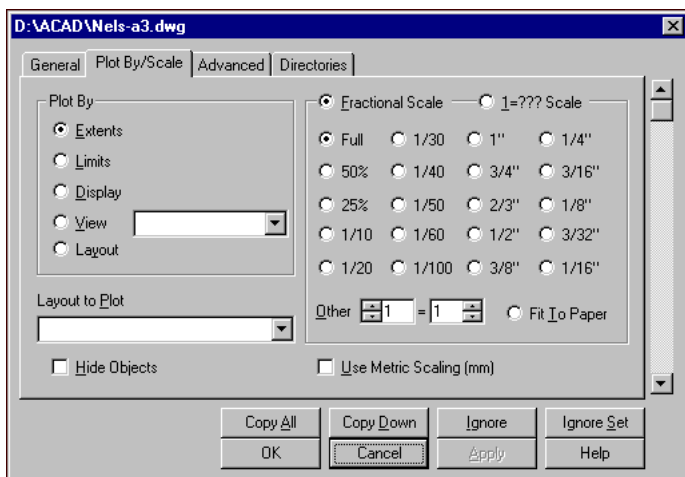
[55] AutoCAD: Plot by/Scale tab - Fractional scaling

■ Select the 1=??? button and select the desired scale ratio.
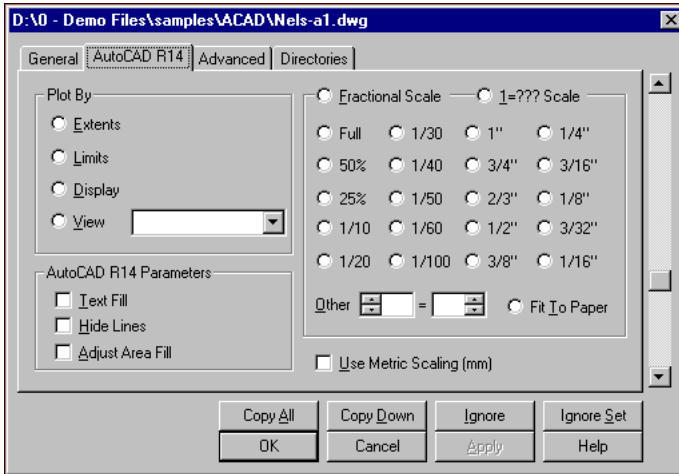
[56] AutoCAD: Scaling ratio

■ Enter a non-standard scale factor using the Other field.
■ Select Fit To Paper to force Océ Repro Desk to calculate the scale that fits the drawing to the current paper size.

Plot by Océ Repro Desk allows you to modify the area of the drawing to be printed.
■ Extents: prints all the objects in the drawing.
■ Limits: prints the current drawing limits.
■ Display prints the view as displayed in AutoCAD.
■ View: prints named view of the drawing chosen from the View name list.
If you have selected Plot by View, then you must choose one of the named views, defined by the author of the drawing, from the drop down list box. If no views are defined in the drawing, this command will appear grayed out.
■ Layout: prints based on layouts predetermined in AutoCAD 2000.

If the drawing is not displaying correctly in the Viewer, check that the correct option is set in Plot By.

Layout to Plot This list box displays the AutoCAD layouts available for plotting.

Use Saved Extents This option applies only to drawings in Model Space. Select this box to use the extents that are saved in the drawing file for plotting by extents. This allows drawings to be processed much faster because the extents do not need to be calculated. In cases where the extents are saved

incorrectly in the drawing file, you may need to turn the option off so that the accurate extents can be recalculated.

Use Metric Scaling Check this option if you want to use millimeters instead of inches.

AutoCAD R14 batch plot utility

The Plot by Scale tab will appear differently if the AutoCAD R14 batch plot utility is used to process DWG files. The options that are different are described below.
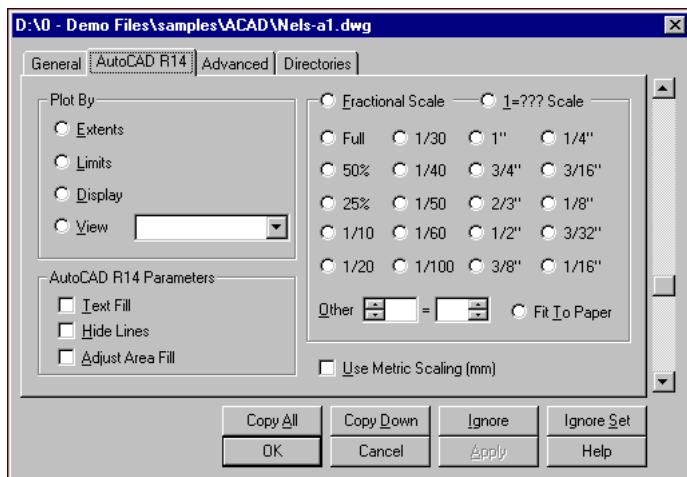
[57] AutoCAD R14 tab

Text Fills Displays text using the TextFill property in AutoCAD which fills text to be solid rather than just an outline.

Hide Lines Displays objects in drawings using the HideFill property in AutoCAD which hides background lines that normally appear in a 3D object.

Adjust Area Fill Displays objects in the Drawing using the AdjustAreaFill property in AutoCAD which pulls in the boundaries of the filled area one-half the pen width.

Advanced tab

The information on this tab is read by Océ Repro Desk from the selected AutoCAD drawing file. Océ Repro Desk looks for the information for each of the categories and if information is found, it is displayed in the appropriate field.
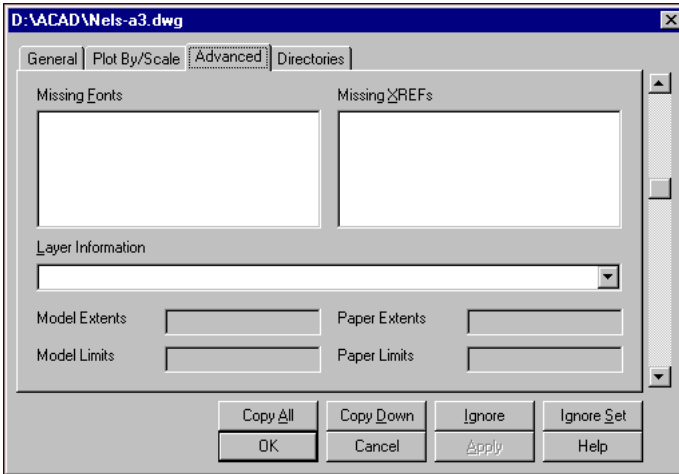
[58] AutoCAD advanced tab

Missing Fonts Displays the font names used a selected drawing that could not be located for the drawing being viewed.

Missing XREFs Displays any external references used in a selected drawing that could not be located for the drawing being viewed.

Layer information Océ Repro Desk displays the list of layers contained in the drawing file and indicates whether they are on or off.

Model Extents Displays the size in AutoCAD units.

Model Limits Displays the size in AutoCAD units.

Paper Extents Displays the size in AutoCAD units.

Paper Limits Displays the size in AutoCAD units.

Directories tab

Océ Repro Desk will not be able to process and print your drawing correctly if it does not know which fonts were used and where to look for font files and external references. If Océ Repro Desk cannot find this information, it will display an error message. Check that all paths are correctly referenced on the Directories tab.
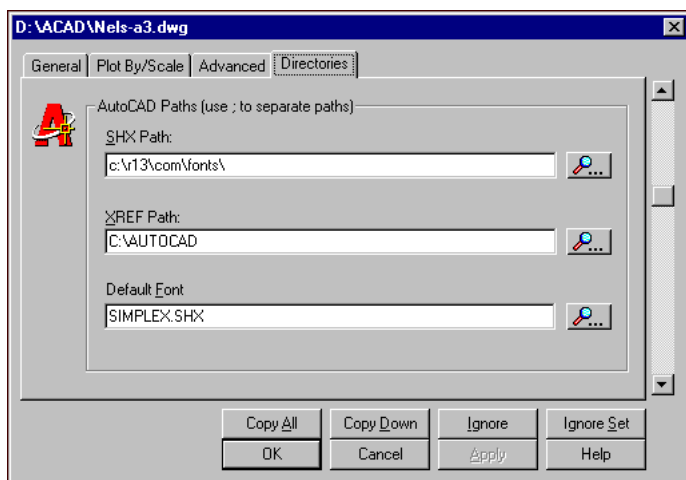
[59] AutoCAD directories tab

▼ **Set font and external reference paths**

1 Check that the path in the AutoCAD font location in the SHX Path is correct. If necessary, click the Browse button 🔍 and navigate to the location on your computer where your AutoCAD fonts are stored.

2 Check that the path to the AutoCAD application location is correct in the XREF path field. if necessary, click the browse button and navigate to the location on your computer where your external references are stored.
Note: *You can have multiple SHX Paths and XREF Paths. Repro Desk will check all of them.*

3 Check that the name of the Default font used in the drawing is correct.
Note: *You can use wild cards, such as C:\auto*, to look in multiple directories.*

Solving AutoCAD scale problems

You can check and change the drawing file information before you process the drawing to view or print it. The drawing file information depends on the drawing file format.

When you receive an AutoCAD.DWG, you may need to set or change the scale of a drawing. The correct scale must be set in order to have drawings correctly printed. If the drawing will be too large for the selected paper size, Océ Repro Desk will warn you and suggest an estimated scale. The estimated scale is based on comparing the size of the digital drawing against the size of the paper. However, there is no substitute to knowing the actual scale of a drawing and ideally scale should be set by the author of the drawing.

▼ **Setting an AutoCAD scale**

1 Set paper size to the size requested by the customers.
2 Set scale to Full (100%).
3 Process the drawing.
   Note: *Océ Repro Desk will process the drawing and alert you that the drawing has the wrong size for the selected paper size. It will also suggest an estimated AutoCAD scale. Nevertheless it will often estimate on the low size, so try the next higher standard AutoCAD scale.*
4 If the drawing has still the wrong size, find out if the customer is plotting by extents, limits, display or view. Most customers will plot by extents.
5 As a last solution, set the AutoCAD scale to fit to page and view the drawing's title block. Often the scale of the drawing will be contained in the title block.

Configure AutoCAD processing

The internal interpreter supports AutoCAD R2.5 to AutoCAD R2000 files, and will normally be used for all AutoCAD drawings. It is, however, possible to use the AutoCAD Release 14 batch plot utility instead, if you have AutoCAD R14 installed.

How to process AutoCAD files
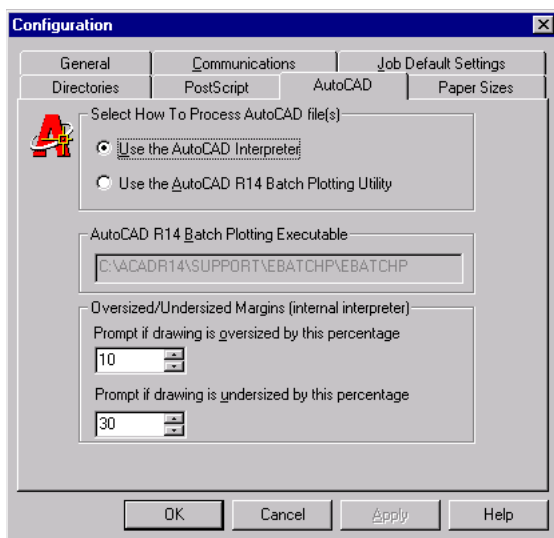
[60] AutoCAD settings

Select either one of the following methods:

AutoCAD interpreter This uses the internal interpreter included in Océ Repro Desk and supports AutoCAD R2.5 to R2000 files, and is normally used for all AutoCAD drawings.

Use the AutoCAD R14 batch plotting utility. This uses the AutoCAD R14 Batch Plotting Utility for processing files and supports files from AutoCAD R2.5 - R14. In the event that you select the latter method, you can specify the path and name of the batch plotting utility in the field named 'AutoCAD R14 Batch Plotting executable'.

AutoCAD R14 batch plotting executable   Select the executable file to use if you selected the Batch Plotting Utility in the previous section.

Oversized/Undersized Margins If you have selected the internal interpreter, you can specify how much a drawing can be oversized/undersized without receiving a warning. When the drawing is larger or smaller than specified, a warning will be prompted during processing.

▼   **Configure AutoCAD interpreter**

1 Select Defaults in the Configure menu
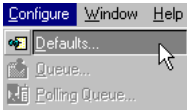
[61] Select Defaults in the Configure window

2 Select the AutoCAD tab in the Configuration window.
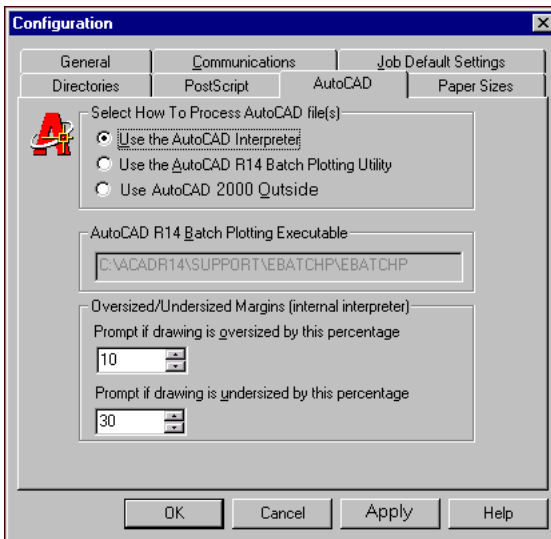
[62] Specify AutoCAD settings

3 Select which interpreter you want to use to process AutoCAD drawings:
- the Internal Interpreter
- the Batch Plotting Utility
4 If you selected the Batch Plotting Utility, you must also specify the location of the AutoCAD software.
5 If required, specify limits in the Oversized/Undersized Margins (internal interpreter) section.
6 Click OK.
The Drawing Properties window appears.

HP-GL, HP-GL/2 and HP-RTL

Océ Repro Desk detects the drawing resolution and a number of other HP-GL specific options. It displays this information in the Drawing File Information box

▼ **Check the HP-GL, HP-GL/2 and HP-RTL drawing properties**

1 Select the unprocessed HP-GL drawing file by clicking it.
2 Click the Properties button.
  The Drawing File Information dialogue box appears.
3 Check that the File Type and the Drawing Resolution are correct.
4 Click OK.
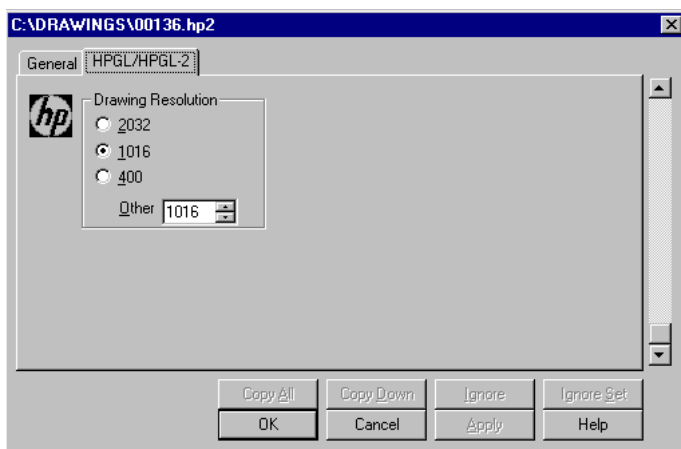
[63] HP-GLand HP-GL/2 drawing properties

Note: *If you use HP-GL/2 format drawing files, the pen control tab is also applicable (see 'HP-GL/2 pen controls' on page 172)*

CalComp 906/907 PCI

Océ Repro Desk detects the sync byte, end of message, checksum and the step size settings in a CalComp file. This information is displayed in the Drawing File Information box (in decimal format). However, it can not guarantee that they are correct and you need to check these settings before printing
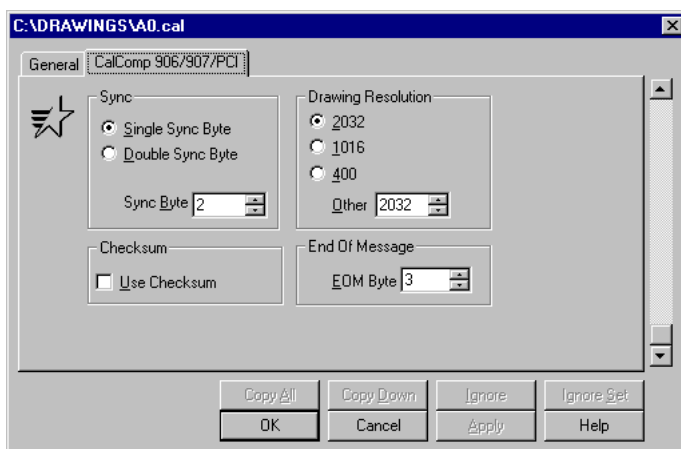
[64] CalComp drawing properties

Sync byte sequence The sync byte sequence is a character that identifies the beginning of a message. The printer searches for this character in the data sent from the host computer and when detected, it sends all following data to the printer buffer. You can set the sync byte to single or double. A wrong setting will affect the result of the plot.

Drawing resolution is CalComp step size. The step size matches the resolution of the printer and the application. A wrong step size will affect the scale of the drawing.

Use checksum The Checksum character determines if the data message has been correctly transmitted. A wrong setting will affect the result of the plot.

End of message The End of Message character indicates the end of the data sequence. A wrong setting will affect the result of the plot.

▼ **Check the CalComp drawing properties**

1 Click once on the unprocessed drawing file.

2 Click once on the Properties button.
The Drawing File Information dialogue box opens.

3 To change Sync byte, choose Single or Double sync and choose a value from the list box.

4 To change Step size, click on the radio button to choose a preset value or enter a value in the Other files.

5 Set the Use Checksum option to On or Off.

6 To change the End of Message, use the arrows to enter a new value in the End of Message field.

Note: *Only change a CalComp setting if you really are sure that the ones checked and suggested by Océ Repro Desk are incorrect.*

Process and unprocess drawing files

For fast printing you can convert native DWG, DXF, HP-GL, and CalComp drawing files into Océ Repro Desk VIC files. You can unprocess VIC files into their native format if the original drawings are on the system.

▼ **Process one drawing file**

Double click the file name in the Job list.
The processed drawing will be shown.

▼ **Process all drawing files in a job**

From the Process quick menu, choose Process All Drawings.
The job processes.

To unprocess

If you have received a native vector file (as opposed to a VIC file), you can unprocess the drawing to make changes to AutoCAD scale or set stepping in CalComp plot files.

Attention: *Unprocessing is only possible if the original drawing can be found on the system.*

▼ **Unprocess all vector drawing files in a job**

1 Go to the 'Process' quick menu.
2 Choose 'Unprocess All Drawing Files'.
The job is unprocessed.

Unprocess a single drawing file

Sometimes it is necessary to make adjustments to scale, plot resolution, or other drawing characteristics for only one drawing.

▼   **Unprocess a single drawing file**

1 Select the File you want to unprocess.
The selected drawing name turns blue.

2 From the Process quick menu, choose Unprocess Drawing File.
The selected drawing is unprocessed.

▼   **Preprocess mode**

Preprocess mode means saving a job with VIC files as well as the native file formats. This can be useful for jobs that will be printed again in the future because they will not have to be processed again.

Note: *The drawback to this feature is that it uses extra disk space to hold native drawings and VIC files.*

▼   **Set preprocess mode**

1 Open the job with the required drawings.

2 Go to the 'Options' menu.

3 Choose 'Preprocessing Mode'.
The preprocess mode is active.

Attention: *When you are updating drawings with the same file name, preprocessing mode will not take this into account. Thus the settings will be changed in the drawing, but will not be changed in the VIC file.*

Process raster files

Raster files do not have to be processed, but notice that pen 0 of the pen set is used to render the monochrome raster drawings.

Cals

Océ Repro Desk detects the image size and the scanned resolution of Cals files and displays it in the Drawing File Information dialogue box. This resolution can not be changed in Océ Repro Desk.
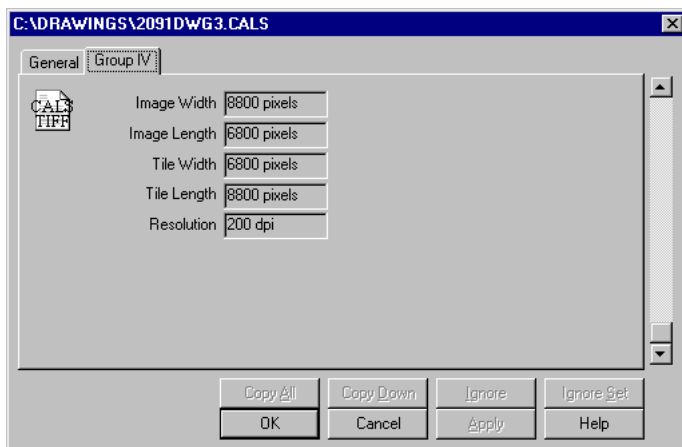
[65] CALS drawing properties

▼ **Check the Cals drawing properties**

1 Select the unprocessed drawing file by clicking it.
2 Click the Properties button.
 The Drawing File Information dialogue box appears.

TIFF, NIFF

Océ Repro Desk detects the scanned in resolution of TIFF Group IV files and NIFF files, and displays the information in the Drawing File Information dialogue box. This resolution can not be changed in Océ Repro Desk.
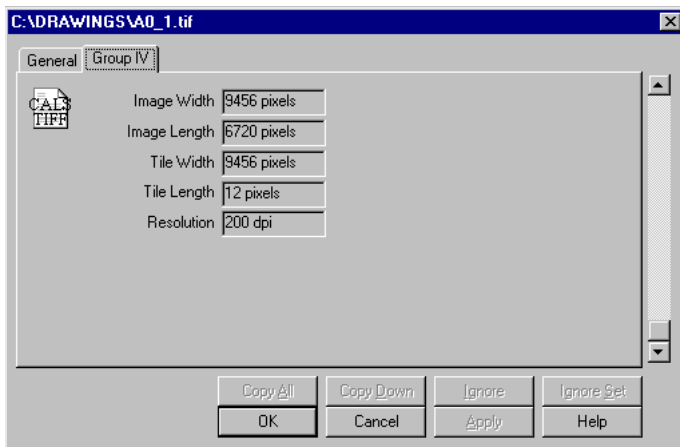
[66] TIFF AND NIFF drawing properties

▼   **Check the TIFF drawing properties**

1 Select the unprocessed drawing file by clicking it.
2 Click the Properties button.
   The Drawing File Information dialogue box appears.

Chapter 8
View drawings

This chapter describes how to view a drawing and how to make changes using the Viewer tools.

Viewer

The Viewer allows you to see whether the drawing settings are correct before printing. The Viewer has powerful tools to make changes in the way the drawing will appear on paper. You can view multiple files at the same time.

▼ **Opening a file to view**

1 Select the file you wish to view. The file is highlighted.

2 Click the View button.

Note: *If you want to view multiple files open them one by one.*
The viewer opens.
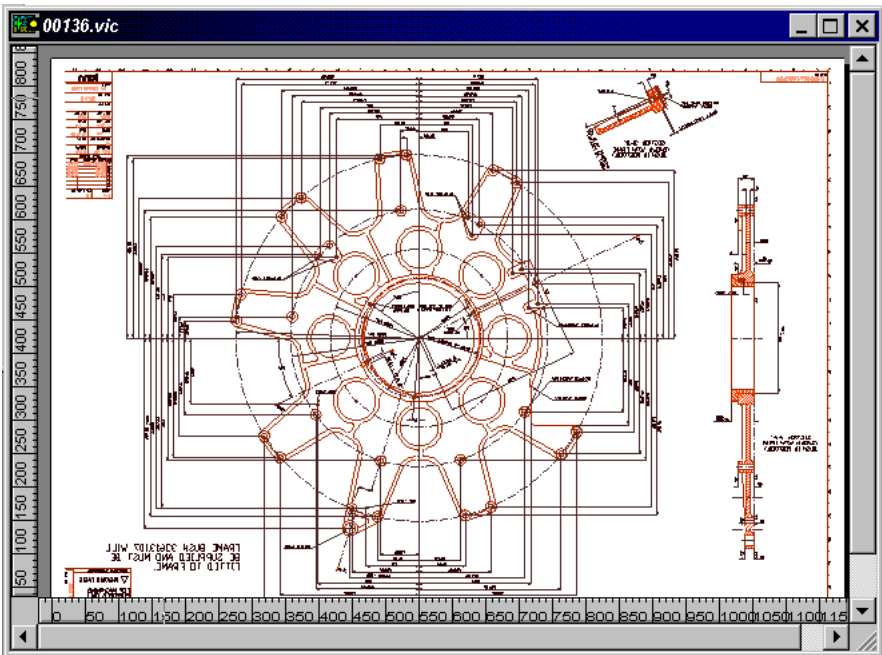
The last settings you made before you save and close the View mode will be the default settings the next time you open the View mode for that drawingS.

View toolbar

The Viewer toolbar contains two types of tools:

Viewing tools These tools make changes only in view mode. Using these tools will not have any effect on the drawing.

Editing tools These tools affect the drawing. You can see the changes in view mode as well as in print preview mode.

Button	Name	Description	Affect Print Result
	Fit Page	Fit zoom so that the entire page is visible	No
	Zoom Select	Zoom in:Left mouse Zoom out:Right mouse Zoom in select:Left mouse & Drag	No
	View Fold *	Shows the part of the drawing that is on top after folding	No
	Pan View *	Move the view window over the drawing.	No
	Move Drawing	Change the offset of the drawing on the page	Yes
	Border Removal	Remove outside border of drawing	Yes
	Crop Outside	Erase outside selected area	Yes
	Enlarge Detail	Enlarge selected area to fit paper	Yes
	Edit Pen	Change current pen set	Yes
	Center Drawing	Move the drawing to the centre of the paper	Yes
	Align Title Block	Align the drawing to the following edges of the paper: - Top, Bottom, Right	Yes

[67] Viewing tools and editing tools

	Mirror	Generates a mirrored image	Yes
	Rotate Right	Rotates the drawing and paper 90 degrees clockwise	Yes
	Rotate Left	Rotates the drawing and paper 90 degrees counter clockwise	Yes
	Rotate 180	Rotate the drawing and paper 180 degrees	Yes
	Negative Paper	Reverse the background of the paper from white to black	No
	Raster-iz-ation	Switch from colored pens to black and white with pen patterns and other pen characteristics	No
	Toggle Color pat-terns	Shows pen patterns of colored lines	No
	Outline Polygons	Removes fills in polygons and polylines	No

[67] Viewing tools and editing tools

Pan View/View Fold The View Fold button appears only if the Repro Desk application is installed with Folding support. You must activate Folding in the file settings of the selected drawing. Pan View can be activated from the View menu.

Zoom tools

The Fit page and Zoom Select tools allow you to zoom in, zoom out, or select a viewing area to enlarge.

Attention: *Changes made with these features will only effect the view mode, the actual drawing is not effected.*

Fit Page With the Fit Page option you can display the entire drawing at maximum width and at maximum height on the paper. The proportional dimension are respected.

▼   **Using the Fit Page button**

Click the Fit Page button and the entire drawing will be displayed in the View window.

Zoom Select With the Zoom Select tool you can zoom in or zoom out on the drawing. When the Viewer is opened, this is the default tool. You have three ways of using this option: zoom in, zoom out or zoom select.

▼   **Zooming in**

1   Click the Zoom Select button.
2   Move the mouse pointer inside the drawing.
3   Click the left mouse button for 200% enlargement of the drawing in the viewer.

▼   **Zooming out**

1   Click the Zoom Select button.
2   Move the mouse pointer inside the drawing.
3   Click the right mouse button for 50% reduction of the drawing in the viewer.

▼   **Using Zoom select**

1   Click the Zoom Select button.
2   Move the mouse pointer inside the drawing.
3   Click and hold the left mouse button.
4   Drag the mouse to create a frame of the required size.
5   Release the left mouse button.
    The selected area in the frame will be enlarged.

View fold

The tool View fold shows you how the paper will be folded by showing the part of the drawing that will be on the top of the folded package in reverse video.

Attention: *Folding is only possible if the printer is equipped with a folding unit.*

▼ **Applying the View Fold option**

1 Click the View Fold button.
2 The part of the drawing that will be on top of the folded package flashes in reverse video.

Move drawing

The tool Move Drawing allows you to position manually the drawing on the paper.

Attention: *Changes made with this feature **will** effect the drawing or the printed drawing (layout).*

▼ **Moving a drawing**

1 Click the Move Drawing button.
2 Move the mouse pointer inside the drawing.
3 Click and hold the left mouse button.
4 Drag the drawing to the required position.
5 Release the left mouse button.

Border removal

With the Border Removal option you can remove border/trim marks electronically from a drawing.

If no border size is specified in the Imaging Properties window (0.0 mm), the size will be set to 2.5 mm. If already a border size is specified in the Imaging Properties window, this size will be used (see 'Border removal' on page 156).

Attention: *Changes made with this feature **will** effect the drawing.*

▼ **Removing a border**

Click the Border Removal button.
To undo border removal click the Border Removal button again.

Crop drawing

With the Crop Drawing option you can electronically erase anything outside or inside a selected area.

Attention: *Changes made with this feature **will** effect the drawing or the printed drawing (layout).*

▼ **Cropping outside selected area**

1 Click the Crop Outside button.
2 Move the mouse pointer inside the drawing.
3 Click and hold the left mouse button.
4 Drag the mouse to create a frame of the required size.
5 Release the left mouse button.
   The area outside the frame is grayed out. Only the selected area of the drawing will be printed.
6 Press F5 the remove the grayed part.
7 You can undo this setting by clicking the Crop Outside button again and pressing F5.

▼   **Cropping inside selected area**

1 Select 'Crop Drawing Inside' in the Drawing menu.
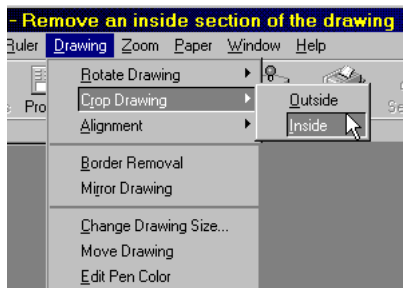
[68] Cropping outside a drawing

2 Move the mouse pointer inside the drawing.

3 Click and hold the left mouse button.

4 Drag the mouse to create a frame of the required size.

5 Release the left mouse button.
    The area inside the frame is grayed out. Only the selected area of the drawing
    will be printed.

6 You can undo this setting by selecting 'Crop Drawing Inside' in the Drawing
    menu again.

Enlarge detail

With the Enlarge detail option you can select a part of the drawing to fit the size
of the selected paper.

Attention: *Changes made with this feature **will** effect the drawing or the
printed drawing (layout).*

▼   **Creating a detail**

1 Click the Detail button.

2 Move the mouse to the drawing.

3 Hold the left mouse button.

4 Move the mouse to create a frame of the required size.

5 Release the left mouse button.
    The area inside the frame will be enlarged to fit the selected paper size.

Note: *To undo the enlargement click the Detail button again and select the complete drawing.*

Edit pen

With the Edit Pen option you can edit the pen settings. You can change the thickness, the pattern, the effect of a particular pen in a drawing.

▼ **Editing pens**

1 Click the Edit Pen button.
2 Move the mouse pointer to the penline you want to change.
3 Click the left mouse button.
  The Pen window of the selected pen appears.
4 Change the required settings like line thickness, patterns, and foreground effect.
5 Click OK.
  The Job window appears to ask you to save the changes you just made.
6 Click Yes to save the changes.
  You will return to the View window.
  Note: *When you do not want to save the changes click NO. The changes will not be used.*

Center drawing

With the Center Drawing option you can center the drawing on the paper according to all four sides of the drawing.

Attention: *Changes made with these features **will** effect the drawing.*

▼   **Centering a drawing**
Click the Center Drawing button.
The drawing is centered on the page.

When you click the Center Drawing button again the drawing will be
positioned as the original drawing without any alignment (the alignment is
defined as 0.0 x 0.0).

Align title block

With the Align Title Block button you can align the drawing according to the
top, bottom, and right hand edges of a the selected paper size.

Attention: *Changes made with these features **will** effect the drawing.*

▼   **Aligning the title block**
Click the Align Title Block button.
To undo click the Align Title Block button again. The drawing is put in the
upper left corner of the paper.

Mirror and Rotate

These tools mirror a drawing for preparing blueprints, rotate the drawing
clockwise, counter clockwise, or flip the drawing 180 degrees.

Attention: *Changes made with these features **will** effect the drawing.*

Mirror: With the Mirror button you can reverse the information in the selected
drawing for a mirrored image.

Rotate Right: With the Rotate Right button you can rotate the drawing and paper 90 degrees in clockwise direction.

Rotate Left: With the Rotate Left button you can rotate the drawing and paper 90 degrees in counter clockwise direction.

Rotate 180: With the Flip Drawing button you can rotate the drawing and paper 180 degrees.

▼　　**Using the mirror and rotation buttons**

Click the required rotation button. The drawing is rotated.
To undo the rotation click the button again.

Negative paper

With the Negative Paper button you can reverse the background of the paper from white to black. You can use this option to imitate DOS based CAD systems.

Changes made with this feature will only effect the view mode, the actual drawing **is not** effected.

▼　　**Using the Negative paper button**

Click the Negative paper button.
To undo the Negative paper function click the button again.

Rasterization

With the Rasterization mode you can convert the image from a vector (line) image to the raster image that will be printed on the paper, with all applied pen characteristics. This enables you to see what a drawing will look like, before it is put on paper.

Attention: *Changes made with this feature will only effect the view mode, the actual drawing **is not** effected.*

▼ **Using the Rasterization button**

Click the Rasterization button.

To undo the Rasterization function click the button again.

Color patterns

With the Color Pattern button you can apply patterns to color lines. This will result in a significant trade-off in time for viewing and printing.

Attention: *Changes made with this feature will only effect the view mode, the actual drawing **is not** effected.*

▼ **Using the Color pattern button**

Click the Color pattern button.

To undo the color patterns click again.

Outline polygons

With the Outline Polygons button you can remove fills in polygons and polylines. This can be helpful in determining whether a drawing was correctly prepared.

Attention: *Changes made with this feature will only effect the view mode, the actual drawing **is not** effected.*

▼   **Using the Outline Polygons button**

Click the Outline Polygon button.
To undo the Outline Polygon function click again.

Status bar

The status bar is located at the bottom of the Repro Desk window. It allows you to move through the drawings in a job list, to set the ruler type, and to change paper and drawing attributes.

| ◀ | ▶ | ▥ mm | ▤ 1153x817 | 🔍 1.9% | 🗋 1189x841 | ⊞ 1190x640 | ⬒ |

Previous/Next drawing

You can use the Left and Right arrow buttons of the status bar at the bottom of the Repro Desk window, to scroll through the drawings in the job. This function only works if all drawings are already opened in a viewer window.

| ◀ | ▶ |

Ruler

The Ruler button shows you the selected Viewer rulers type. You can set the rulers to measure in pixels, centimeters or millimeters or inches.

| ▥ mm |

▼   **Setting a type of ruler**
1 Click the Ruler button.
  The Ruler menu appears.
2 Select the required unit:
   ■ Inches
   ■ Millimeters
   ■ Centimeters
   ■ Pixels

Drawing size

The Drawing Size or Clipping button shows you the size of the current drawing or clipping area, see also 'Drawing size' on page 154

📄 1153x817
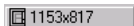
▼ **Changing Drawing Size**

1 Click the Drawing Size button.
   The Drawing Size menu appears.
2 Select the required option:
   - Rotate Drawing; to rotate the drawing to the Right, to the Left or 180 degrees
   - Crop Drawing; to crop the drawing inside or outside
   - Alignment; to align Center Drawing or Align Title Block
   - Border Removal
   - Mirror Drawing
   - Change Drawing Size
   - Move Drawing
   - Edit Pen Color.

Zoom status

The Zoom Status button shows you the current percentage of enlargement.

🔍 1.9%

▼ **Changing the zoom status**

1 Click the Zoom Status button. The Zoom Status menu appears.
2 Select the required option:
   - Fit: to fit to the page, to the width or to the height.
   - Percentages
   - Zoom In
   - Zoom Out
   - Zoom Select

Paper size

The Paper Size button shows you the current paper size.

`1189x841`
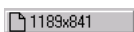
▼ **Changing Paper Size**
1 Click the Paper Size button.
  The Paper Size menu appears.
2 Select the required option:
  ■ Rotate paper This feature rotates the paper 90° (landscape orientation and portrait orientation)
  ■ Set left margin
  ■ Change paper size
  ■ Enlarge detail.

▼ **Setting a left margin for binding**
1 After clicking the paper size button select Set Left Margin. When you move your cursor over the drawing it changes to a black arrow and vertical bar.
2 Place the vertical bar at the position on your drawing where you want to set your left margin. Use the rulers to position it accurately.
3 Click once.
  The space allocated to the left margin of your drawing is displayed as a colored area.

Locator

The Locator box displays the coordinates of the current position of the pointer in the viewer.

`1190x-640`
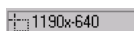
Second locator

The second Locator box is only valid when a selected area has been zoomed or cropped.
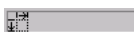
Viewer menu bar

Some Viewer options are only available from the menu bar at the top of the screen.

Printing from the viewer Choose Print from the File menu. This gives you access to standard Océ Repro Desk printing options (see chapter 14, 'Printing' on page 215).

▼ **Exporting a WMF file**

1 Choose Export WMF from the File menu.
2 Name your file and save it at the desired location. The file is saved as a Windows metafile.

Copying to the clipboard Choose Copy to Clipboard from the Edit menu. Your file is copied to the Windows clipboard.

Pan view The tool Pan View allows you to move manually across the viewer. In contrast to the Move Drawing feature, this feature will not affect the drawing. This command is very useful when you are zoomed in into a drawing and you wish to move across the drawing without repositioning the drawing on the paper.

▼ **Using the Pan view feature**

1 Choose Pan view from the View menu.
   The mouse pointer will change into a hand.
2 Click and hold the left mouse button.
3 Move the mouse pointer through the drawing towards the desired position.
4 Release the mouse button.

Undo and Redo Choose Undo from the Edit menu to undo the last action. Choose Redo to undo the previously undone action.

Viewer troubleshooting

This section provides some solutions to common problems you may have using the viewer.

The viewer will not open. The selected file may not be a supported vector or raster file. Is there an icon next to the filename, or a question mark? If it is a question mark, Océ Repro Desk does not recognize the file and it cannot be viewed.

The viewer opens, but you cannot see the drawing. The positioning of the drawing may be incorrect. First click Fit Page to view the entire drawing. You can also try to use Center Drawing or Title Block Align to put the drawing on paper. If the drawing does not appear correct on the drawing, use Move Drawing to position manually the drawing.

The viewer opens, but the size of the drawing is too small or too large. The size of the paper may be incorrect. Check paper size to be sure it is correct.

The scale of the drawing may be incorrect.
- Is scale set to 100% in the job? If it is an AutoCAD file, was the correct AutoCAD scale applied? Try selecting or deselecting 'Use metric scaling'.
- If it is a CalComp plot file, is the stepping correct? To check this, unprocess the problem drawing file and select Edit Item Information.

Chapter 9
Imaging properties

This chapter describes the set of tools in the Imaging Properties which you can use to define the appearance of the drawing on the paper.

Imaging properties

To define the appearance of each drawing in a job on the paper you can use the set of tools in the Imaging Properties dialogue box.

▼ **Opening the Imaging Properties dialogue box**

1 Click the quick menu bar under Properties.
   The Properties pull-down menu appears.
2 Select Imaging Properties.
   The Imaging Properties dialogue box opens. The values shown belong to the selected file in the job.
3 Press the little arrow buttons in the lower right corner to browse through the output properties of all drawings in the job window.

The Imaging Properties dialogue box contains 8 settings each represented by a tab:
■ Paper size
■ Drawing size
■ Alignment
■ Border removal
■ Margins
■ Zoom
■ Orientation
■ Folder

Paper size

You can select the paper size in the Imaging Properties. Increasing or decreasing paper size will not affect the size of the drawing unless so specified.
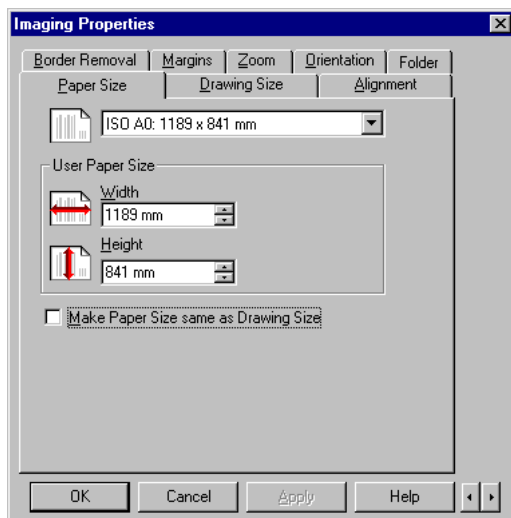
[69] Imaging Properties: Paper Size

In the Paper Size tab you can define following options:

Change paper size In the pull down menu you can select a pre-defined standard paper size.

Note: *In the configure menu, you can specify out of which paper sizes you can choose in this window (see 'Paper sizes' on page 74).*

User Paper Size   In the User Paper Size entry box you can enter custom sizes by typing in sizes.

Note: *When the selected paper size is not available, a warning will appear and you will be given option to print on an available larger format.*

Make Paper Size same as Drawing Size When you select this option the paper size is scaled to fit to the drawing size.

Drawing size

You can use the Drawing Size tab to clip a specific area from the original drawing. The outside region will not be printed.

▼ **For example, defining an 841 x 1189 mm area to print**

1 Select the file.

2 Select View and the Imaging Properties.

3 Select the Drawing size tab.

4 Set the drawing size to 841 x 1189 mm.
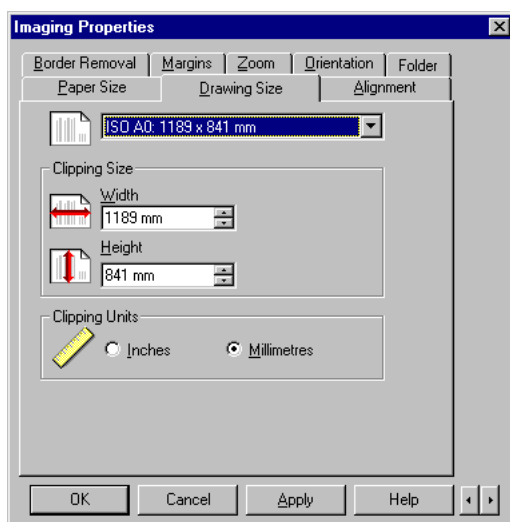
[70] Imaging Properties: Drawing Size

In the Drawing Size tab you can define the following options:

Standard drawing size In the pull down menu you can select a predefined standard drawing size.

Clipping Size In this entry box you can enter custom drawing sizes by typing in sizes.

Clipping Units In the Clipping Units you can select inches or millimeters used in the clipping size.

Alignment

You use the Alignment tab option to define the positioning of the drawing on paper, referred to the upper left hand corner.

For example, when you want to add a 2" or 40 mm, margin to the left hand side of the drawing, you could define a width alignment of 2 inches or 40 mm. When you want to add a 2" or 40 mm margin to the right side, you could define an alignment of -2" or - 40 mm.
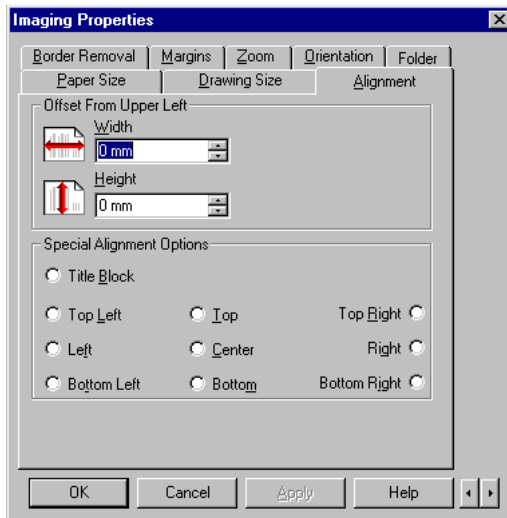
[71] Imaging Properties: Alignment

In the Alignment tab you can define the following options:

Offset from Upper Left In the Offset from upper left entry box you can enter width and height by typing in sizes.

Special Alignment Options Click on the required option:
- Center: When you select this option the drawing is centered on the paper
- Align title block: Align title block will place the drawing with an even margin along the top, bottom, right side of the paper, so that the title block for each drawing will be even.

Attention: *When the drawing is rotated, title block alignment may not work.*

Border removal

When you activate the Border Removal tab the margins of the drawing are erased electronically. You can use this option to eliminate trim marks added by the author of a drawing.
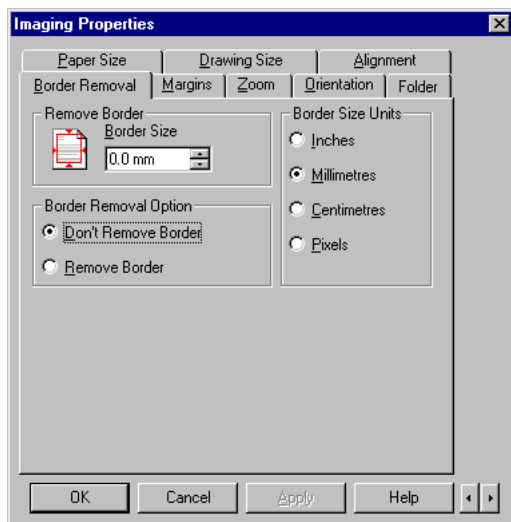
[72] Imaging Properties: Border Removal

In the Border Removal tab you can select:

■ to remove the border
■ the amount of border removal
■ the unit to measure the border removal: Inches, Millimeters, Centimeters or Pixels

Margins

In the Margins tab you can define to add a margin to the left hand side of the drawing (default is Off).
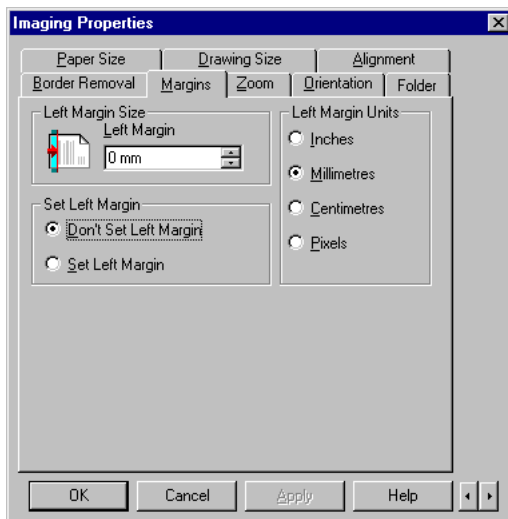
[73] Imaging Properties: Margins

In Margin tab you can select:
- to add a left margin
- the size of left margin
- the unit to measure the left margin: Inches, Millimeters, Centimeters or Pixels.

Zoom

In the Zoom tab you can define the custom enlargements and reductions.
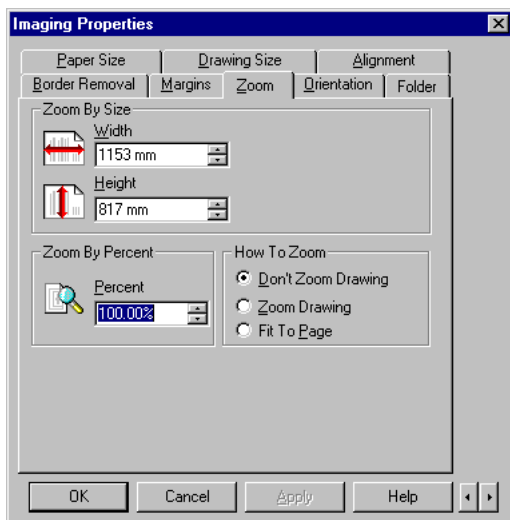
[74] Imaging Properties: Zoom

In the Zoom tab you can select:

Zoom by size In the Zoom by Size entry box you can define the width or the height of the drawing, once selected a dimension the other dimension will proportionally be adapted.

Zoom by Percent In the Zoom by Percent entry box you can define a scaling percentage.

How to Zoom In the How to Zoom entry box you can select your plot not zoomed, your plot zoomed with the percentage or your drawing zoomed to fit on the selected paper size.

Orientation

You can set the orientation of the paper and the way the drawing is printed on the paper in the Orientation tab. You can see the effect of your selected options in the figure on the tab.
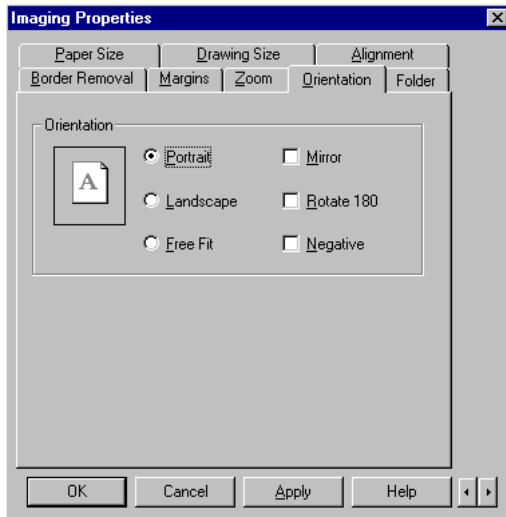
[75] Imaging Properties: Orientation

You can select the following options:
- Portrait, Landscape or Free Fit
- Mirror
- Rotate 180°
- Negative

Free Fit If you select this option, you can apply the rotation and mirroring features on the drawing without affecting the paper orientation. This allows you for example to orientate the drawing different than the underlying paper.

Folder

If the job is going to be printed on an Océ printer that is equipped with a folder, you can specify Folder settings. You can save the Folder settings in a Configuration file, and recall them whenever needed.

When creating the job, you can see in the viewer what part of the drawing will be on top after folding (see 'View fold' on page 138).
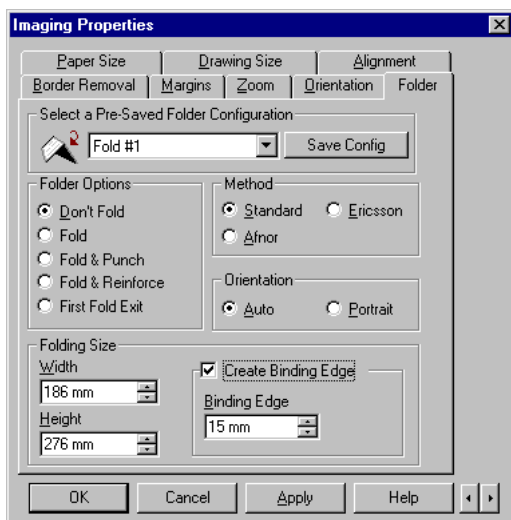
[76] Imaging Properties: Folder

Attention: *Make sure that the option 'Auto Paper Rotate' in the Options menu of the menu bar, is NOT selected.*

Folder Options The folder of the Océ printer can be equipped with a number of options. Depending on the configuration of the folder you are using, you can specify the following options:

- Don't Fold: Output will not be folded.
- Fold: Output will be folded without any options.
- Fold & Punch: Output will be folded, and punched (if the punch unit is installed).
- Fold & Reinforce: Output will be folded, and a reinforcement strip will be added (if reinforcement unit is installed).
- First Fold Exit: Output will only be folded in one direction (first fold), and then delivered in the First Fold Delivery tray.

Note: *To use punching, one of the belts must be selected for the output delivery (see 'Delivery (Océ 9600)' on page 270).*

Method You can specify one of the following folding methods: Standard, Ericsson or AFNOR.

Folding size You can specify the Folding Width and Folding Height.

Binding Edge You can select if you want a binding edge, and specify the size of that edge.

Chapter 10
Set pen parameters

This chapter describes how to define pens:
- *'Pen settings' on page 164*
- *'Other pen features' on page 174*
- *'Click OK.' on page 175.*

Pen settings

A pen is used to control the appearance of lines drawn by a customer.

■ Pens are only applicable for Vector files, so not on Raster files

■ Pen zero is used for Raster files and for Stamps (grayshading).

Océ Repro Desk can set pen weights (width), patterns, shapes, effects, and colors. This allows you to customize the appearance of your customer's drawings. Océ Repro Desk can create, save, and store an infinite number of pen sets.

When a job is opened, Océ Repro Desk will apply a pen set called STANDARD.PEN. This pen set is used for regular use. You can view the pen settings using the Pen set icon on the button bar.

The Pen settings window appears.

The STANDARD.PEN is installed at the time of installation of Océ Repro Desk. Pen settings need to be customized only once. When you transmit your jobs for printing, your personal settings will be applied to every job you send.

When you open a new pen set the following attributes are default:
- solid black pens
- .25 millimeters wide, for all pens
- transparent lines
- colors used are the same as in the AutoCAD palette.

When you want to change these attributes follow the next procedure.

▼ **Setting up a pen set**

1 Select the drawing of which the pen settings have to be changed.
2 Click the Pen Set button.
   The pen settings window pops-up.
3 Select the pen number you want to change by clicking it once.
4 Click the properties button in the tool bar.
   The property window for the selected pen appears.
5 Select the property you would like to change
6 Make the desired change
7 Click Apply
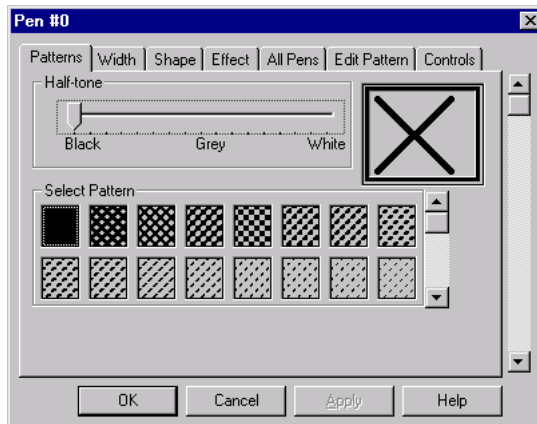
In the property window you have a selection of 7 attribute tabs which can be modified:
- patterns
- width
- shape
- effect
- all pens
- edit pattern
- controls.

Each attribute will be described in detail below.

Before a pen setting becomes active you need to save the pen settings first

Note: *The scroll bar on the right hand side of the Properties Sheet allows you to quickly move to other pens in the set.*

Pen patterns

You can select from 119 different pen patterns. These patterns fall into three broad categories:

■ Grayscale patterns: Patterns used for achieving a percentage of black, which are commonly used in filled areas of a drawing.

■ Active patterns: Patterns that change direction, depending on the curve of a line.

■ Miscellaneous patterns such as boxes, tiles, slants, diamonds, etc.
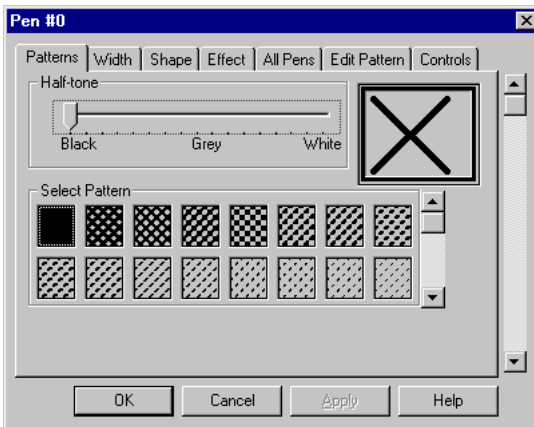
You can define the shade of grey with the slider bar and by clicking on a pattern.

▼   **Selecting the grey shade**

1 Open the desired property according to the procedure described in 'Setting up a pen set' on page 165.

2 Click the Patterns tab.

3 Click and hold the slider in the halftone slider.

4 Drag the slider to the desired grey shade

5 Click Apply

▼   **Selecting the pattern**

1 Open the desired property according to the procedure described in 'Setting up a pen set' on page 165.
2 Click the Patterns tab
3 Select the pattern by clicking the desired pattern with the left mouse button.
4 Click Apply
   Note: *To view all patterns, use the scroll bar, which is to ther right of the select pattern option.*

Pen width

You can set pen widths from 0 to 40 pixels. Océ Repro Desk uses pixels, millimeters, mils (1/1000 inch), and centimeters for pen weights. Because pens are measured by pixels (dots), measurement is limited. If it is necessary to round pen thicknesses, Océ recommends that you do so in consultation with the author of a drawing.
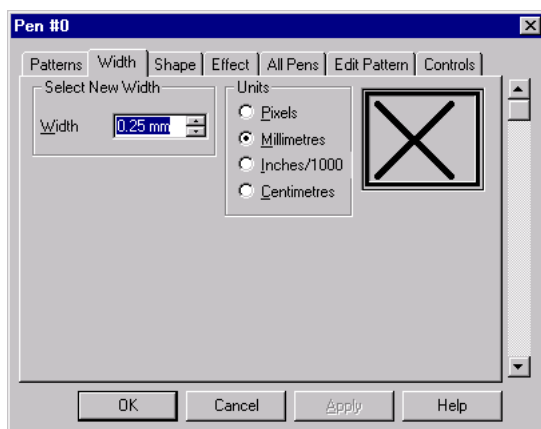
Pen shape

A pen's shape refers to the shape of the tip of a pen.

You can select out of three different pen shapes:

■ Round ended
■ Square ended
■ Butt ended
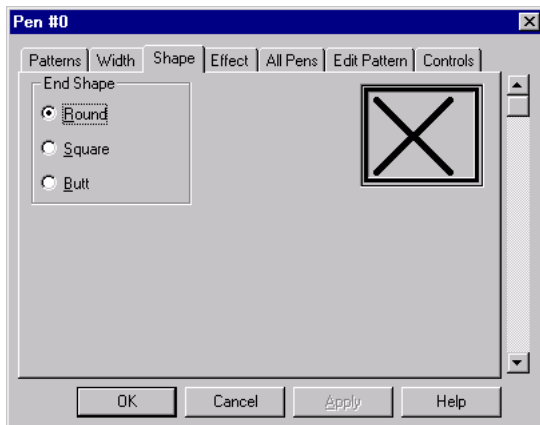
Effect

A pen's effect refers to the appearance of a pen when it crosses another pen. A pen's effect can be:

■ Transparent (default). Pens lay over each other without either blocking the appearance of either line. The colors merge at an intersection of lines.
■ Opaque. An opaque line will display on top of another line that is lighter in color. Thus, only the darker color line is visible.
■ Xor. An Xor line will display on top of another line that is darker in color. This effect is only visible when you print it to a color printer.
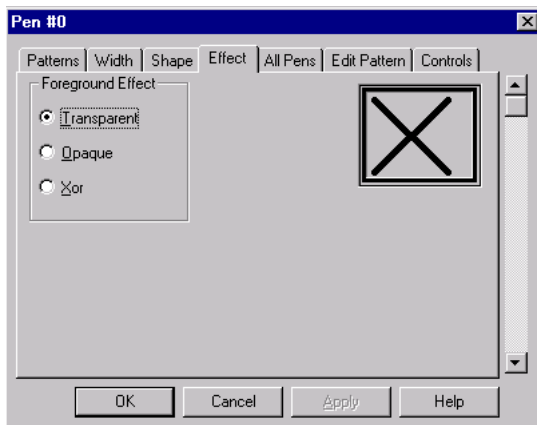
All pens

On the All Pens tab you can make settings for the whole pen set.
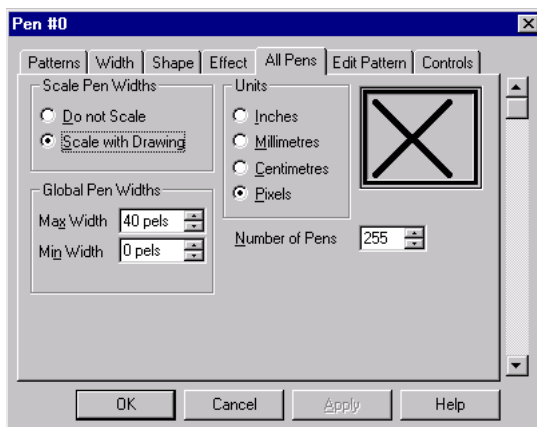
On the All Pens tab you can define:

Scale pen width This option applies when changes are made to scale. If you are preparing reductions or enlargements, you have the option of having Océ Repro Desk automatically change the widths of the pens along with the length of the lines. The default setting is to change the scale of pens when there are changes in scale to the drawing.

Global pen widths You can set the minimum and maximum pen widths which will be allowed in a drawing. The default minimum pen width is 0 pixels, and the default maximum is 40 pixels.

Pen width units You can choose to display pen widths in inches, pixels, millimeters and centimeters.

Number of pens Océ Repro Desk supports up to 255 pens (and pen 0). You can reduce the number of pens in a pen set. The default setting is 255 pens.

Edit pen pattern

Next to the 119 pre-defined pen patterns that you can choose from, Océ Repro Desk allows you to create your own custom set pattern, which can be saved for future use.
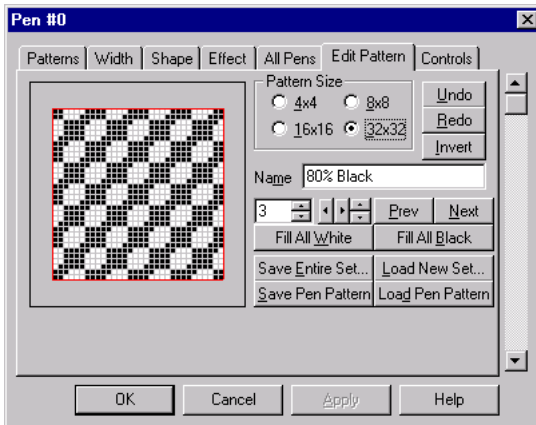
You can modify following options to create your custom pattern:

Pattern viewer Use the mouse to click pixels in the viewer on or off. The left mouse button turns a pixel black; the right mouse button turns a pixel white. This viewer measures 32 pixels by 32 pixels.

Pattern size A grid divides the viewer into sections. Changes made in one section of the grid are copied to corresponding sections. This ensures uniformity in new custom patterns.

Undo/Redo Erases or redraws changes made in the pattern viewer.

Invert Reverses the image in the pattern viewer so that white pixels become black and black pixels become white.

Name Give the pattern a name. This name will be displayed when the pen set is open.

Pattern number box Allows you to select one of the 255 patterns to edit. If you are creating a new pattern, Océ recommends that you use a pattern number above 200.

Arrows Are used to adjust the position of the pattern within a grid.

Fill all white Fills the selected pattern grid with white pixels.

Fill all black Fills the selected pattern grid with black pixels.

Save entire set Saves the set of patterns. Océ Repro Desk installs a default set of patterns called DEFAULT.SET. If you wish to add patterns to your set, save the set using the same name.

Note: *Make sure you do not overwrite existing patterns 1 through 200, because remote users will be using the DEFAULT.SET as well. If they request a default pattern that you have changed and which they do not have, their drawings will be incorrect. If you are creating a special set of patterns, save the set under a different name.*

Load new set Used to load a complete set of patterns.

Save pen pattern Saves an individual pattern. This is useful for remote customers who create a few individual patterns. This will save only an individual pattern. If a person has a special pattern, they should save it. This pattern can be added to a JOB and sent by modem, network, or diskette. The author of the drawing will have to tell you to which pen(s) the new pattern applies.

Load pen pattern Used to load an individual pattern. If the pattern is to be re-used, it can be added as a pen pattern to the DEFAULT pen set. If you decide to add a single pattern to this set, be sure to save it above pattern 200.

Active patterns Océ Repro Desk active patterns are numbers 80-87 and 88-95. The slope of the line changes for each group. For example; pattern 80 corresponds to pattern 88, pattern 81 corresponds to pattern 89, and so on.

HP-GL/2 pen controls

This tab is only applicable to HP-GL/2 files.
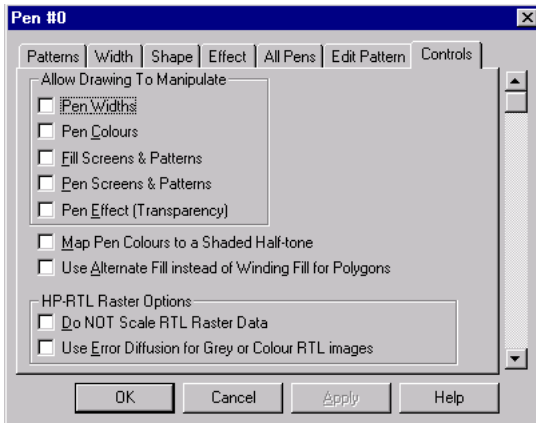
If you use HP-GL/2 format drawing files, pen attributes such as width, color and so on are built into the drawing file.

Note: *The pen controls settings affect all pens, not just the current pen.*

This tab allows you to use the pen attributes set in the HP-GL/2 drawing file and not the Océ Repro Desk pen settings. Users of HP-GL/2 files should normally check all the following options:

Pen widths check this option to use the pen width sizes which have been defined in the HP-GL/2 drawing file.

Pen colors check this option to use the pen colors which have been defined in the HP-GL/2 drawing file.

Fill screens and patterns check this option to use the area fill halftone screens and fill patterns which have been defined in the HP-GL/2 drawing file.

Pen screens and patterns check this option to use the pen halftone screens and pen patterns which have been defined in the HP-GL/2 drawing file.

Pen effect (transparency) check this option to use the transparency settings defined in the HP-GL/2 drawing file.

The following options are also available on this tab:

Map pen colors to a shaded halftone this option maps colors to different levels of grayscale when you are using a color file to print on a monochrome printer.

Use alternate fills instead of winding fills changes the behavior that is used to fill polygons in Vector oriented files. In general, the modes differ only in cases where a complex, overlapping polygon must be filled (for example, a five-sided polygon that forms a five-pointed star with a pentagon in the center). In such cases, Alternate mode fills every other enclosed region within the polygon (that is, the points of the star), but Winding mode fills all regions (that is, the points and the pentagon).

Do NOT scale HP-RTL raster data HP-RTL is a special format of HP-GL which allows inclusion of raster data within the Vector data. However, if such files are scaled, the raster data will become very large due to the nature of raster data. Selecting this option prevents the raster part of the drawing to be scaled.

Use error diffusion for gray or color RTL images To represent shades of gray in RTL raster data, Repro Desk employs Halftone Diffusion by default. You may want to use Error Diffusion instead, to improve the appearance of your image.

Other pen features

You can also modify the pen parameters directly in the standard pen window.

▼ **Modifying a pen attribute**

1 Open the Job window with the required drawings.

2 Click the Pen set button, the standard pen set window appears.

3 Select the attribute you want to modify and click the right mouse button. A pull- down menu with a list of settings appears. The options listed in this menu are popular options.
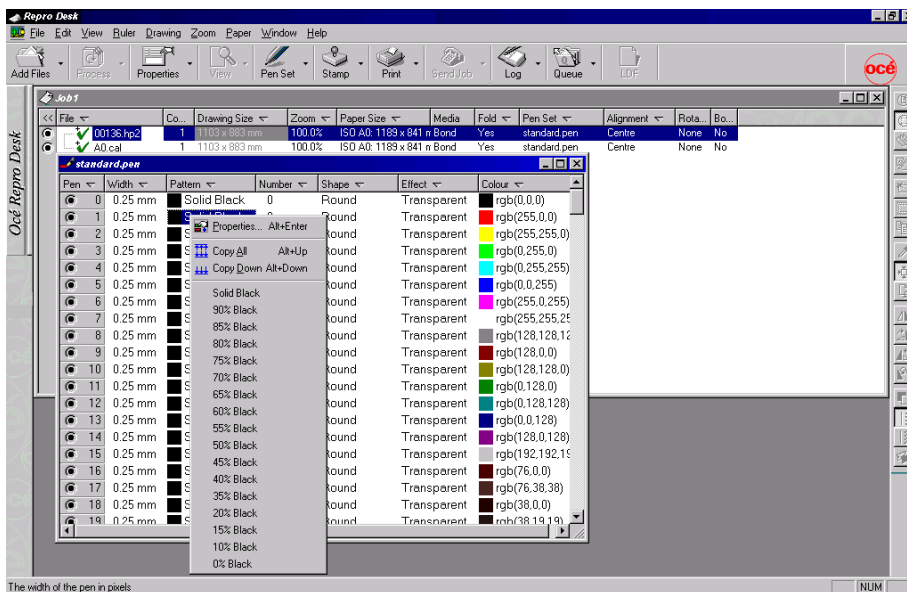
You can also select one of the following options in each attribute:

Properties To select the Pen property window.

Copy all To copy the attribute setting to all pens.
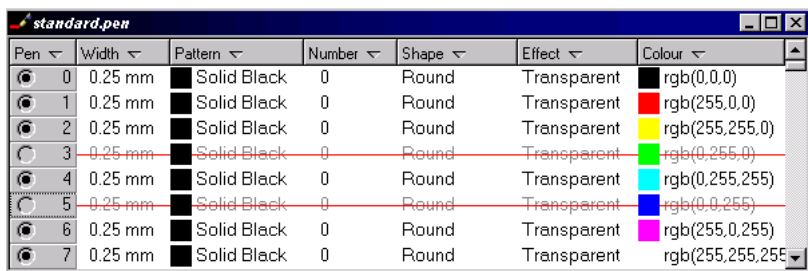
Copy down To copy the attribute setting to all pens below the highlighted one.

When you are in the pen mode, you have two additional features in the Edit menu:

Shave all pens When you select this option the width of all pens is changed to a width one size smaller.

Thicken all pens When you select this option the width of all pens is changed to a width one size bigger.

You can deselect a pen by clicking the indicator in front of the pen set. The pen will be crossed by a red line.

You can define the color of the pen.

▼   **Defining the color of a pen**

1 Open the Job window with the required drawings.

2 Click the Pen set button
   The standard pen set window appears.

3 Double click the color attribute of the pen you want to modify.
   The color pallet appears.

4 Click the Define Custom Colors tab;
   A color palette appears.

5 You can fill in the desired RGB values, the hue, the saturations and the luminance manually or you can select the color from the color palette.

6 Click the Add to custom colors tab.

7 Click OK.

Chapter 11
Define Stamps and Overlays

This chapter describes how to make stamps and use overlays.

Electronic stamps

An Electronic Stamp is text that is to be overlaid on drawings or on empty pages to create banners.

▼   **Creating or changing an electronic stamp**

1 Click the Stamp button.

The Electronic Stamp window opens.
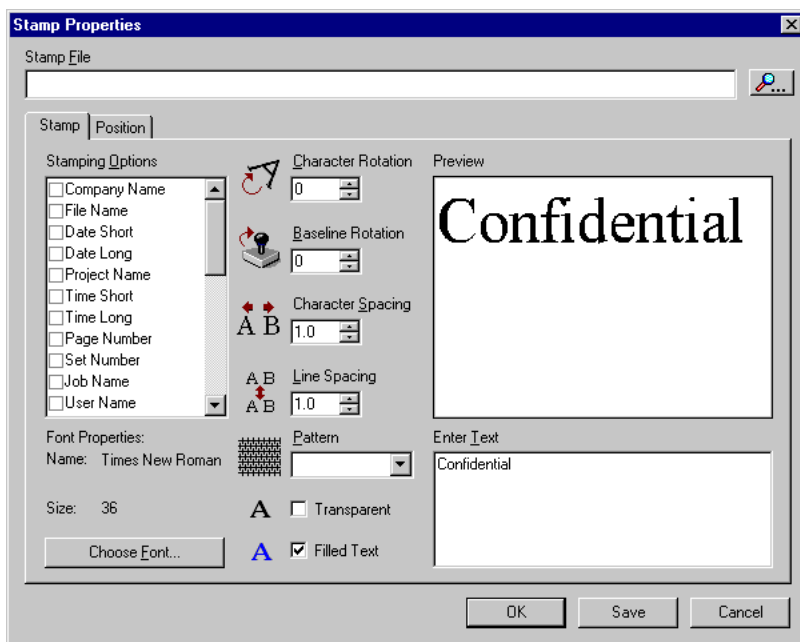
[77] Stamp Properties window: Stamp

2 If you want to change an existing stamp, use the 🔍 button so select this stamp.
3 Edit the stamp outlook. Edit options are described in the next paragraph.
4 When you have made the required settings, click the Save button.
For a new stamp, you can specify a name and directory.

5 If you want to add the new stamp to the current job, click OK.
The Stamp Properties window will disappear, and the stamp will automatically be added to the current job (if any).

6 If you do *not* want to add the new stamp to the current job, click Cancel.
The Stamp Properties window will disappear, and you can add the stamp to a job later on (see 'Adding a stamp to a drawing' on page 182).

7 If you have modified the Repro Desk work order using the Work Order Customizer, you will have different stamp elements available in the Stamping Options list box.

Stamp options

The Stamp window contains following elements:

Preview window The Preview window displays how changes such as font, rotation and spacing will affect your text.

Enter text window The text used for the label is displayed in this window as plain text.

Stamping options Mark the appropriate check box to add information such as date, time, project and file name, page and set number to your label. This information is directly linked to the file and the computer, so when you print the stamp or label you have current date, time and file name etc. This information is displayed as codes in the Enter Text window.

Note: *If you have selected the File Name option and the drawing is processed, the original path of the drawing is displayed in the stamp. Otherwise it only shows the filename without the path.*

Font properties Click 'Choose Font' button to open the font dialogue box where you can change the type, size and style of the font. The current font settings are displayed in the Font Sample field.

Character rotation field Rotates the letters and the baseline to change text orientation. Use the up arrow to rotate the text counter-clockwise and use the down arrow to rotate the text clockwise.

Baseline rotation field Rotates the baseline only. Use the up arrow to rotate the baseline counter-clockwise and use the down arrow to rotate the baseline clockwise.

Character spacing field Use the up arrow to increase the space between two characters and use the down arrow to decrease the space between two characters.

Line spacing field Use the up arrow to increase the space between two lines and use the down arrow to decrease the space between two lines in lines of text.

Pattern field You can choose a pattern to fill the characters

Transparent If you select this option, underlaying information on the drawing will stay visible, depending on the used pattern, grayscale or color.

Filled text If you select this option, characters are filled. Default solid black will be used to fill the characters, but you can also choose a pattern (see above). If this option is not selected, outline characters will be used.

OK button Applies the changes you have made. The Stamp Properties window will disappear, and the stamp will automatically be added to the current job (if any).

Save button Saves the text with all its settings you have created as a label file on your computer.

Cancel button Closes the Electronic Stamp dialogue box without saving the changes you have made.

Note: *The color of the stamp is determined by pen 0 of the default pen set.*

Position options

In the Position window, you can specify how the stamp should be positioned on the paper. You can see the result in the Preview field.

Note: *After adding the stamp to a drawing in a job, you can also use the viewer to position the stamp on a drawing (WYSIWYG).*
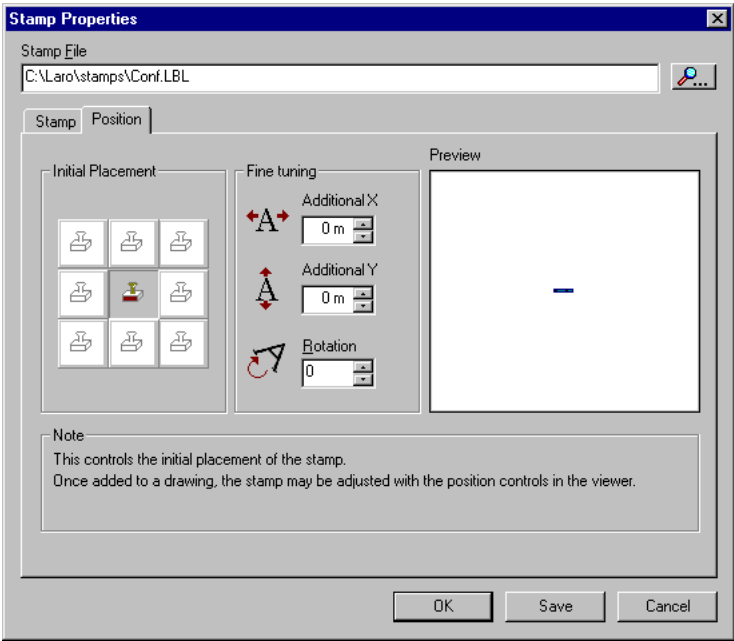
[78] Stamp properties window: Position

The Position window contains following elements:

Initial placement You can select one of the standard positions for the stamp on the paper.

Fine tuning After selecting a standard stamp placement, you can specify small adjustments to move or rotate the stamp on the paper.

Adding a stamp to a drawing

After creating and saving, you can add a stamp to a drawing as explained below.

▼ **Adding a stamp to a drawing**

1 Open the job containing the desired drawing

2 Click the drawing you want to add the stamp to with the right mouse button.
   A drop-down window appears.
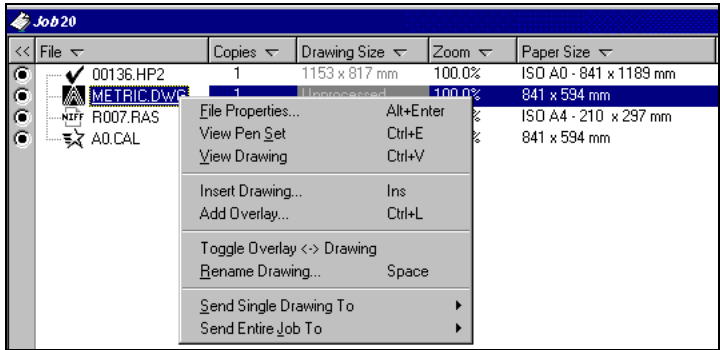
3 Select Add Overlay.
   The Add overlay to drawing window appears.

4 Fill in the file name of the stamp you want to add.

5 Click the Open button.

6 In the job window, the stamp name is indented and added to the base drawing.
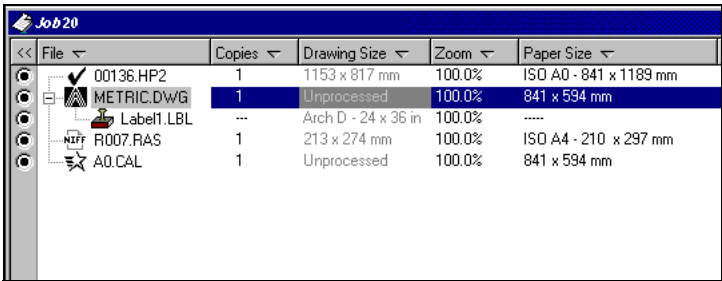
Adding a stamp to all drawings

You can add the same stamp to all drawings in a job.

▼ **Adding a stamp to all drawings**

1 Add a stamp to one drawing using the procedure above.

2 In the Job window, right click the stamp name.
A menu appears.

3 From the menu, choose Copy All Overlay.
The stamp is added to all drawings in the job.

Overlay files

An electronic overlay is when one electronic drawing file is placed on top of a second electronic drawing file. The two drawings are printed out on one and the same piece of paper with the overlay drawing superimposed over the base drawing. You can overlay drawing files and stamps.

▼ **Add an overlay**

1 Open the job containing the desired drawing
2 Click the drawing you want to add the overlay to with the right mouse button. A drop-down window appears
3 Select Add Overlay.
   The Add overlay to drawing window appears.
4 Fill in the file name of the overlay you want to add.
5 Click the Open button.
6 In the job window, the stamp name is indented and added to the base drawing.
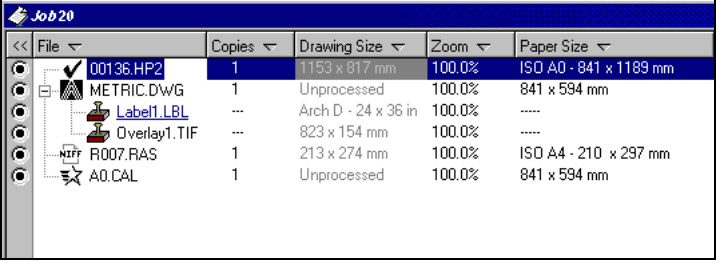
View and position a drawing

You can use the viewer to see the result of adding stamps and overlays to a drawing. It is also possible to change the position of a stamp or overlay, and directly see the result in the View window.

▼ **View a drawing with added stamp or overlay**

1 In the Job window, double click on the added stamp or overlay.
Note: *If you have added more than one stamp or overlay to a drawing, double click on the last stamp or overlay to view the final result.*

2 The View window will open to show you how the added stamp or overlay is added to the drawing.

Example: Consider the following job window:

<< File ▽	Copies ▽	Drawing Size ▽	Zoom ▽	Paper Size ▽
✓ 00136.HP2	1	1153 x 817 mm	100.0%	ISO A0 - 841 x 1189 mm
METRIC.DWG	1	Unprocessed	100.0%	841 x 594 mm
Label1.LBL	---	Arch D - 24 x 36 in	100.0%	-----
Overlay1.TIF	---	823 x 154 mm	100.0%	-----
R007.RAS	1	213 x 274 mm	100.0%	ISO A4 - 210 x 297 mm
A0.CAL	1	Unprocessed	100.0%	841 x 594 mm

To view the final result of drawing1 together with Label1 and Overlay1 you have to select Overlay1 and click the View button in the toolbar.

■ If you select Label1 and click the View button only drawing1 and Label1 will be viewed.

■ If you select drawing1 and click the View button only drawing1 will be viewed.

▼　**Position a stamp or overlay in the viewer**

  1 Open the drawing and the added stamp or overlay in the viewer, as described above.
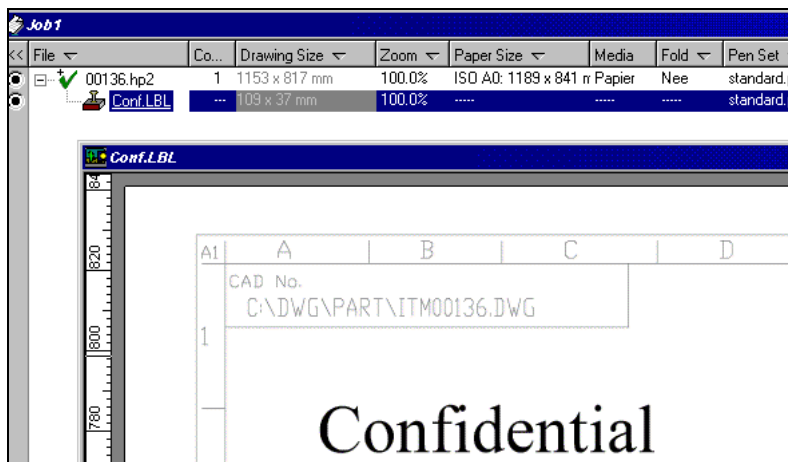
[79] Position a stamp in the viewer

  2 Click on the ✎ button in the toolbar of the viewer.

  3 Click on the stamp you want to move, and hold the mouse button while moving the stamp or overlay.
  You can directly see the result in the View window.

Océ Repro Desk

User Manual

Chapter 12
Send jobs

This chapter describes how to send jobs via modem, queue or on diskette, and how to prepare a work order (job ticket), including notes for the printer office.

océ

Send jobs

When you are ready to have your final drawings printed on a high end printer, there are several ways of sending out your work. Whichever way you choose to send your job, Océ Repro Desk automatically attaches the correct pen set and the corresponding work order.

Send a job to a network queue

You can send your job directly to a network queue for attended or unattended printing.

▼ **Send a job to a network queue**

1 Click the 'Send Job' button.

The 'Send Job To...' window displays.
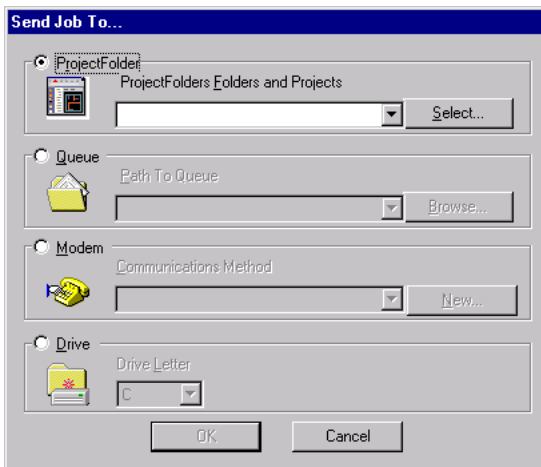
2 Select the 'Queue' radio button.
3 Select the desired path from the drop-down list or click 'Browse' to navigate to a different location.
4 Click OK.
The 'Send Job' window displays the work order.
5 Fill in the required fields in the work order.

6 Click 'Submit'.

Send a job by modem

If you have a modem and you have installed and configured ApModem software, you can send your drawings to the job printer via a modem connection.

▼ **Send a job via the modem**

1 Click the 'Send Job' button.

The 'Send Job To...' window displays.
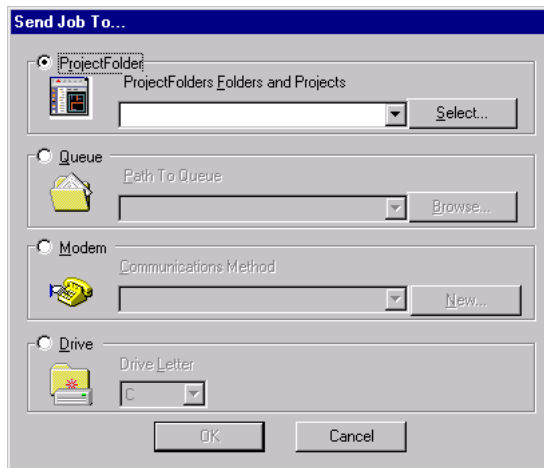
2 Select the 'Modem' radio button.
3 Select 'ApModem' in the 'Communications Method' drop-down list.
Note: *If the item you need is not listed, go to 'Add a communication method' on page 191.*
4 Click OK.
The 'Send Job' window displays the work order.
5 Fill in the required fields in the work order. (See 'Fill out a work order' on page 195).
6 Click 'Submit'.

Send a job via FTP

Sending a job via FTP is very similar to sending by modem.

▼ **Send a job via FTP**

1 Click the 'Send Job' button.

The 'Send Job To...' window displays.
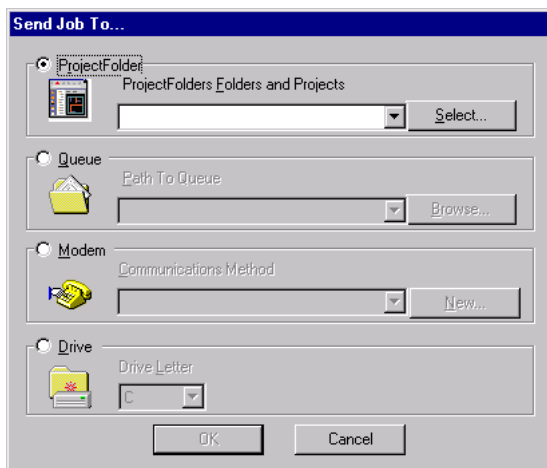
2 Select the 'Modem' radio button.
3 Select 'ApFTP' in the 'Communications Method' drop-down list.
 Note: *If the item you need is not listed, go to 'Add a communication method' on page 191.*
4 Click OK.
 The 'Send Job' window displays the work order.
5 Fill in the required fields in the work order. (See 'Fill out a work order' on page 195).
6 Click 'Submit'.

▼ **Add a communication method**

1 In the 'Send job to ...' dialog box, click 'Modem.
2 Click 'New'.
3 The 'Add Communications Method' dialog box appears.

Add Communications Method	✕

Method Name:

Executable:

Script:

Additional Arguments:

☑ Compress Files Before Sending

OK   Cancel

4 Type a name in the 'Method Name' field. For example: 'ApModem'.
5 Browse to the required communication executable. For example: 'ApModem32.exe'.
   Note: *Both 'Method Name' and 'Executable' are required fields.*
6 Click OK to return to the' Send Job To...'dialog box with the newly added method now in the list.
7 If required, return to 'Send a job via the modem' on page 189 or 'Send a job via FTP' on page 190.

Send a job to be stored on disk

You can save your job onto a hard drive or floppy disks to take to your job printer.

▼ **Send a job to be stored on disk**

1 Click the 'Send Job' button.
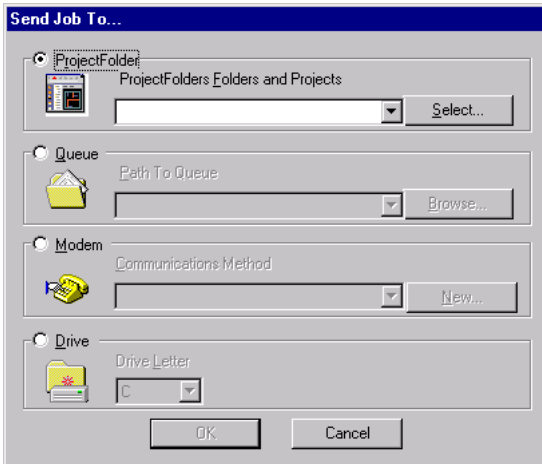
The 'Send Job To...' dialog box appears.

2 Select the 'Drive' radio button.

3 Select the drive letter from the drop-down list.

4 Click OK.

The job is automatically compressed, using an internal compression tool, and is stored on the target disk.

The 'Send Job' window displays the work order.

5 Fill in the required fields in the work order. (See 'Fill out a work order' on page 195).

6 Click 'Submit'.

The file is saved at the root of the selected disk as 'job.zip'.

Note: *This will overwrite any previous job which has been saved to the same disk.*

Send a job by e-mail

You can e-mail a job to your reprographer, if the reprographer accepts jobs submitted in that manner and if you have MAPI-compliant e-mail installed.

There are two methods: with or without a work order.

▼ **Send a job by e-mail without a work order**

1 In the job window, right-click any drawing within the job.
A menu appears.
2 In the menu, click 'Send Entire Job To'.
A submenu appears.
3 Click 'E-mail recipient'.
The e-mail message dialog box appears with the job attached as a .zip file.
4 If necessary, change the name of the .zip file.
5 Add print order instructions in the body of the e-mail.
6 Type a recipient name.
7 Click 'Send'.

▼ **Send a job by e-mail with a work order**

1 Click the 'Send Job' button.
The 'Send Job To...' dialog box appears.
2 Select the 'Drive' radio button.
3 Select the drive letter from the drop-down list.
4 Click OK.
The job is automatically compressed, using an internal compression tool, and is stored on the target disk.
The 'Send Job' window displays the work order.
5 Fill in the required fields in the work order. (See 'Fill out a work order' on page 195).
6 Click 'Submit'.
The file is saved at the root of the selected disk as 'job.zip'.
Note: *This will overwrite any previous job which has been saved to the same disk.*
7 Go to Windows Explorer.
8 Navigate to the job on the drive.
9 Right click the job.
A menu appears.
10 Select 'Send to'.
11 Select 'Mail recipient'.
The e-mail message dialog box appears with the job attached as a .zip file.

12 If necessary, change the name of the .zip file.

13 Add print order instructions in the body of the e-mail.

14 Type a recipient name.

15 Click 'Send'.

Send files to a ProjectPoint™ sites

You can process drawings in Repro Desk, then send them to a ProjectPoint site where they can be viewed by anyone with a password to the site. You can send an entire job, or a single drawing.

▼ **Send a job to a ProjectPoint site**

1 Click the 'Send Job' button.
The 'Send Job To...' dialog box appears.

2 Select the 'ProjectPoint' radio button.

3 Select the project from the list or click 'Select' to navigate to the desired site.

4 Fill in the required fields in the work order. (See 'Fill out a work order' on page 195).

5 Click 'Submit'.
The order receipt and 'Add to ProjectPoint' wizard appear .

6 Follow the steps in the wizard.

7 Click 'Finish'.
The job is sent to the 'ProjectPoint' site.

8 Click 'Print' to print the order receipt.
or

9 Click 'Close' to close it without printing.

▼ **Send a single drawing to a ProjectPoint site**

1 In the job window, right-click the name of a drawing.
A menu appears.

2 Click 'Send Single Drawing To ...'.
A submenu appears.

3 Click 'ProjectPoint'.
The ProjectPoint wizard appears.

4 Follow the steps in the wizard.

5 Click 'Finish'.
The selected drawing is sent.

Fill out a work order

An electronic work order is automatically attached to your Job when you send it. This work order contains information to identify yourself and your company and detailed instructions for the job printer on how your job should be processed, delivered and billed.

The work order

Required fields are in boldface type. If they are not filled out, the job will not be sent.

[80] work order, 1 of 3

Company Type the name of your company.

Contact Type the name of the person whom the job printer should contact for further information about the Job being sent.

E-mail Address Type an e-mail address where the contact person can be reached.

Phone Number Enter a phone number where the contact person can be reached.

Phone Number 2 Type any additional phone number for the contact person

Fax Number Type the company or department fax number.

Account Number Type your account number with the job printer.

Delivery Address Type the address to which bills concerning this job should be sent.

Split Address If the delivery is to be made to more than one site, type the other address here.

Billing Address Type the address to which bills concerning this job should be sent.

Contact information Type any additional information about the contact person.

[81] work order, 2 of 3

Project Type the name of the project.

P.O. Number Type your Purchase Order number.

Delivery Method From the list, select the way you would like to have your prints delivered.

Reimbursable From the list, select whether the cost will be reimbursed, by whom and for what purpose.

Job Due Date From the lists, select the month, day, and year you would like the job to be delivered.

Job Due Time   From the drop down lists, select the hour you would like the job to be delivered.

First Set Media From the list box, select the type of media on which the first set should be printed.

First Set Edging From the list box, select the type of edging with which the first set should be bound.

Additional Set Media From the list box, select the type of media on which additional sets should printed.

Additional Set Edging   From the list box, select the type of edging with which additional sets should be bound.

Additional Set count Type the number of additional sets you require.

Archive Job? Indicate whether the job printer should archive the job you are sending.

Job Instructions   Type in any further instructions for the job printer here.

[82] work order, 3 of 3

Electronic Media Format Choose the format in which you want electronic files to be delivered. Choices are: PC or Macintosh format.

Drymount Check the Drymount box if you want your prints to be mounted.You can add instructions for:

- Specification
- Final Trim
- Edging

Laminate Check the Laminate box if you want your prints to be laminated. you can add instructions for:

- Both Sides
- Specifications

Finishing Instructions Type any further instructions for the job printer.

Send auto E-Mail notification when this job Select any combination of:

- Is received
- Is printed
- Has an error.

Cancel Click Cancel to return to the Job window without sending the job.

Submit Click Submit to send the job order.
This opens the Order Receipt form, see next page.

To use the order receipt

The order receipt is automatically opened when you submit a job.

It allows you to save selected information from the work order.

[83] Order receipt, 1 of 3

[84] Order receipt, 2 of 3

[85] Order receipt, 3 of 3

▼ **Display selections**

1 If you wish, you can choose to not display (and print) some sections of the order receipt.

2 In the above display, deselect/select any combination of the following check boxes:
   ■ Contact
   ■ Job
   ■ Finishing
   ■ Other Finishing
   ■ Drawings List

3 The selected sections display.

4 Click 'Close' to close the order receipt without printing
   or

5 Click 'Print' to print the order receipt of the job that was most recently submitted to the repro center.

Chapter 13
Queues

This chapter describes how to handle queues.

About queues

The main purpose of a queue on Repro Desk Server, is to receive jobs that are sent by remote clients. You can create a different queue for each client.

Incoming queue An incoming queue is used to collect jobs from remote clients. Repro Desk automatically scans the queue for incoming jobs. When a new job arrives, you can configure the queue in such a way that it will open automatically when it is minimized, and starts flashing. It is also possible to print the work order of each incoming job automatically on a Windows printer.

A job contains several items; the drawing files, stamps and overlays, pen sets, and a work order. A queue keeps track of all of these for each job.

Note: *Repro Desk will only search for new jobs when the queue is opened. For most applications, a queue should remain open at all times.*

If you know you have just received a job and do not want to wait for the queue to automatically scan for new jobs, you can select the 'F5' function key to direct the queue to search immediately.

Archive queue Besides collecting jobs, queues can also be used for archiving purposes, or to hold jobs you might need to print again. You can move files from the incoming queue and store them in another location. This is done by creating a queue (such as "ARCHIVE") in a separate directory. If the INCOMING and ARCHIVE queues are open, you can 'drag and drop' jobs between the queues. You can also send jobs to a queue. See 'Send a job to a network queue' on page 188.

Special print queue Special configured queues are used for multiple machine support, direct printing, automatic printing and printing native drawings. (Only automatic printing and native printing apply to the Océ 9400 Repro Desk Server). These options are explained in detail in the according chapters.

Modem sharing In addition to the purposes mentioned above your client can use a queue to share a single modem with several networked clients. This allows different workstations to submit their jobs over one modem connection. To obtain this functionality your client must turn on the option 'Automatically modem jobs'. When the queue detects a new job it will automatically launch ApModem, log in to the configured Océ Repro Desk Server, transfer the drawings and pen sets, and log off again.

Create an incoming queue

You can use the Queue Creation Wizard to create a new queue. It is possible to create more than one incoming queue, for example one for each remote client.

▼ **Create an incoming queue**

1 Start up Repro Desk

2 Select 'Create New Queue' in the 'Queue' Quick menu
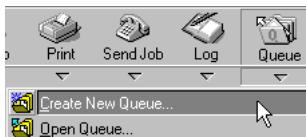
[86] Selecting 'Create New Queue in the 'Queue' Quick menu

3 The following window will appear:
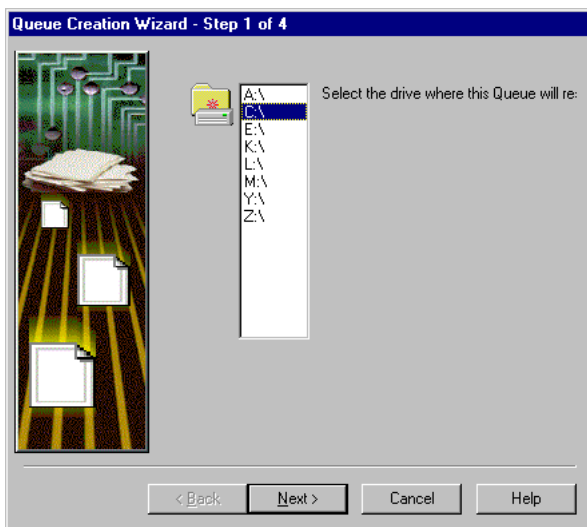
[87] Queue Creation Wizard - Step 1 of 4

4 Select the drive where the new queue will reside, and click 'Next'.
The following window will appear:

[88] Queue Creation Wizard - Step 2 of 4

5 Delete whatever is already filled in, specify the complete path and name of the new queue directory (for example, INCOMING\QUEUE1), and click 'Next'.
The following window will appear:
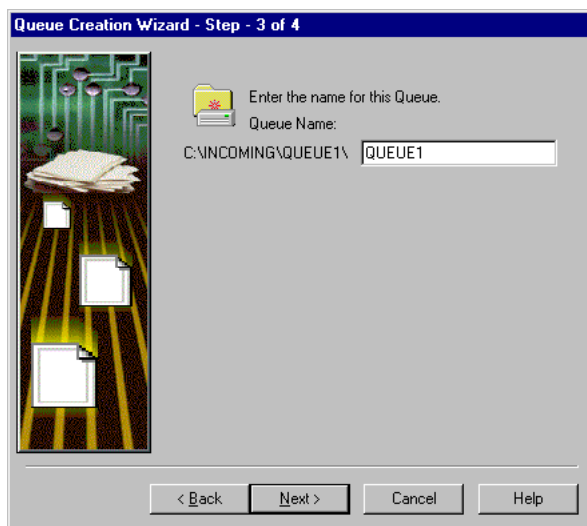
[89] Queue Creation Wizard - Step 3 of 4

6 Delete whatever is filled in, and specify only the name of the queue (for example, QUEUE1).
Note: *It is recommended to use the same name as you specified in the previous screen.*

7 Click 'Next'
The following window will appear:

[90] Queue Creation Wizard - Step 4 of 4

8 Select the following options:
- Flash the queue: The queue window will flash when a new job arrives (clicking on the job will stop flashing).
- Print report to windows printer: the work order of each new job will automatically be printed to a Windows printer (to configure the Windows printer, select 'Print Setup' from the 'Print' Quick menu).
- Automatically scan for new jobs: the queue will automatically be scanned for new incoming jobs. This option must be selected to make use of the previous options.

9 Make sure all other options are deselected.

10 Click 'Finish'.

The Queue window of the new queue will appear:

Job Name	Company	Created	Date Due	Last Printed	Sets	Shee

C:\INCOMING\QUEUE1\QUEUE1.Q   Auto Print:OFF

[91] Queue window

Queue options

When a queue is opened, you can access the queue options by selecting 'Options' in the menu bar.

▼ **Options in queue mode**

1 Go to the Options menu.
The Options pull down menu appears.

2 Select the required setting.
The selected setting is on when it is marked.

You can access the following options:

- Automatically print jobs (Default: Off): Océ Repro Desk will automatically print jobs on the selected printer as they appear in the queue, without user intervention. They will not be displayed in the queue then.
- Automatically modem jobs (Default: Off): Océ Repro Desk will automatically transmit any received jobs in the active queue by modem.
- Automatically print report: As soon as new jobs arrive in the queue and you have this option turned on, Océ Repro Desk will print a report on your local Windows printer.
- Automatically archive after printing (Default: Off): When a job is printed or sent out (via modem or FTP), the job is copied into the Archive queue. The Archive queue is located in a subdirectory ARCHIVE (for example: C:\INCOMING\ARCHIVE).
- Automatically scan for new jobs (Default: On): The queue will automatically search for new files (default: every 30 seconds). You can manually scan for new jobs by pressing the F5 button on the keyboard.
- Flash queue when new jobs arrive (Default: On): The queue window will flash black and white to alert the operator when new jobs arrive in the queue. (Do not use this option in combination with 'Automatically print jobs' or 'Automatically modem jobs'.
- Show queue when new jobs arrive: If you have a minimized queue window and a new job arrives, this option will force the queue window to be opened.
- Save queue settings now (Default: Off): Stores the current queue settings to the current queue. Opening and closing the queue will preserve the settings then.
- Scan now: This command will manually search for new jobs to print. You can also use the F5 button to activate this option.

Queue information

Jobs received in a queue may have the following information:

- Job name: Name of the file.
- Company: The name of the company that sent the job. This information is taken from the work order.
- Created: The date the job was created.
- Date due: The date the job should be ready by. This information is taken from the work order.
- Last printed: The date the job was last printed from the Queue. Never indicates the job has not been printed.
- Sets: The number of sets required. This information is taken from the work order.
- Sheets: The number of sheets of media used by Océ Repro Desk to complete the job.
- Comment: Comments added by the Océ Repro Desk operator.

Job Icons In addition to these fields, every entry in the queue window is preceded by an icon displaying the current state of the job. The following icons are available:

- Sheet with star: this job has been added to the queue recently and has not been opened yet.
- Simple sheet: this job has been opened but not printed yet.
- Pointer: this job has been printed already.
- Disk: this icon tells that the customer has requested this job to be archived.

▼ **Add a comment about the job**

1 Right click on the icon of the job inside the queue window.
2 Choose Comment Field from the pop up menu.
3 Type in your comment in the comment box that appears on the screen.
4 Click OK. Your comment is displayed in the comment field.

Use queues

Queues can be a powerful tool to organize your daily work. To take full advantage of all the possibilities, the usage of queues is described below.

Open a queue

▼ **Opening a queue**

1 From the Queue menu choose Open queue. The View existing print queue window opens.
2 Select the required directory, path and filename.
3 Click the OK button.

Save queue

Queues should be saved at the location where your communications software receives files or where your network users would expect to find the queue. Océ Repro Desk systems have a default incoming queue called INCOMING.Q, stored in D:\INCOMING.

▼ **Saving a new queue**

1 From the File menu, choose Save or Save As. The Save As dialogue box opens.
2 Select the drive and directory where you want to save the queue and click OK. The queue is saved.

Receive new jobs in a queue

Jobs are automatically numbered as they arrive so that you can see the order in which they came in. An incoming queue scans for new jobs arriving by modem, disk or network every 30 seconds by default.

If you know a job has arrived on your computer and you want to display it immediately in your queue window, press the F5 key on your keyboard or choose Scan Now from the Options menu.

▼ **Scanning the queue for new jobs**

1 Activate the queue.

2 From the 'Options' menu, choose 'Scan now'.
The queue scans for new jobs in subdirectories below it.

Work with queues

▼ **Open a job from the queue**

1 Double click on the job. The selected job opens up in a job window.

2 You can now view, modify, and print the job.

▼ **Add a job to the queue**

1 From the 'Edit' menu, choose 'Add job file'.
The 'Add job or Queue file to queue' window opens.

2 Select the directory or drive that contains the job you want to add.

3 Select the job to be added to the queue.
The job is highlighted.

4 Click OK.
The job is added to the top of the queue.

▼ **Add a job from ProjectPoint™ sites**

1 From the 'Edit' menu, choose' Add job from ProjectPoint'.
The ProjectPoint login appears.

2 Type your 'Usernam'e and 'Password'.

3 Select a site from the list.

4 Click OK.
The 'Open' dialog box appears.

5 Navigate to the desired job.

6 Click 'Open'.
The job is added to the queue.

▼ **Insert a job in the queue**

1 Select the job that is located in the queue in which you want to insert a saved job.
Note: *The inserted job is added above the selected job.*

2 From the Edit menu, choose Insert job file.
The Insert file window opens.

3 Select the Directory or drive that contains the job you want to add

4 Select the job to be added to the queue.
The job is highlighted.

5 Click OK.

The job is added above the selected job.

▼   **Duplicate job references**

1 Select the job reference you want to duplicate by pressing and holding down the right mouse button.

2 Move the highlighted job to a place somewhere in the queue and release the mouse button.

Note: *This method makes a reference to the job appear in the queue. If you change the original or the reference, those changes will be made to both copies of the document.*

▼   **Duplicate a job**

1 Right-click the icon of the job you want to duplicate.

A menu appears.

2 From the menu, select 'Send Entire Job To'.

Another menu appears.

3 From the menu, select 'Queue'.

A list of active queues appears.

4 From the list, select the queue from which you are copying.

Note: *This method allows you to make changes to a copy of the job without changing the original.*

▼   **Copy directory into queue**

1 From the queue menu choose Copy directory into queue.

The Pick any file in directory (entire directory copied) window opens.

2 Select any file in the directory that contains the files you want to copy.

3 Click the Open button.

All files in the directory will be put in a job, using the default job settings (see 'Job default settings' on page 70). This job is then automatically put in the selected queue.

▼   **Unzip into queue**

1 G tothe Queue menu.

2 Select Unzip into queue.

3 Select the directory or drive that contains the zip file.

4 Select the zip file to be unzipped into the queue.

5 Click the Open button.

If the zip file contains a Repro Desk job, this job will be put in the selected queue.

If the zip file contains native drawings, these files will first be put in a job, using the default job settings (see 'Job default settings' on page 70). This job is then automatically put in the selected queue.

Note: *If you unzip a zip file into a queue that has the option Automatically Print Jobs turned on, the job will be printed immediately without being displayed in the queue.*

Print from a queue

Organize jobs in the queue

Before you print the jobs in the queue you can reorganize the order of the jobs in the queue. Default is: First in, first out.

After you have opened a job and printed it, you can Archive the job, remove the job from the queue, or permanently delete it.

A job can be removed from a queue without deleting it from the computer. Removing a job only removes the queue's reference to that job until that queue is closed and reopened.

▼ **Change job priority**

1 If you wish to change the priority of a job, click on the name of the job.
   The job name is highlighted.
2 Drag and drop the file to the desired position.
   The higher the job is positioned in the list, the higher its priority

▼ **Rename a job in the queue**

1 Click on the name of the job.
   The job name is highlighted.
2 Press the space bar on your keyboard once.
3 Type in the new name over the existing one.

▼ **Move jobs between queues**

1 Open the destination queue.
2 Select the job that you want to drag to another queue.

3 Hold down the left mouse button and drag and drop the job to the desired queue.
Note: *Dragging a job into a queue that is set to automatically print jobs will NOT print the job.*

▼ **Remove jobs from the queue**

1 Select the job you want to remove.
The job name is highlighted.
2 Press the Delete key.
The selected job is removed from the queue.

▼ **Restore a removed job**

1 Select the required queue where you want to restore the job.
The queue is highlighted.
2 From the File menu, choose Close.
The active queue closes.
3 Open the same queue.
The removed drawing will reappear.

▼ **Permanently delete a job from the queue**

Attention: *A job can also be permanently deleted from the queue. Extra caution should be used, because once a job has been deleted, it cannot be restored.*

1 Select the job you want to delete.
The selected job is highlighted.
2 From the Edit menu, choose Remove directory. The job dialogue box asks if you are sure you want to delete the job and the directory from the queue.
3 If you are sure, click the yes box. The job and directory are permanently deleted.

Chapter 14
Printing

océ

Introduction

Print jobs are usually received in a queue. Before you can print such a job, you have to open the queue, and then open a job window.

Then you can choose to print in one of the following ways:
- Print on the Océ 9400 printer (see 'Océ 9400 printer (CALS/TIFF file)' on page 246)
- Print on the Océ 9600 printer (see 'Océ 9600 printer' on page 256)
- Print on the Océ 9700 printer (see 'Océ 9700/9800 printer' on page 274)
- Print on the Océ 9800 printer (see 'Océ 9700/9800 printer' on page 274)
- Print on the Océ 3165 PostScript printer (see 'Océ 3165 PostScript printer' on page 290)
- Print on a HP-GL/2 or HP-RTL printer
- Print on a Windows printer

These standard ways of printing are all described in this chapter. Océ Repro Desk also offers special ways of printing, described in other chapters:

Multiple Machine Support Océ Repro Desk supports the installation of multiple Océ 9400, HP-GL/2/HP-RTL or PostScript printers (Océ 3165), attached to the same Repro Desk Server.
You can also install more than one Océ 9600, Océ 9700 or Océ 9800, each printer attached to its own Repro Desk Server.

You can use one Repro Desk Server to receive jobs and print on all printers (see chapter 20, 'Multiple machine support' on page 337).

Direct printing The users of Repro Desk Remote can print on a printer that is connected to Repro Desk Server, without user intervention at the server side. (Not applicable to Océ 9400). The users of Repro Desk Remote can define all print settings for each job.

Automatic printing The users of Repro Desk Remote can print on a printer that is connected to Repro Desk Server, without user intervention at the server side. The default printer dependent settings of the selected print queue will be used for all print jobs.

Native printing Native drawings can be printed without the need for Repro Desk Remote, and without specifying any print settings. Using a LAN connection, the drawing can simply be copied into a Polling Queue on Repro Desk Server. The drawing will automatically be printed, using the print settings of the selected Polling Queue.

Print from a queue

To print a job, you need to open a job window that contains the job. If you want to print from a queue, you need to follow the next procedure:
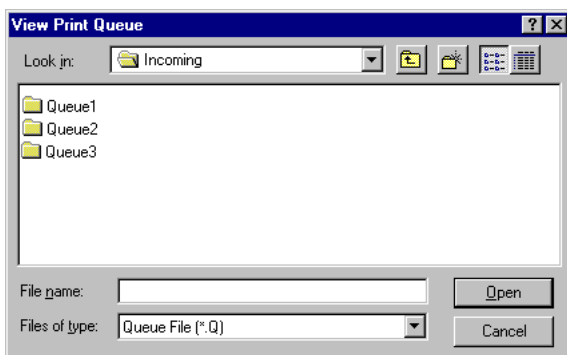
▼ **Print from a queue**

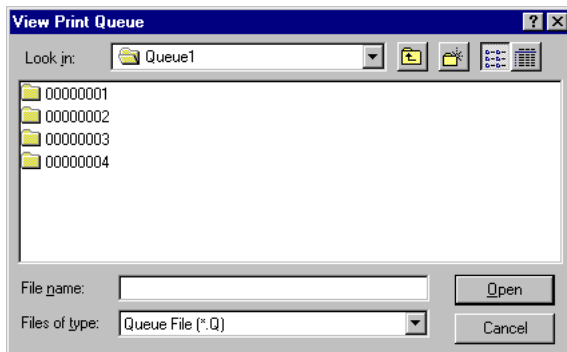**1** Click the 'Queue' button in the Tool bar.

[92] Queue button

2 The following window will appear:
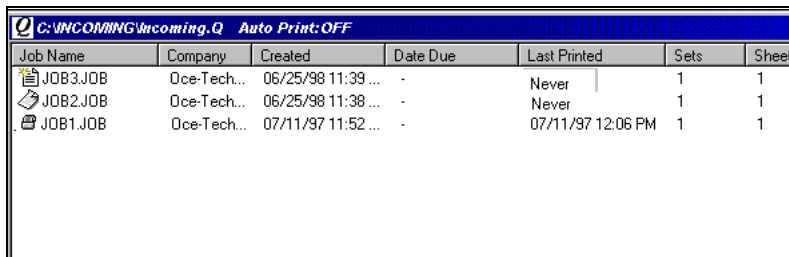

[93] View Print Queue window

3 Open the directory that contains the queue you want to open (for example, INCOMING\QUEUE1).

[94] Directory that contains a queue

4 Select the *.Q file (Queue1.Q), and click open.
   The Queue window will appear:

Job Name	Company	Created	Date Due	Last Printed	Sets	Sheet
JOB3.JOB	Oce-Tech...	06/25/98 11:39 ...	-	Never	1	1
JOB2.JOB	Oce-Tech...	06/25/98 11:38 ...	-	Never	1	1
JOB1.JOB	Oce-Tech...	07/11/97 11:52 ...	-	07/11/97 12:06 PM	1	1

C:\INCOMING\Incoming.Q   Auto Print:OFF

[95] Queue window

5 The different icons indicate the status of each job (see figure 95):
   JOB3.JOB: Not printed yet.
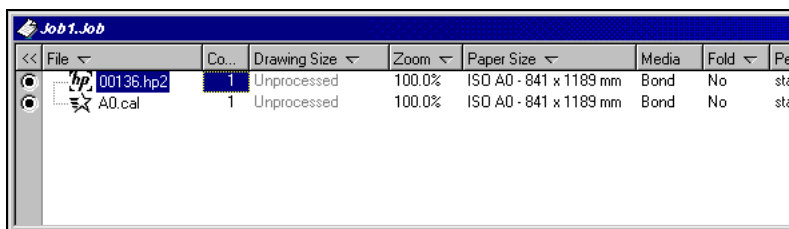   JOB2.JOB: Job window opened, but not printed yet.
   JOB1.JOB: Job has already been printed.
   Note: *From the Queue window you can view and print the work order of
   each job (see 'View and print work orders' on page 228).*
6 Double click on the icon of the job you want to print.
   The job window will open:

<<	File ▽	Co...	Drawing Size ▽	Zoom ▽	Paper Size ▽	Media	Fold ▽	Pe
●	00136.hp2	1	Unprocessed	100.0%	ISO A0 - 841 x 1189 mm	Bond	No	sta
●	A0.cal	1	Unprocessed	100.0%	ISO A0 - 841 x 1189 mm	Bond	No	sta

Job1.Job

[96] Job window

7 Print the job as described in one of the following sections.
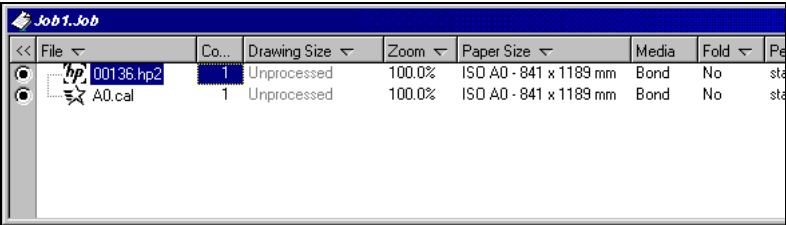
Print on a Windows printer

Océ Repro Desk supports any printer installed through Microsoft Windows (for more information see the Microsoft documentation). A Windows printer can be used to print check plots or a work order. The Océ Repro Desk Server can print drawings of any size on a Windows printer. Be aware that printing on a Windows Printer always takes a long time.

Scaling

Normally Repro Desk automatically scales the drawing to the selected size in the Windows printer. If you want to print a drawing without automatic scaling, you can select 100% scaling.
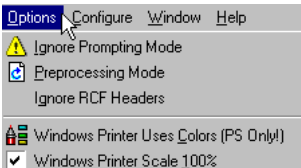
▼ **Change scaling**

1 Open a job window, containing the job you want to print.
(see 'Print from a queue' on page 218).

[97] Job Window

2 Click Options, and hold the pointer of the mouse in place.

3 If the option 'Windows Printer Scale 100%' is selected, it will be marked as follows:

[98] Example Options menu: 'Windows Printer Scale 100%' is selected

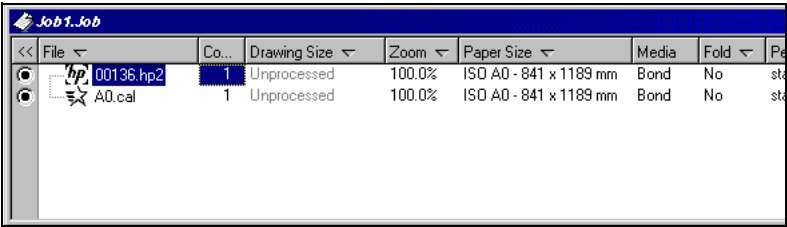4 To change the current setting, click 'Windows Printer Scale 100%'.

Color inkjet printers

If you want to print a drawing on a color inkjet printer, you must select the option 'Windows Printer Uses Colors'.

Note: *Make sure this option is NOT selected if you want to print on another printer type, without color. Otherwise the lines may appear distorted.*
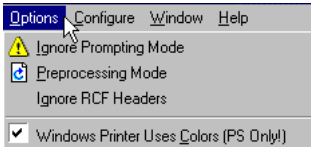
▼ **Change colors setting**

1 Open a job window, containing the job you want to print.
(see 'Print from a queue' on page 218).

<<	File ▽	Co...	Drawing Size ▽	Zoom ▽	Paper Size ▽	Media	Fold ▽	Pe
◉	00136.hp2	1	Unprocessed	100.0%	ISO A0 - 841 x 1189 mm	Bond	No	sta
◉	A0.cal	1	Unprocessed	100.0%	ISO A0 - 841 x 1189 mm	Bond	No	sta

[99] Job Window

2 Click Options, and hold the pointer of the mouse in place.

3 If the option 'Windows Printer Uses Colors' is selected, it will be marked as follows:

[100] Example Options menu: 'Windows Printer Uses Colors' is selected

**4** To change the current setting, click 'Windows Printer Uses Colors'.

Print preview

You can view the job as it will be printed on the Windows printer. It is also possible to send a job to the printer from within the Preview window.

Note: *Before printing on a Windows printer, make sure the settings of the Scaling option (see 'Scaling' on page 220) and Color option (see 'Color inkjet printers' on page 221) are correct.*
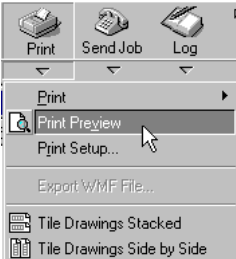
▼ **View and print a drawing**

1 Open a job window, containing the job you want to print.
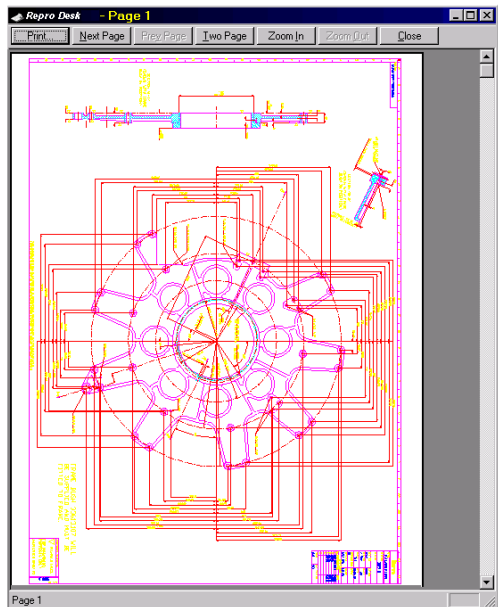(see 'Print from a queue' on page 218).
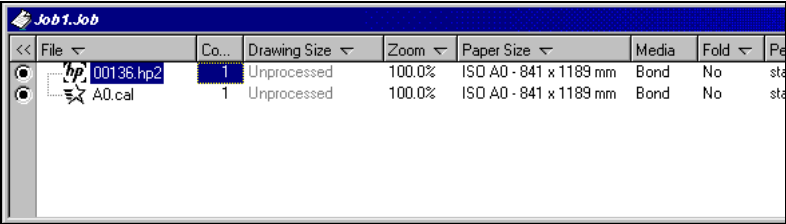
[101] Job Window

2 Select 'Print Preview' in the 'Print' Quick menu.

[102] Select 'Print Preview' in the 'Print' Quick menu

3 The following window will appear, showing the first drawing of the selected job as it will be printed on the Windows printer.

[103] Print Preview window

4 You can view the other drawings of the job by clicking the 'Next Page' button.

5 If you want to displays two drawings of the job at the same time, you can click the 'Two Page' button.
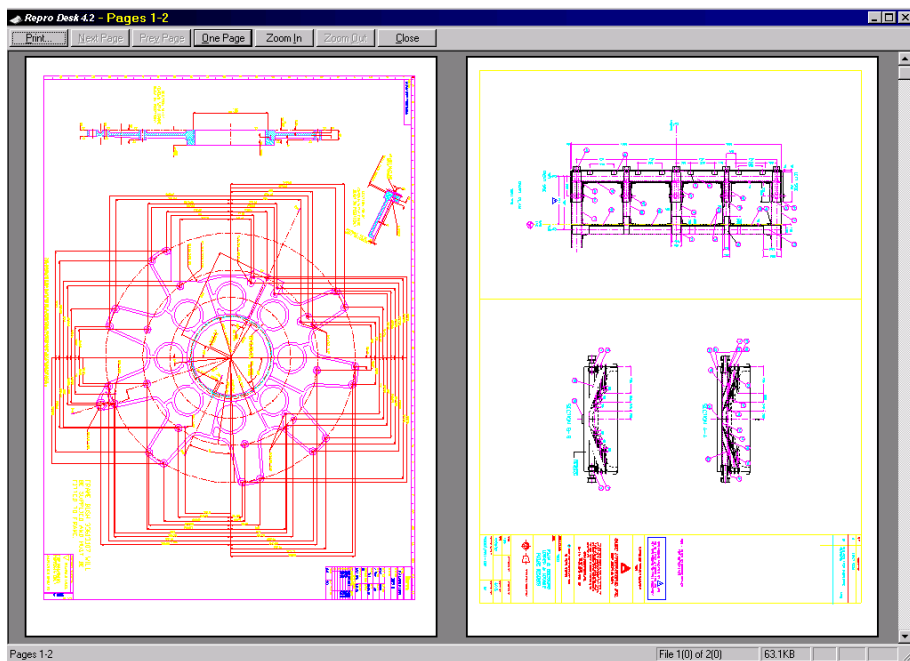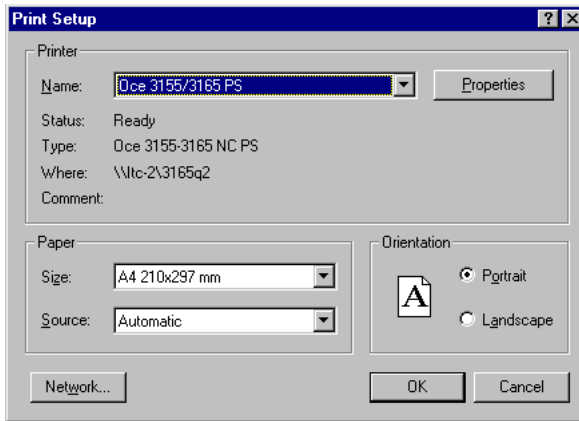

[104] Print Preview window after selecting 'Two Page'

6 If you want to print the job at a later time, click the 'Close' button to leave the Preview window.

7 If you want to print the current job, click the 'Print' button. The following window will appear:

[105] Example of a Windows Print window

8 Select the Windows printer you want to use.

9 Define the required print settings.
Note: *Make sure to load the printer with the correct paper size, and to select the same size in the print settings.*

10 Click OK.
The job will be sent to the selected Windows printer.

Note: *Changes in the print settings will be saved. The next time you want print a job on the selected Windows printer, the Windows print window will appear with the same settings you specified for the current job. If you restart the Repro Desk application, or if you change the default printer settings in Windows, the Print window will appear with the Windows printer default settings.*

Print a job on a windows printer

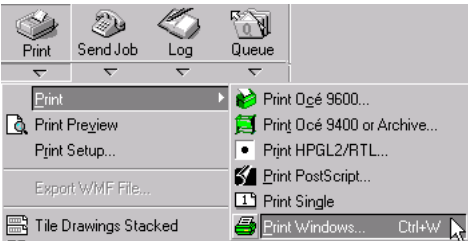To print a job on a Windows printer without viewing it first, use the following procedure.

▼ **Printing a job on a windows printer**

1 Open a job window, containing the job you want to print.
(see 'Print from a queue' on page 218).
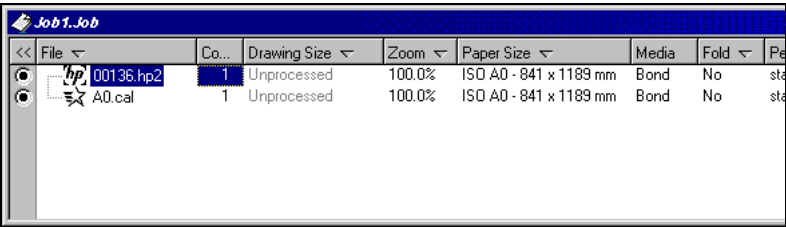
[106] Job Window

**2** If you want to print the whole job, select 'Print Windows' from the 'Print' Quick menu.

[107] Selecting 'Print WIndows' from the 'Print' Quick menu.

3 Or, if you want to print only one drawing of the job, select this drawing by clicking its icon in the first column of the job window.
Then select 'Print Single' in the 'Print' Quick menu.
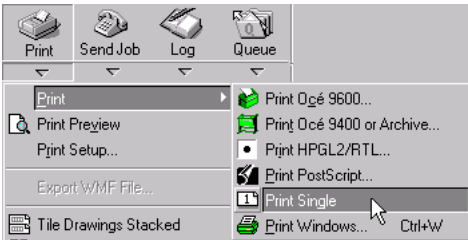
[108] Selecting 'Print Single' in the 'Print' Quick menu

4 The following window will appear:
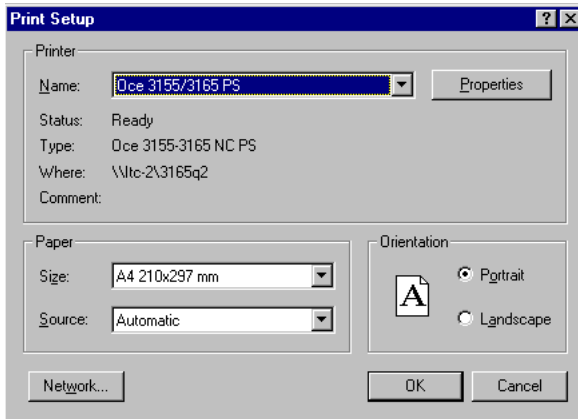
[109] Example of a Windows Print window

5 Select the Windows printer you want to use.

6 Define the required print settings.
Note: *Make sure to load the printer with the correct paper size, and to select the same size in the print settings.*

7 Click OK.
The job will be sent to the selected Windows printer.
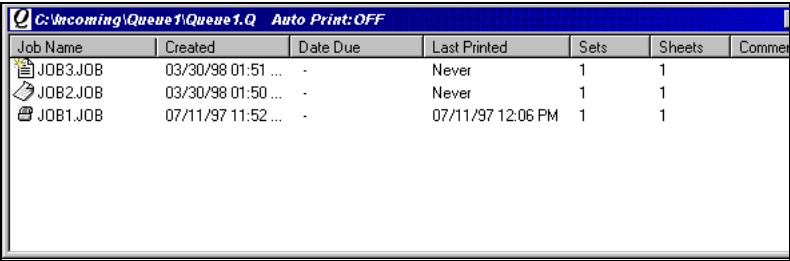
Note: *Changes in the print settings will be saved. The next time you want print a job on the selected Windows printer, the Windows print window will appear with the same settings you specified for the current job. If you restart the Repro Desk application, or if you change the default printer settings in Windows, the Print window will appear with the Windows printer default settings.*

View and print work orders

The work orders that are sent along with the print job, can be viewed on the screen, or printed on a Windows printer

▼ **Viewing a work order**

1 Open a Queue window (see 'Print from a queue' on page 218).

Job Name	Created	Date Due	Last Printed	Sets	Sheets	Commer
JOB3.JOB	03/30/98 01:51 ...	-	Never	1	1	
JOB2.JOB	03/30/98 01:50 ...	-	Never	1	1	
JOB1.JOB	07/11/97 11:52 ...	-	07/11/97 12:06 PM	1	1	

C:\Incoming\Queue1\Queue1.Q   Auto Print:OFF
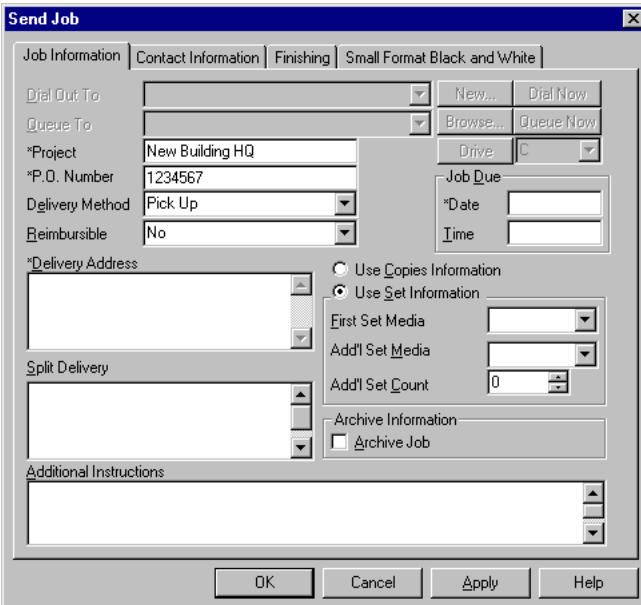
[110] Queue window

2 Select the job of which you want to view the work order, by clicking its icon once.

3 Click the 'Properties' button in the Tool bar.

[111] Properties button

The work order belonging to the print job, will be opened:

[112] Work order belonging to the print job

4 Click OK to make the work order disappear.
To print a work order on a Windows printer, follow the next procedures:

▼ **Print a work order of one job in the queue**

1 Open a Queue window (see 'Print from a queue' on page 218).

[113] Queue window

2 Select the job of which you want to print the work order, by clicking its icon once.

3 Select 'Print Setup' from the 'Print' Quick menu.
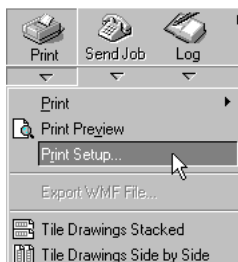
[114] Selecting 'Print Setup' from the 'Print' Quick menu

4 The following window will be opened:
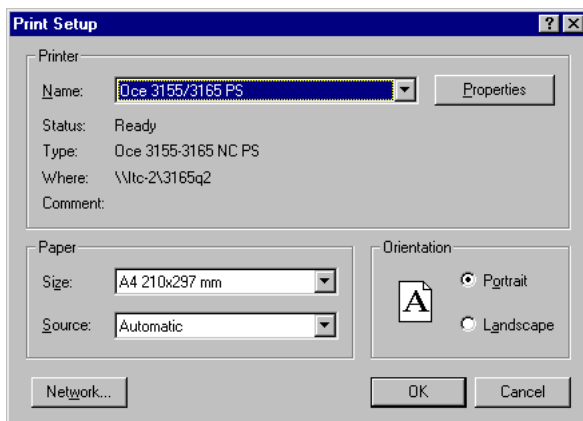
[115] Example of a Windows Print window

5 Select the Windows printer you want to use, define the required print settings and click OK.

6 Select 'Print Windows' in the 'Print' Quick menu.
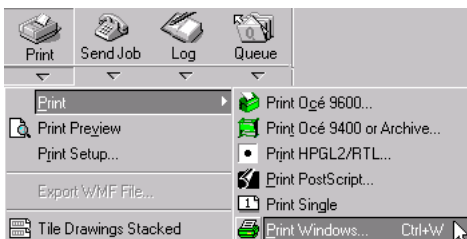
[116] Selecting 'Print Window's in the 'Print' Quick menu

7 The following window will appear:
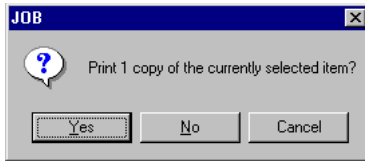
[117] Selecting 'Yes' to print only the work order of the selected job

8 Click 'Yes'

The work order of the selected job will be printed on the Windows printer.

▼   **Printing a work order of ALL jobs in the queue**

1 Open a Queue window (see 'Print from a queue' on page 218).
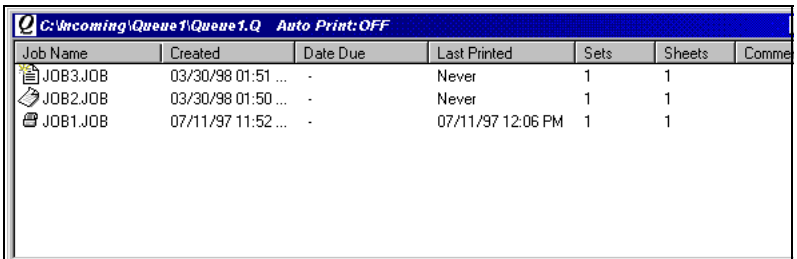
[118] Queue window

2 Select 'Print Windows' in the 'Print' Quick menu.
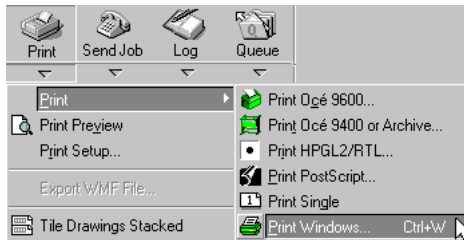
[119] Selecting 'Print Window's in the 'Print' Quick menu

3 The following window will appear:
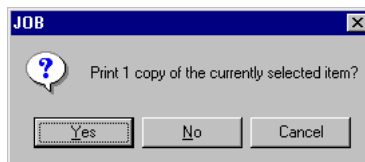
[120] Selecting 'No' to print the work orders of all jobs in the queue

4 Click 'No' to print the work orders of all jobs in the queue.
   The following window will be opened:
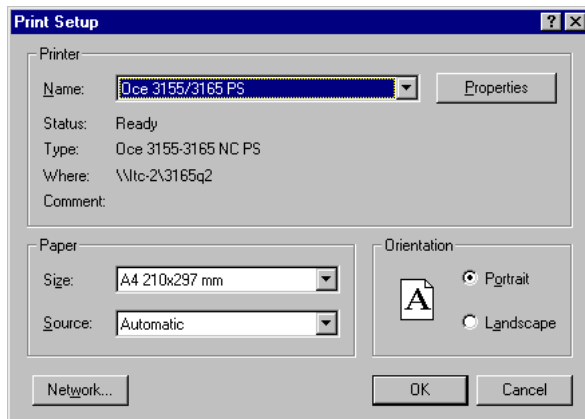
[121] Example of a Windows Print window

5 Select the Windows printer you want to use, define the required print settings
   and click OK.

HP-GL/2 HP-RTL output

The HP-GL printer (for example, Océ 5200) can be installed in two ways:

■ As local printer, connected to one of the parallel ports (for example, LPT1) of the Server PC.
■ As remote printer, connected to a network.

Note: *If the HP-GL printer is installed as remote printer, you must install a driver on the Océ Repro Desk PC. You can use any Windows driver for this purpose, since it is only used to make the connection to the HP-GL printer. Océ Repro Desk will provide the actual driver functionality.*

It is also possible to save the output as HP-GL/2 HP-RTL file in a specified directory, or to send the output to a queue.

▼ **Print on HP-GL printer or save as HP-GL/2/HP-RTL file**

1 Open a job window, containing the job you want to print.
(see 'Print from a queue' on page 218).
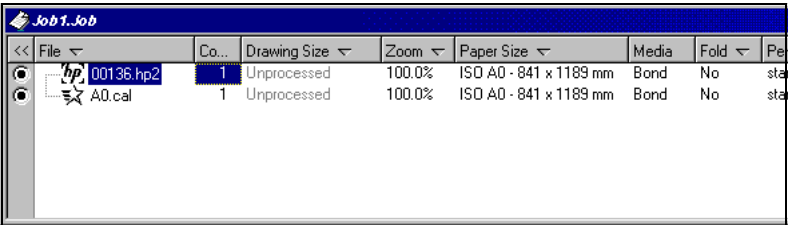
[122] Job Window

2 If required, you can change the file settings in the Job window (see chapter 9, 'Imaging properties' on page 151).
3 Select 'Print HP-GL/2/HP-RTL' in the 'Print' Quick menu.
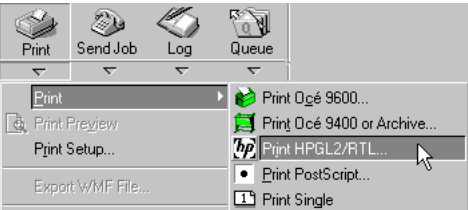
[123] Selecting 'Print HP-GL/2/HP-RTL' in the 'Print' Quick menu

4 The following window will appear:
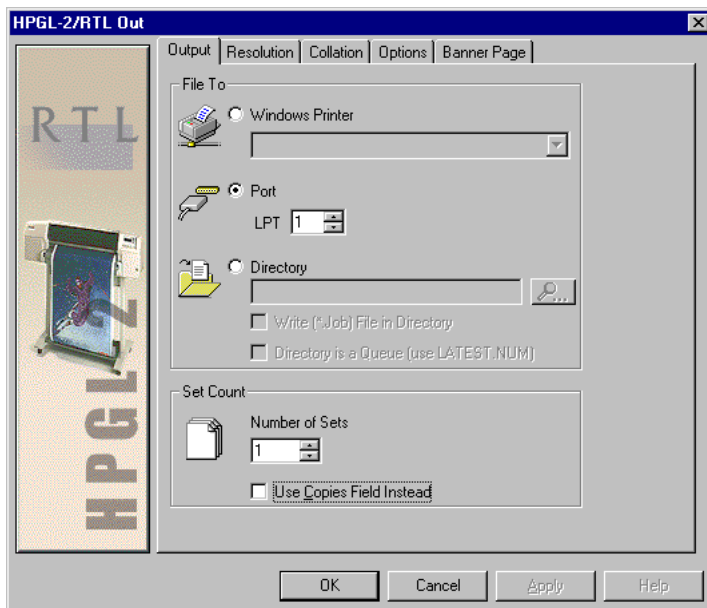
[124] HP-GL/2/HP-RTL Out window

5 Specify the required settings in the 'HP-GL/2/HP-RTL Out' window.
For more information, see sections below.

6 Click OK.

Output (HP-GL/2/HP-RTL)

You can select the printer you want to send the output to, or you can specify a directory or queue to save the output as HP-GL/2/HP-RTL file. If you have selected a printer, you can also specify the number of copies.

▼   **Specify Output settings for the HPGL printer**

1 If not already selected, click the 'Output' tab at the top of the 'HP-GL/2/HP-RTL Out' window.

2 The following window will appear:
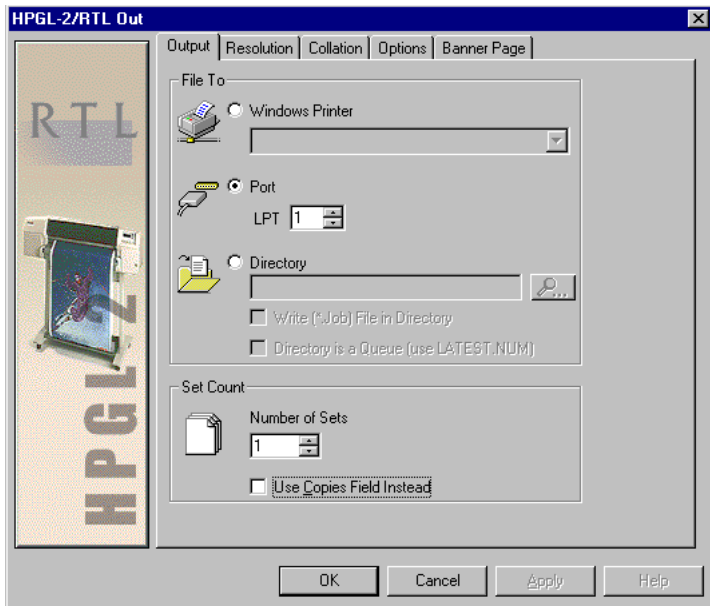
[125] HP-GL/2/HP-RTL Out window: Output

3 If the HPGL printer is installed as remote printer, select 'Windows Printer', and choose the HPGL printer from the list of available Windows printers. If the HPGL printer is installed as local printer, select 'Port' and specify the according port number.

4 Specify the number of copies:

- Use Copies Field Instead: (Recommended) . The number of copies as defined for each drawing in the Copies column of the job window will be used.
- Number of Sets: You can specify the number of sets yourself. Each set will contain one copy of each drawing in the print job. The Copies column in the job window will be ignored.

5 Click Apply.

▼ **Specify Output settings to save the file on disk**

1 If not already selected, click the 'Output' tab at the top of the 'HP-GL/2/HP-RTL Out' window (see figure 125 on page 235).

2 Select 'Directory' and specify the appropriate directory (you can use the Browse button at the right side).

3 If you want to save the *.Job file in the specified directory as well, select the option 'Write (*Job) File in Directory'.

4 Make sure the option 'Directory is a Queue' is *not* selected.

5 Click Apply.

▼ **Specify Output settings to send the file to a queue**

1 If not already selected, click the 'Output' tab at the top of the 'HP-GL/2/HP-RTL Out' window (see figure 125 on page 235).

2 Select 'Directory' and specify the appropriate queue by (you can use the Browse button at the right side to select the *.Q file in the Queue folder).

3 Make sure the option 'Write (*Job) File in Directory' is *not* selected.

4 Select the option 'Directory is a Queue'.

5 Click Apply.

Resolution (HP-GL/2/HP-RTL)

You can specify the resolution of the output in dots per inch (DPI).

Note: *This option will only have effect when the original file contains raster data, or if the option 'Send monochrome raster' is set (see 'Options (HP-GL/2/HP-RTL)' on page 239).*

▼ **Specifying the output resolution for the HPGL printer**

1 Click the 'Resolution' tab at the top of the window.

2 The following window will appear:
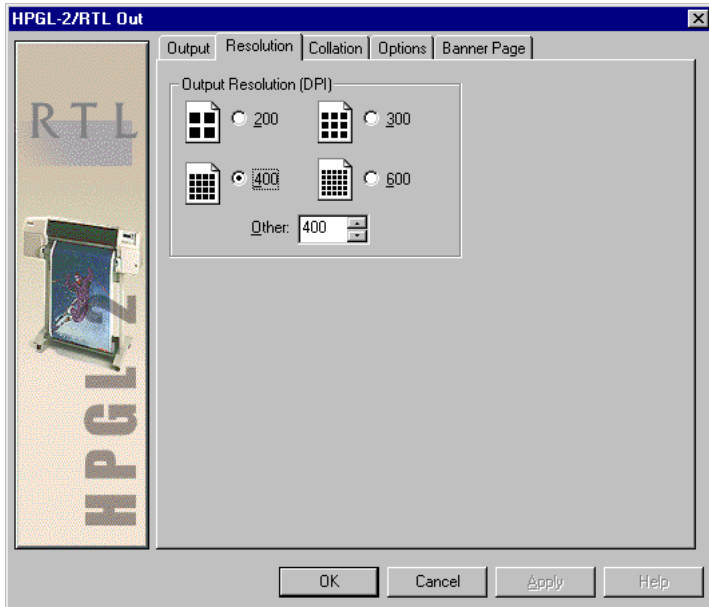
[126] HP-GL/2/HP-RTL Out window: Resolution

3 Specify the resolution of the printer.

4 Click Apply.

▼ **Specifying the output resolution to save the file on disk**

1 Click the 'Resolution' tab at the top of the window (see figure 126).

2 If you want to use the file as input for a software application, specify the maximum resolution.
If you want to use the file for printing at another time, specify the resolution of the printer.

3 Click Apply.

Collation (HP-GL/2/HP-RTL)

You can specify the order in which the copies of a job are printed.

▼ **Specifying collation for the HP-GL printer**

1 Click the 'Collation' tab at the top of the window.

2 The following window will appear:
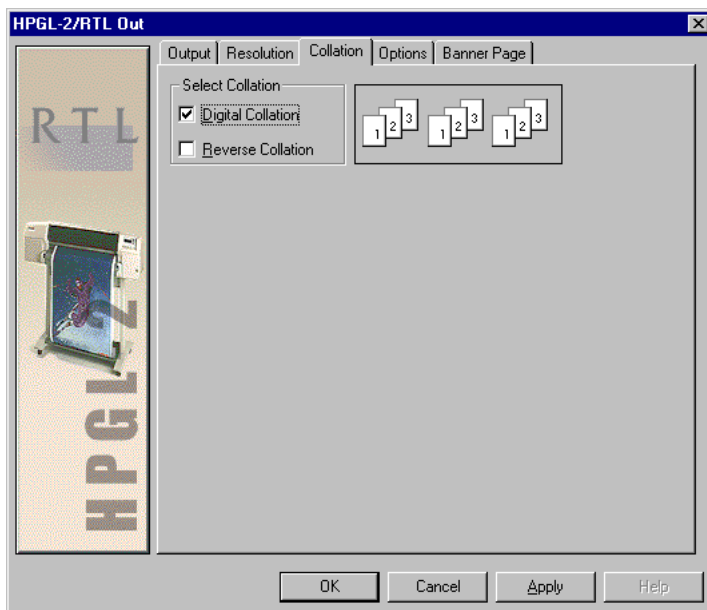
[127] HP-GL/2/HP-RTL Out window: Collation

3 If required, you can select the following options:
- ■ Digital collation: If you select this option, the prints will be sorted by set.
- ■ Reverse collation: If you select this option, the first file of the job will be printed last.

Note: *The drawings in the window will show the PRINT order of the drawings, depending on options that are selected.*

4 Click Apply.

Options (HP-GL/2/HP-RTL)

You can specify the following output options:

■ Send only monochrome raster
   The HPGL file will contain RTL raster data without colors.
   If this option is not selected, the contents of the HPGL file depends on the
   contents of the source file: vector data will remain vector data, and raster data
   will remain raster data.
   This option can be selected in combination with other options (see below).

The following options only work when the source file contains vector data:

■ Draw all lines 1 pixel thick
■ Draw all lines in monochrome (no color)
■ Draw all lines solid (no raster patterns)

▼ **Specifying options**

1 Click the 'Options' tab at the top of the window.

2 The following window will appear:
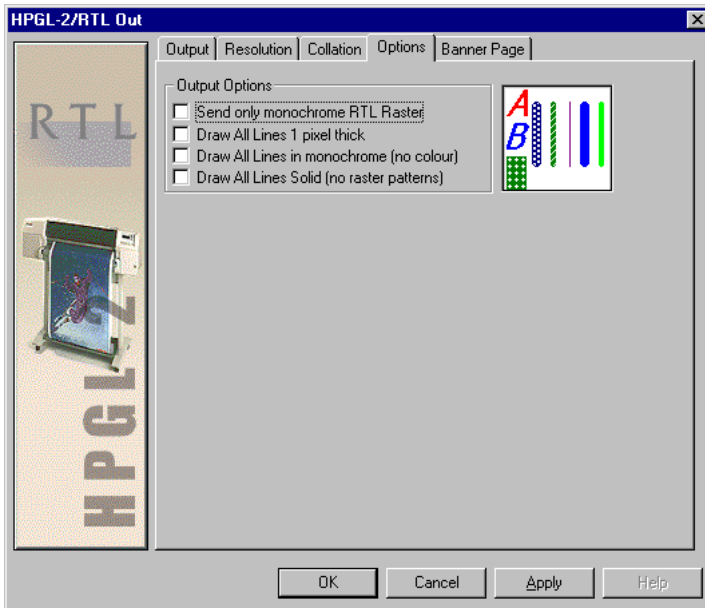
[128] HP-GL/2/HP-RTL Out window: Options

3 Select the required options.

4 Click Apply.

Banner page (HP-GL/2/HP-RTL)

You can specify to print a banner page for the current job, or for each set in the current job. You can use any ASCII file or stamp (*.LBL) as banner page. If you use a stamp file, you can include variables like 'job name' or 'date & time' (see 'Electronic stamps' on page 178).

▼ **Specify banner page**

1 Click the 'Banner Page' tab at the top of the window.
2 The following window will appear:
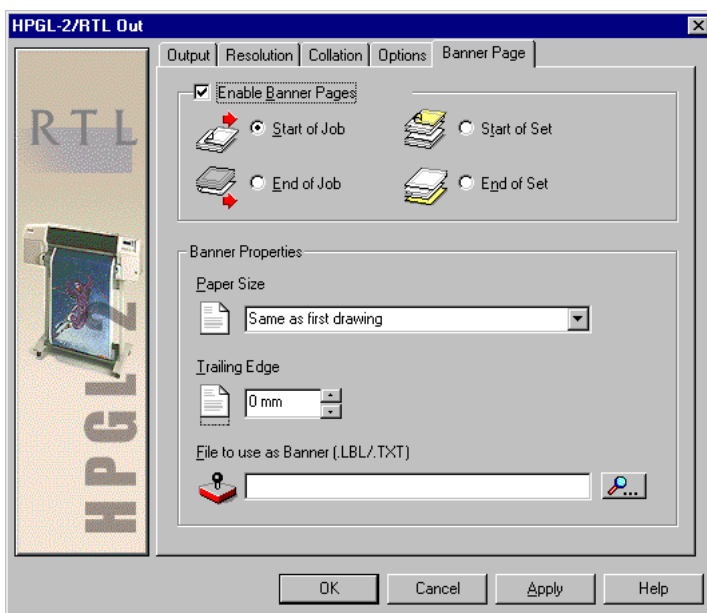
[129] HP-GL/2/HP-RTL Out window: Banner Page

3 Select when you want to print a banner page: at the start/end of the job or at the start/end of a set.
4 Select the paper size for the banner page.
   You can select one of the available standard sizes, or 'Same as first drawing' (the same size as the first drawing of the job or set).
5 If required, you can specify a trailing edge for the banner page.
6 Use the 🔍 button to select the file you want to use as banner page. You can select any ASCII (*.ASC) file or electronic stamp (*.LBL) file.
7 Click Apply.

HPGL pass-through

The HPGL pass-through function offers a way to handle color output. The performance is similar to the HPGLOut performance. You can use HPGL pass-through when the Océ Repro Desk color interpretation does not give you the required output on inkjet printers.

Océ Repro Desk skips the processing of HPGL or HPGL-2 files that are printed through HPGLOut when the following settings apply.
■ The HPGL pass-through setting is checked
■ The 'Color' column in the 'Job' view is set to 'Yes'.

The original file is sent to the printer. The printer does the color matching and file interpretation. Therefore, the correct output completely depends on the following.
■ The printer driver that you use
■ The settings that you define in the printer driver.

Note: *When you print a job with the HPGL pass-through function enabled, the job is registered in the accounting log files.*

The following versions of Océ Repro Desk support HPGL pass-through.
■ Océ Repro Desk Server 1.0.5 and higher
■ Océ Repro Desk Client 4.30.5 and higher.

Note: *Océ Repro Desk Server 1.0.5 does not yet support HPGL Out. You can only activate HPGL pass-through in Océ Repro Desk Server 1.0.5. If you use Océ Repro Desk Server 1.0.5, you must use Océ Repro Desk Client 4.30.5 to use HPGL pass-through and HPGLOut.*

▼ **Enable HPGL pass-through**
1 Open the 'Configure' menu.
2 Select 'Advanced'.
3 Navigate in the settings tree to the following location:
  'File Processing\HPGL\Bypass Color Processing'.
  By default, the setting is <No>.
4 Check the box next to 'Bypass Color Processing' .
  By default, the box is unchecked. The setting changes to <Yes>.

Note: *If you change the 'Bypass Color Processing' flag while a job is open, you must close and then reopen the job. Then the setting applies to the job.*

Keep the following in mind in relation to a pass-through image:
- You can only change the settings for 'Copies' and 'Color'.
- You can not add overlays to the image.
- Existing overlays are not printed. The overlays are unchecked and checking the overlays is disabled.
- You can not print ISO 9000 stamps on the image.
- The image can not be an overlay.
- You can not view the image.
- You can not tile the image.

For accounting purposes, the drawing size, which is read from the original HPGL or HPGL-2 file, is recorded as the paper size.

Chapter 15
Print on an Océ 9400

océ

Océ 9400 printer (CALS/TIFF file)

The Océ 9400 printer can be installed in two ways:

■ As local printer, connected to one of the parallel ports (for example, LPT1) of the Server PC.
■ As remote printer, connected to a network.

Note: *If the Océ 9400 printer is installed as remote printer, you must install a driver on the Océ Repro Desk PC. You can use any Windows driver for this purpose, since it is only used to make the connection to the Océ 9400. Océ Repro Desk will provide the actual driver function.*

You can select the following Océ 9400 options (see 'Options (Océ 9400)' on page 251):
■ Poster Mode
■ Enable Long Plot
■ Paper Roll or Manual Feed

It is also possible to save the output in a specified directory, or to send the output to a queue. In that case you can choose between CALS or TIFF format.

▼ **Printing on the Océ 9400 printer, or saving as CALS/TIFF file**

1 Open a job window, containing the job you want to print.
(see 'Print from a queue' on page 218).
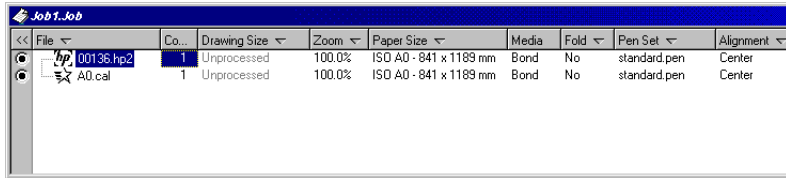
[130] Job Window

2 If required, you can change the file settings in the Job window (see chapter 9, 'Imaging properties' on page 151).

3 Select 'Print 9400 or Archive' in the 'Print' Quick menu.
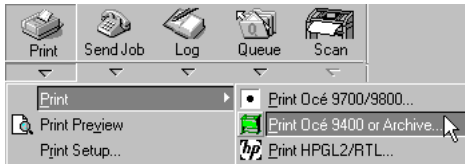
[131] Selecting 'Print 9400 or Archive' in the 'Print' Quick menu

4 The following window will appear:
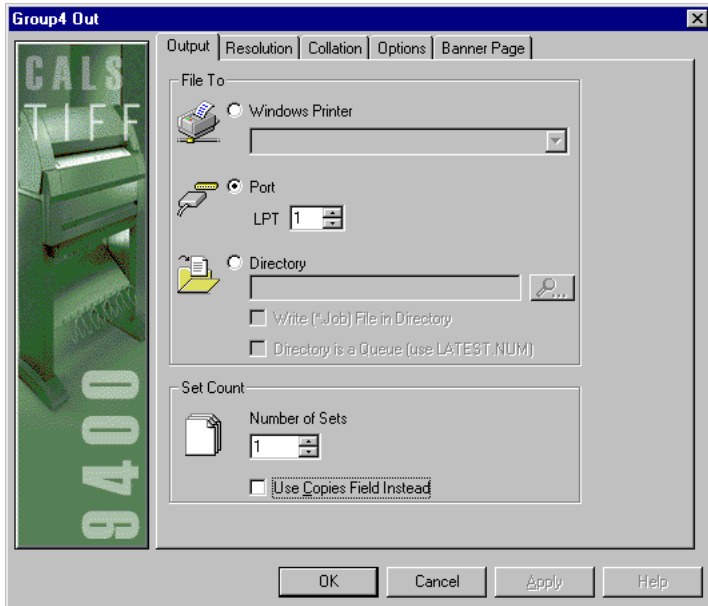
[132] 9400 print window (Group4 Out)

5 Specify the required settings in the Océ 9400 print window (Group 4 Out).
For more information, see sections below.

6 Click OK.

Output (Océ 9400)

You can select the printer you want to send the output to, or you can specify a directory or queue to save the output as CALS/TIFF file. Specifying Output settings for the Océ 9400 printer

1 If not already selected, click the 'Output' tab at the top of the Océ 9400 print window (Group4 Out).

2 The following window will appear:
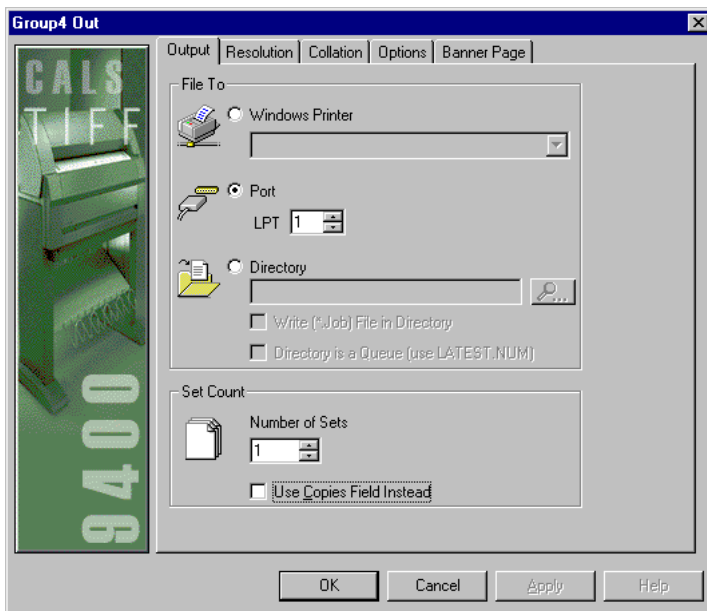
[133] Océ 9400 print window (Group4 Out): Output

3 If the Océ 9400 is installed as remote printer, select 'Windows Printer', and choose the Océ 9400 from the list of available Windows printers.
If the Océ 9400 is installed as local printer, select 'Port' and specify the according port number.

4 Specify the number of copies:

- Number of Sets: You can specify the number of sets yourself. Each set will contain one copy of each drawing in the print job. The Copies column in the job window will be ignored.
- Use Copies Field Instead: The number of copies as defined for each drawing in the Copies column of the job window will be used.

5 Click Apply.

▼ **Specifying Output settings to save the file on disk**

1 If not already selected, click the 'Output' tab at the top of the Océ 9400 print window (Group 4 Out).
2 Select 'Directory' and specify the appropriate directory (you can use the Browse button at the right side).
3 If you want to save the *.Job file in the specified directory as well, select the option 'Write (*Job) File in Directory'.
4 Make sure the option 'Directory is a Queue' is *not* selected.
5 Click Apply.

▼ **Specifying Output settings to send the file to a queue**

1 If not already selected, click the 'Output' tab at the top of the Océ 9400 print window (Group 4 Out).
2 Select 'Directory' and specify the appropriate queue by (you can use the Browse button at the right side to select the *.Q file in the Queue folder).
3 Make sure the option 'Write (*Job) File in Directory' is *not* selected.
4 Select the option 'Directory is a Queue'.
5 Click Apply.

Resolution (Océ 9400)

You can specify the resolution of the output in dots per inch (DPI).

▼ **Specifying the output resolution for the Océ 9400 printer**

1 Click the 'Resolution' tab at the top of the window.

2 The following window will appear:
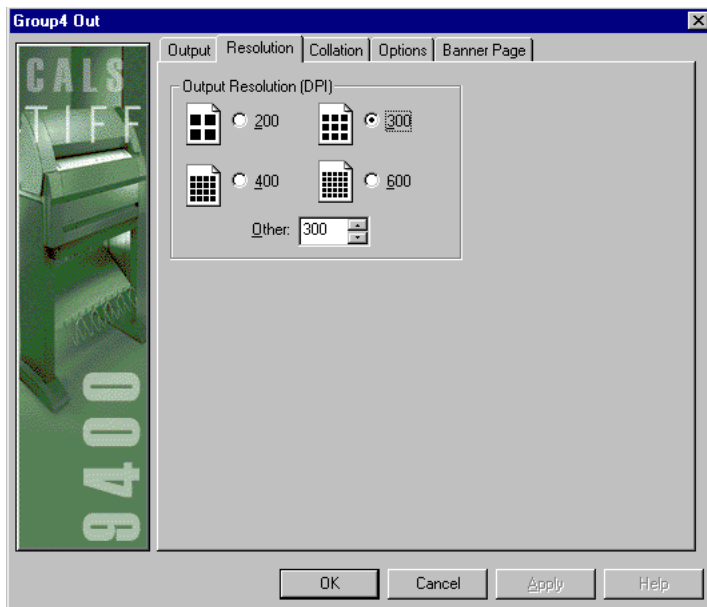
[134] Océ 9400 print window (Group4 Out): Resolution

3 Select 300 dpi.

4 Click Apply.

▼ **Specifying the output resolution to save the file on disk**

1 Click the 'Resolution' tab at the top of the window.

2 If you want to use the file as input for a software application, specify the maximum resolution.
If you want to use the file for printing at another time, specify the resolution of the printer:
  ■ Océ 9400: 300 dpi
  ■ Océ 9600, Océ 9700 or Océ 9800: 400 dpi

3 Click 'Apply'.

Collation (Océ 9400)

You can specify the order in which the copies of a job are printed.

▼ **Specifying Collation for the Océ 9400 printer**

1 Click the 'Collation' tab at the top of the window.
2 The following window will appear:
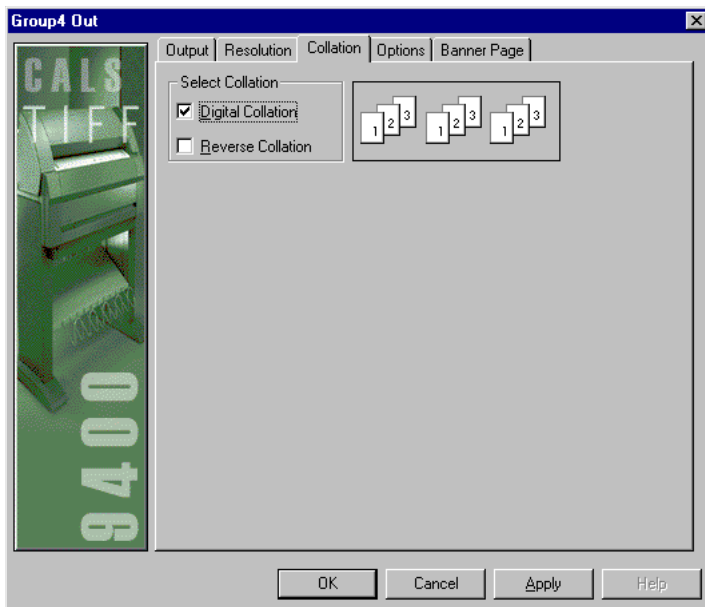
[135] Océ 9400 print window (Group4 Out): Collation

3 If required, you can select the following options:
   ■ Digital Collation: If you select this option, the prints will be sorted by set.
   ■ Reverse Collation: If you select this option, the first file of the job will be printed last.

   Note: *The drawings in the window will show the PRINT order of the drawings, depending on options that are selected.*

4 Click Apply.

Options (Océ 9400)

You can specify Océ 9400 options or choose the output format (CALS/TIFF) to save the file on disk.

You can specify the following Océ 9400 options:

Poster Mode When printing files with large black areas, Poster Mode ensures optimal print quality by adding extra toner.

Enable Long Plot Normally the length of the print is determined by the width of the selected roll and the according standard length. If you select 'Enable Long Plot', the length of the print may be longer than the standard length. That is, the length will be determined by the length of the drawing.

Paper roll or Manual feed You can select one of the following options:
■ Roll 1
■ Roll 2
■ Manual Feed
■ Auto Roll

If you select Auto Roll, the Océ 9400 will select the roll that ensures a best fit for the printed drawing.

▼   **Specifying options for the Océ 9400 printer**
   1 Click the 'Options' tab at the top of the window.
      The following window will appear:
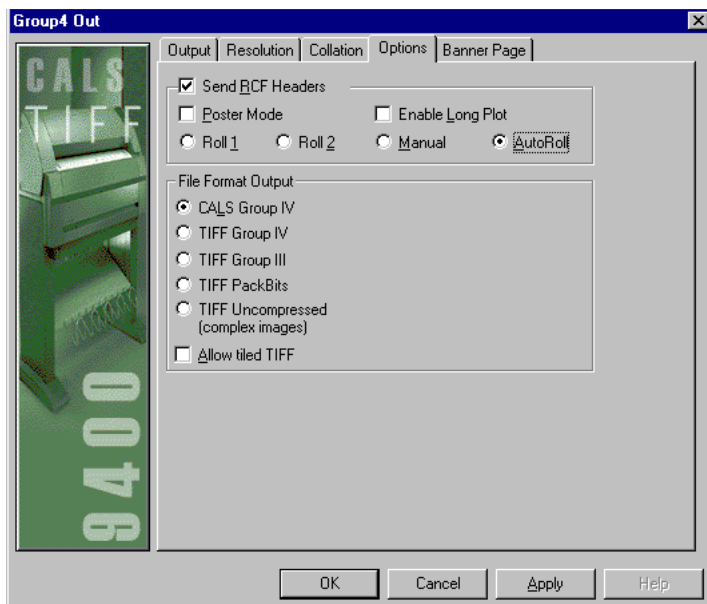
[136] Océ 9400 print window (Group4 Out): Options

2 Select 'Send RCF Header' and specify the Océ 9400 options.

3 Select 'CALS Group 4' as output format.

4 Click Apply.

▼ **Specifying options to save the file on disk (CALS/TIFF)**

1 Click the 'Options' tab at the top of the window.

2 Make sure that 'Send RCF Headers' is *not* selected.

3 Select the CALS/TIFF format of your choice.

4 Click Apply.

Banner page (Océ 9400)

You can print a banner page for the current job, or for each set in the current job. You can use any ASCII file or stamp (*.LBL) as banner page. If you use a stamp file, you can include variables such as 'job name' or 'date & time' (see 'Electronic stamps' on page 178).

▼ **Specifying banner page**

1 Click the 'Banner page' tab at the top of the window.
The following window will appear:
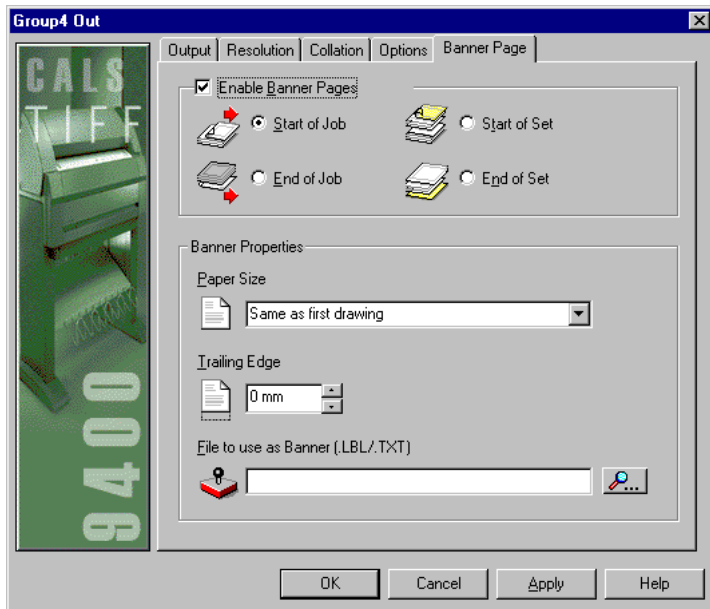
[137] Océ 9400 print window (Group4 Out): Banner page

2 Select when you want to print a banner page: at the start/end of the job or at the start/end of a set.

3 Select the paper size for the banner page.
You can select one of the available standard sizes, or 'Same as first drawing' (the same size as the first drawing of the job or set).

4 If required, you can specify a trailing edge for the banner page.

5 Use the 🔍... button to select the file you want to use as banner page. You can select any ASCII (*.ASC) file or electronic stamp (*.LBL) file.

6 Click Apply.

Chapter 16
Print on an Océ 9600

océ

Océ 9600 printer

The Océ 9600 printer is connected to a Server PC, using Repro Desk as a controller.

Note: *To establish communications with the Océ 9600 printer, you must start up the Océ Print Manager on the Server PC first.*

Start up the Océ 9600 print manager

Print manager must be started up before you can print on the Océ 9600 printer. During printing Print manager displays a list of the drawings in the print job. It displays the document name, the current status, and whether the drawing is being sent, is being rasterized, or has been printed.

It shows which roll the drawing has been printed on, the width and length of the drawing, the number of copies that have been printed and the time at which a drawing was printed.

After printing it displays how many sheets have been printed of each of the loaded rolls and the length in feet that has been used on the roll. This enables you to monitor the roll status directly from the application.

▼ **Start up the Océ 9600 Print Manager**

1 Start the Print Manager in the Program folder you specified during installation.
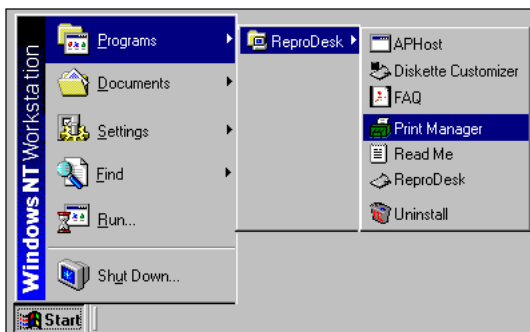
The following window will appear:
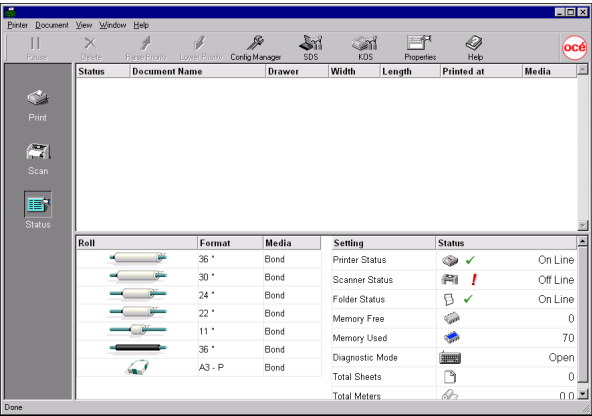
[138] Print Manager window

Note: *Océ 9600 Print manager allocates 70 MB of memory for rasterizing images. The status bar at the bottom of the screen displays how much memory is being used and how much memory is free.*
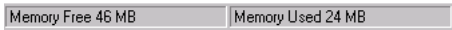
[139] Status bar - Memory allocation

Make settings in the print manager

The Printer menu of the Print Manager allows you to view and change a number of settings in the Océ Repro Desk Print Manager.

The Properties option allows you to view your current settings.

▼ **View the current status of the Océ Repro Desk Print Manager**

1 Select the Properties option from the Printer menu.
The following window will be displayed:

```
Properties                    [X]

System Configuration
--------------
Printer : 9600
Scanner : None
Belts : 1
Folder : Yes
Copy Delivery Tray : No
Customer Finishing Units : No
Punching Present : No
Reinforcement Present : No
Long Print Escape : No
Controller GUI : Yes
High Capacity Stacker : No
Counting Method : Linear Metres

Printer Configuration
--------------
Length Units : Metric
Weight Units : Grams
Paper Series : DIN
First Language :  Dutch
Second Language :  UK English
Legend : Right Lower (DIN)
Print Orientation : Portrait
Folding Method : DIN
Fold Alternative : No
Fold Delivery Info : Fold Stack
Punching Selected : No
Reinforcement Selected : No
Binding Selected : No

            [ OK ]
```

[140] Properties window in Printer menu

Once you have viewed your settings, click on OK to close the window.

These settings include Printer Configuration and Key Operator options.

Printer Configuration options   The Printer Configuration options allow you to make or change the following settings:

- Printer, such as length unit (metric or U.S.), weight unit (grams or pounds), paper series (DIN, DIN Carto, 8.5 inch, 8.5 and 9 inch, or JISB), and the first and second languages for the interface.
- Folder, such as print orientation (portrait, landscape, or auto detect), folding method (DIN, AFNOR, or Ericcson), Fold delivery (first fold exit, fold stack, or belt 1), or reinforcement selected.
- Packet, such as packet width, packet length, binding value, sheet length, sheet width, or binding selected.

Key operator settings The Key Operator option takes you to a sub menu where you can make a number of key operator settings and perform several tests for the Océ Repro Desk Server.

Note: *You need the key operator password to get access to these settings. This password is given to you by the Océ technician after installation.*

The Key Operator Settings window contains the following four tabs:
- Roll Drawers
- Sheet Feeder
- Transport and Folding
- Other

From the Roll Drawers tab you can adapt the leading edge position of the image related to the leading edge of the paper and you can modify the width position of the image on the paper from the upper, middle or lower roll drawers.

Adapt the leading edge position of the roll drawers

If you want to adapt the leading edge position of the roll drawers, and you know which value you want to choose, you simply enter this value (in tenths of millimeters) into the Enter value field and click on the Leading Edge Position button. After confirmation, the leading edge position is set to the specified value. If you do not know which value you want to enter you can take the following procedure.

▼ **Adapt the leading edge position of the roll drawers**
1 Make a basic test print from Roll 1 by clicking on the Test Print Basic button on the 'Other' tab.
2 Take a ruler and measure the distance between the edge of the paper and the C marker on the test print.

3 Enter the resulting value (in tenths of millimeters) in the Enter value field and click on the Edge and marker "C" Roll 1 button.
The leading edge position is adapted automatically, based on the specified value.
Note: *If an invalid value is entered, the following message is displayed: 'Value x is out of bounds. Range is from a to b. Default is c', where x is the specified value, a the minimum value, b the maximum value, and c the default value.*

Modify the roll drawer width positions

If you want to modify the width positions of the upper (rolls 1 or 2), middle (rolls 3 or 4) or lower (rolls 5 or 6) drawers, and you know which value you want to choose, you simply enter this value (in tenths of millimeters) into the Enter value field and click on the appropriate button. After confirmation, the appropriate width position is set to the specified value. If you do not know which value you want to enter you can take the following procedure.

▼ **Modify the roll drawer width positions**

1 Make a basic test print from Roll 1 or 2 (for the upper drawer), Roll 3 or 4 (for the middle drawer) or Roll 5 or 6 (for the lower drawer) by clicking on the Test Print Basic button on the Other tab.

2 Take a ruler and measure the distance between the edge of the paper and the F marker on the test print.

3 Enter the resulting value (in tenths of millimeters) in the Enter value field and click on the appropriate Edge and marker "F" Roll x button, where x can be 1 (upper drawer), 3 (middle drawer) or 5 (lower drawer).
The appropriate width position is adapted automatically, based on the specified value.

Note: *If an invalid value is entered, the following message is displayed: 'Value x is out of bounds. Range is from a to b. Default is c', where x is the specified value, a the minimum value, b the maximum value, and c the default value.*

From the *Sheet Feeder* tab you can adapt the leading edge position of the image related to the leading edge of the paper and you can modify the width position of the image on the paper from the upper, middle or lower sheet feeders.

Adapt the leading edge position of the sheet feeders

If you want to adapt the leading edge position of the sheet feeders, and you know which value you want to choose, you simply enter this value (in tenths of millimeters) into the Enter value field and click on the Leading Edge Position button. After confirmation, the leading edge position is set to the specified value. If you do not know which value you want to enter you can take the following procedure.

▼ **Adapt the leading edge position of the sheet feeders**

1 Make a basic test print from Sheet Feeder 1 by clicking on the Test Print Basic button on the Other tab.
2 Take a ruler and measure the distance between the edge of the paper and the D marker on the test print.
3 Enter the resulting value (in tenths of millimeters) in the Enter value field and click on the Edge and marker "D" button.
The leading edge position is adapted automatically, based on the specified value.
Note: *If an invalid value is entered, the following message is displayed: 'Value x is out of bounds. Range is from a to b. Default is c', where x is the specified value, a the minimum value, b the maximum value, and c the default value.*

Modify the sheet feeder width positions

If you want to modify the width positions of the upper, middle or lower sheet feeders, and you know which value you want to choose, you simply enter this value (in tenths of millimeters) into the Enter value field and click on the appropriate button. After confirmation, the appropriate width position is set to the specified value. If you do not know which value you want to enter you can take the following procedure.

▼ **Modify the sheet feeder width positions**

1 Make a basic test print from sheet feeder 1 (for the upper drawer), sheet feeder 2 (for the middle drawer) or sheet feeder 3 (for the lower drawer) by clicking on the 'Test Print Basic' button on the 'Other' tab.
2 Take a ruler and measure the distance between the edge of the paper and the E marker on the test print.
3 Enter the resulting value (in tenths of millimeters) in the Enter value field and click on the appropriate Edge and marker "E" x Sheet Feeder button, where x can be Upper, Middle or Lower.

The appropriate width position is adapted automatically, based on the specified value.

Note: *If an invalid value is entered, the following message is displayed: 'Value x is out of bounds. Range is from a to b. Default is c', where x is the specified value, a the minimum value, b the maximum value, and c the default value.*

From the 'Transport and Folding' tab you can adapt the leading edge position of the image related to the leading edge of the paper fed through the manual feed (this is the same as for the sheet feeders), modify the width position of the image on the paper from the manual feed, correct the deviation of the sensor used to measure the length of a sheet, specify the extra overlap you want in the first fold of the folder and determine the number of copies that can be placed on the output belt of the folder.

Note: *The leading edge and width positions are determined the same way as with the sheet feeders. The only difference is that, in this case, the test print has to be made from the manual feed.*

Modify the static deviation

If you want to modify the deviation of the sensor used to measure the length of a sheet, you can either enter the required value in the Enter Value field and click on the Static Deviation button, or you can take the following procedure.

▼ **Modify the static deviation**

1 Click on the Static Deviation Measured Length button to start the test.
A blank sheet is now produced.
2 Take a ruler and measure the length of the sheet.
3 Enter the result in the Key Operator Settings Test window (in tenths of millimeters when the system prompts you to do this and click on OK.
The system now compares the specified length with the length measured by the printer and automatically corrects the deviation.

Note: *To specify the extra overlap you want in the first fold of the folder and to determine the number of copies that can be placed on the output belt of the folder you simply enter a value in the Enter Value field (in tenths of millimeters and number of copies respectively) and click on the appropriate button (Folder 1 Overlap or Folder Output Belt Capacity).*

Other adjustments

From the *Other* tab you can adapt the light intensity of the print head, change the sleepmode time-out, correct the 1:1 projection of the image onto the paper, print the system settings, make a test print or make a demo print.

▼ **Adapt the light intensity of the print head**

1 Make a basic test print by clicking on the Test Print Basic button.
2 Determine which block of the print head related test pattern on the test print has the correct light intensity.
3 Enter the number next to the correct block in the Enter Value Field and click on the Block Light Intensity button.

The light intensity of the print head is now adapted.

Specify the sleepmode time-out The sleepmode is activated when the printer does not receive any print commands during the predefined time (in seconds) or does not detect any user interaction. The value of 0 indicates that sleepmode is disabled.

▼ **Specify the sleepmode time-out**

1 Enter the desired value in the Enter Value field and click on the Sleepmode Time-out button.
After confirmation the time-out value is set automatically.

▼ **Adapt the image length**

1 Make a basic test print by clicking on the Test Print Basic button.
2 Measure the distance between the A and B markers on the test print.
3 Enter this value (in tenths of millimeters) in the Enter Value field and click on the Length Marker 'A' and 'B' button.
The 1: 1 image length is now automatically adapted.
Note: *To print the system settings, basic test print or demo test print, you just have to click on the appropriate buttons. The prints will be made automatically.*

Key operator settings

From the Key Operator sub menu you can also change your key operator password, which you need to gain access to the key operator settings.
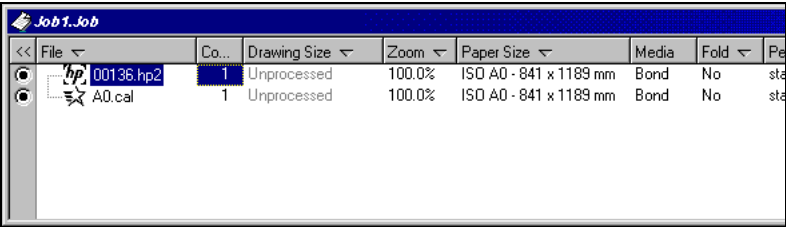
See also chapter 29, 'Key Operator Settings' on page 491.

Print on the Océ 9600 printer

After starting up the print manager, you can print on the Océ 9600 printer as described in this section.

▼ **Print on the Océ 9600 printer**

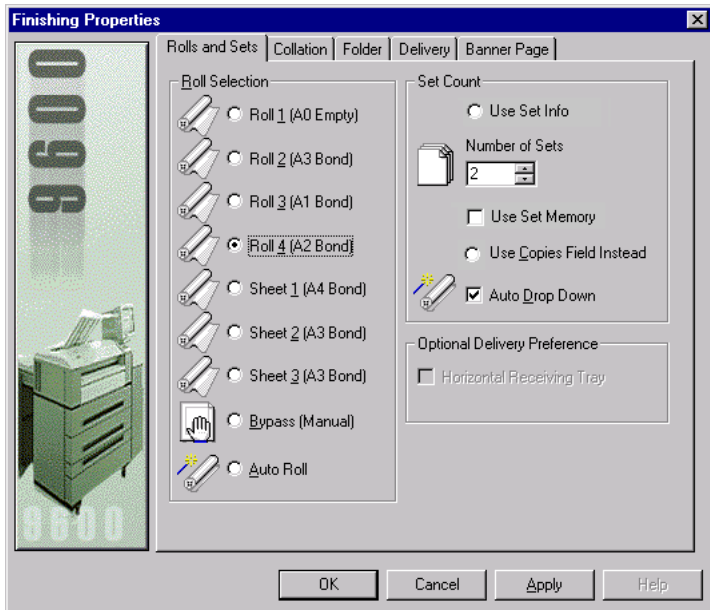**1** Open a job window, containing the job you want to print.

[141] Job Window

2 If required, you can change the file settings in the Job window (see chapter 9, 'Imaging properties' on page 151).

3 Select 'Print Océ 9600' in the 'Print' Quick menu.

[142] Select 'Print Océ 9600' in the 'Print' Quick menu

4 The following window will appear:

[143] Finishing Properties window

5 Specify the required print settings in the Finishing Properties window (see sections below).

6 Click OK.
The job will be sent to Océ 9600 Print Manager to be printed.

Note: *The 9600 printer performs error recovery from within the software. Error recovery may be performed after a paper jam, paper out situation, folder jam, or machine error. If printing is completed (that is, the Print dialog box has disappeared) but a paper jam occurs in the printer, the Print dialog box may appear again to perform error recovery. Simply allow the software to reprint the drawing that was jammed in the printer.*
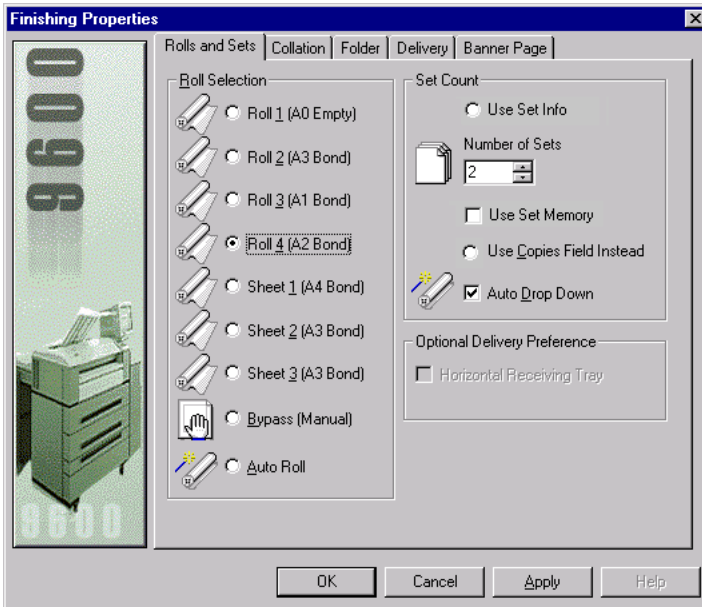
Rolls and Sets (Océ 9600)

You can select the paper roll or Bypass (manual sheet feed), and specify the number of sets you want to print.

▼ **Specifying rolls and sets**

1 If not already selected, click the 'Rolls and Sets' tab at the top of the 'Finishing Properties' window.
The following window will appear:

[144] Finishing Properties window: Rolls and Sets

2 Select one of the rolls, sheet feeders, bypass or auto roll. if you select auto roll, the Océ 9600 will select the roll that ensures a best fit for the printed drawing. First Repro Desk searches for a roll of the specified media type. If such a roll is found, Repro Desk will search for the exact size. If the exact size is not found, a larger size will be selected.

3 Specify the number of copies of the whole job (sets) you want to print. You can choose to use the specify the number of sets here, or print the number of sets as specified in the actual job file:
- You can fill in a number, or
- Select 'Use copies field instead'.

If you select this option, the number of copies as defined in the job window will be used.

4 If you want the Océ 9600 to switch automatically to another roll or sheet feeder when the current one is out of paper, select the option 'Auto drop down'. Repro Desk will search for a roll or sheet feeder of the specified size and media type. If a roll was used, Repro Desk will only look for another roll. If a sheet feeder was used, Repro Desk will only look for another sheet feeder.
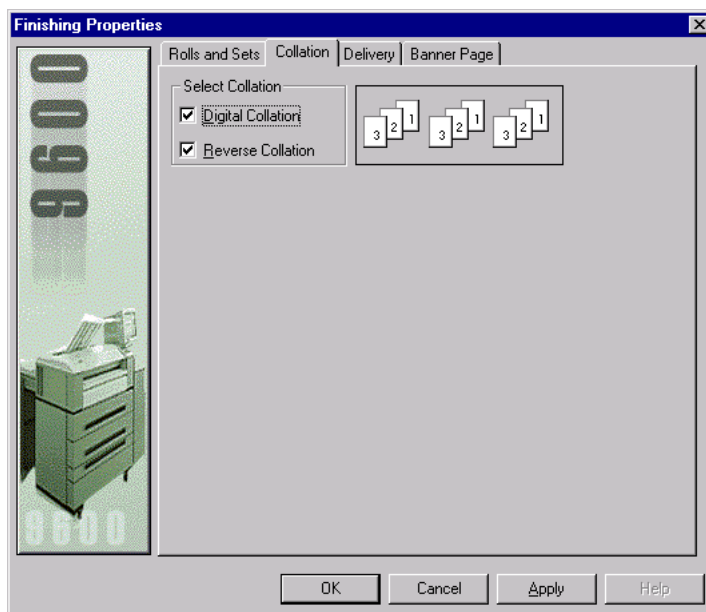
5 Click Apply.

Collation (Océ 9600)

You can specify the order in which the copies of a job are printed.

▼ **Specifying collation**

1 Click the 'Collation' tab at the top of the window.
The following window will appear:

[145] Finishing Properties window: Collation

2 If required, you can select the following options:
■ Digital Collation: If you select this option, the prints will be sorted by set.

■ Reverse Collation: If you select this option, the first file of the job will be printed last. As result, the first file of the job will be on top after printing.

Note: *The drawings in the window will show the PRINT order of the drawings, depending on options that are selected. The result after printing will show a reversed order.*

3 Click Apply.

Folder (Océ 9600)

If the Océ 9600 is equipped with a folder, you can specify Folder settings. You can save the folder settings in a Configuration file, and recall them whenever needed.

It is possible to specify the folding options in advance, when creating the job.

When creating the job, you can see in the Viewer which part of the drawing will be on top after folding.

Folder options The folder of the Océ 9600 can be equipped with a number of options. Depending on the configuration of the folder you are using, you can specify the following options:

■ Don't Fold: Output will not be folded.
■ Fold: Output will be folded without any options.
■ Fold & Punch: Output will be folded and punched (if puncher is installed).
■ Fold & Reinforce: Output will be folded, and a reinforcement strip will be added (if reinforcement unit is installed).
■ First Fold Exit: Output will only be folded in one direction (first fold), and then delivered in the first fold delivery tray.

Note: *To use punching or reinforcement, you must select (one of) the belts for output delivery in the delivery settings (see page 270).*

Method You can specify one of the following folding methods: Standard, Ericsson or AFNOR.

Orientation If you select 'Portrait' as orientation, the drawing should be in portrait orientation. If you select 'Automatic', the machine determines the length of the drawing to obtain a good fold package, depending on the roll width.
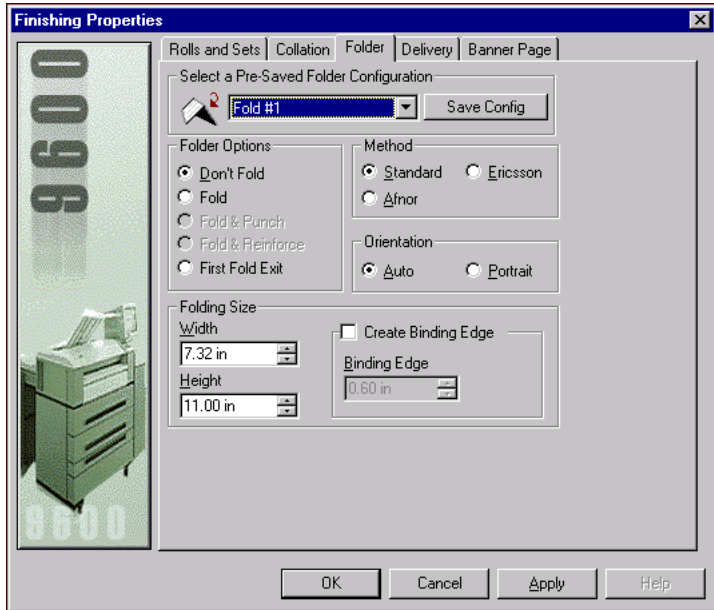
Folding size You can specify the folding width and folding height yourself.

Binding edge If desired, you can select a binding edge, and specify the size of that edge.

▼   **Specify Folder settings**

1 Click the 'Folder' tab at the top of the window.
The following window appears.

2 If you want to use previously-saved folder settings, select one of the available Configuration files.
3 If required, change one or more folder settings.
4 If you want to save your new folder settings, click 'Save Config'.
Click Apply.

Delivery (Océ 9600)

You can specify delivery options as follows.

▼ **Specifying delivery settings**

1 Click the 'Delivery' tab at the top of the window.
The following window will appear:
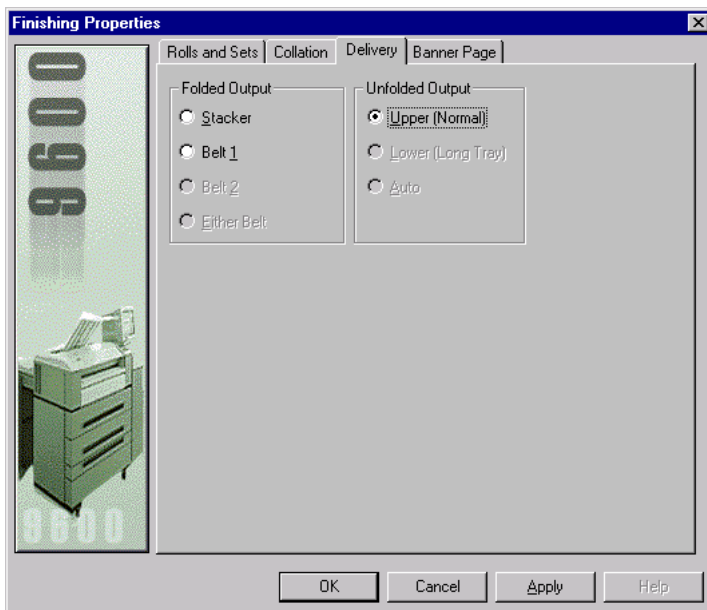
[146] Finishing Properties window: Delivery

2 If the Océ 9600 is equipped with a folder, you can select one of the following
options for the folded output:
- Stacker: The folded output will be delivered in the standard delivery tray of
  the folder.
- Belt 1 or Belt 2: If installed, you can select one of the delivery belts to collect
  the folded output
- Either Belt: If two belts are installed, you can select this option in order to
  use both belts. If one belt is full, the folder will switch automatically to the
  other belt.

3 You can select one of the following options for the unfolded output:
- Upper (Stacker): The unfolded output will be delivered to the copy delivery
 tray, or the optional High-Capacity Stacker.

- Lower (Long Tray): The unfolded output will be delivered through the lower output into a container (if it is configured).
- Auto: Normally, the upper output is used. The lower output is only used if the copy is too long to be collected in the copy delivery tray or High-Capacity Stacker (longer than 1230 mm or 48.5").

4 Click Apply.

Banner page (Océ 9600)

You can specify to print a banner page for the current job, or for each set in the current job. You can use any ASCII file or stamp (*.LBL) as banner page. If you use a stamp file, you can include variables like 'job name' or 'date & time' (see 'Electronic stamps' on page 178).

▼ **Specify banner page**

1 Click the 'Banner Page' tab at the top of the 'Finishing Properties' window. The following window will appear:
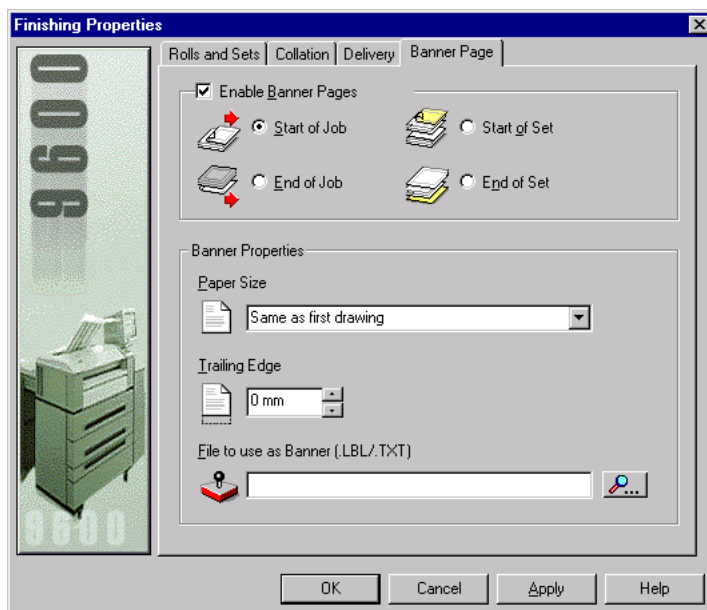
[147] Finishing Properties window: Banner Page

2 Select when you want to print a banner page: at the start/end of the job or at the start/end of a set.

3 Select the paper size for the banner page.
You can select one of the available standard sizes, or 'Same as first drawing' (the same size as the first drawing of the job or set).

4 If required, you can specify a trailing edge for the banner page.
Note: *The Trailing Edge option allows you to specify an additional length of paper to be added to the banner page so that the sets and or jobs can be easily separated.*

5 Use the 🔍 browse button to select the file you want to use as banner page.
You can select any ASCII (*.ASC) file or electronic stamp (*.LBL) file.

6 Click Apply.

Chapter 17
Print on Océ 9700 or Océ 9800

océ

Océ 9700/9800 printer

The Océ 9700/9800 printer is connected to the server using the Direct Raster Interface (DRI). To establish communications with the Océ 9700/9800 printer, you must start up the Print Manager first.

Starting up the Océ 9700/9800 print manager

Print manager must be started up before you can print on the Océ 9700/9800 printer. During printing it displays a list of the drawings in the print job. It displays the name, the current status, whether the drawing is being sent, is being rasterized, or has been printed.

It shows which roll the drawing has been printed on, the width and length of the drawing, the number of copies that have been printed and the time at which a drawing was printed.

After printing it displays how many sheets have been printed of each of the loaded rolls and the length that has been used on the roll. This enables you to monitor the roll status directly from the Océ Repro Desk application.

▼ **Starting up the Océ 9700/9800 Print Manager**

1 Start the Print Manager in the Program folder you specified during installation. The following window will appear:
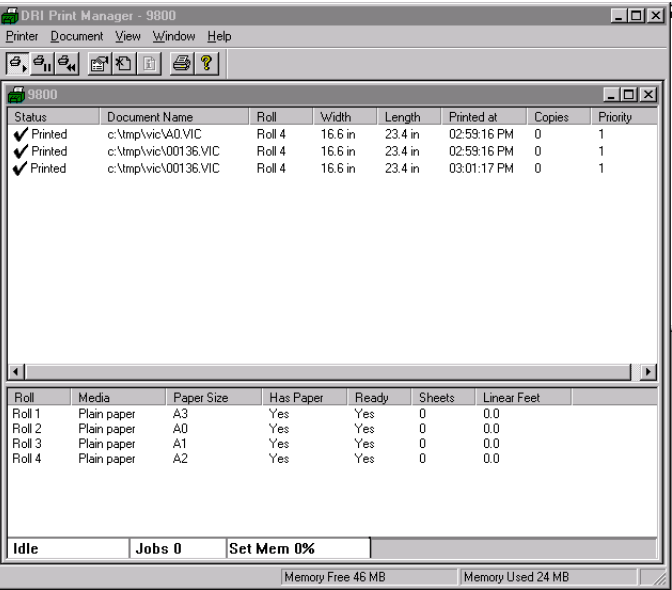
[148] Print Manager window

2 Print Manager controls are available in the Printer and Document menus, and the standard windows menus View, Window and Help.
Note: *Océ 9700/9800 Print manager allocates 70 MB of memory for rasterising images. The status bar at the bottom of the screen displays how much memory is being used and how much memory is free.*

[149] Status bar - Memory allocation
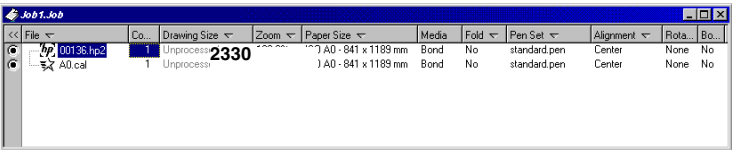
Printing on the Océ 9700/9800 printer

After starting up the print manager, you can print on the Océ 9700/9800 printer as described in this section.

▼   **Printing on the Océ 9700/9800 printer (DRI)**

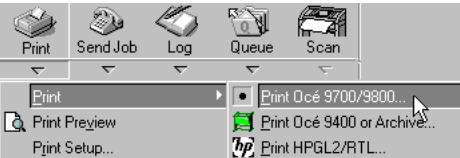**1** Open a job window, containing the job you want to print.
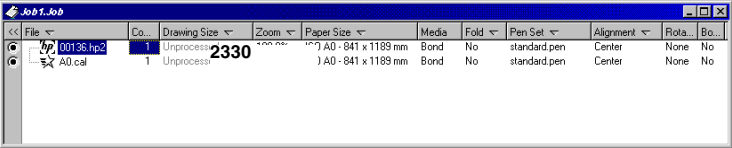
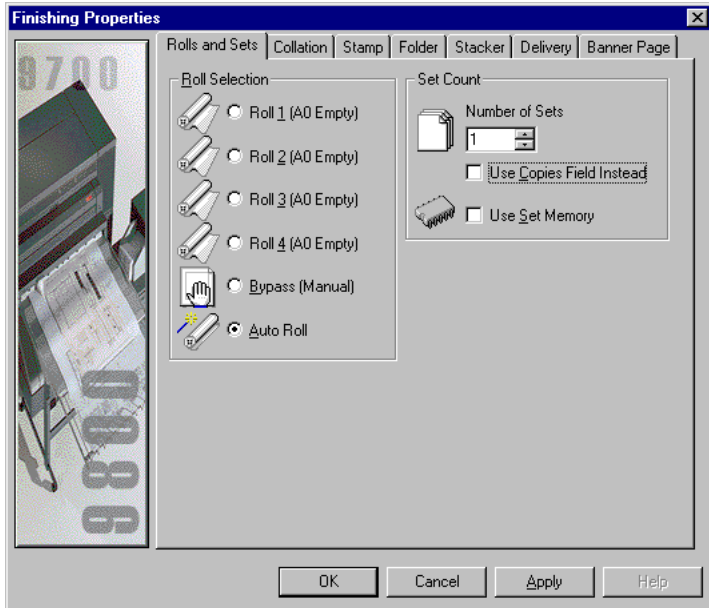**1** Open a job window, containing the job you want to print.

[150] Job Window

2 If required, you can change the file settings in the Job window (see chapter 9, 'Imaging properties' on page 151).

3 Select 'Print Océ 9700/9800' in the 'Print' Quick menu.

[151] Selecting 'Print Océ 9700/9800' in the 'Print' Quick menu

4 The following window will appear:

[152] Finishing Properties window

5 Specify the required print settings in the Finishing Properties window (see sections below).

6 Click OK.
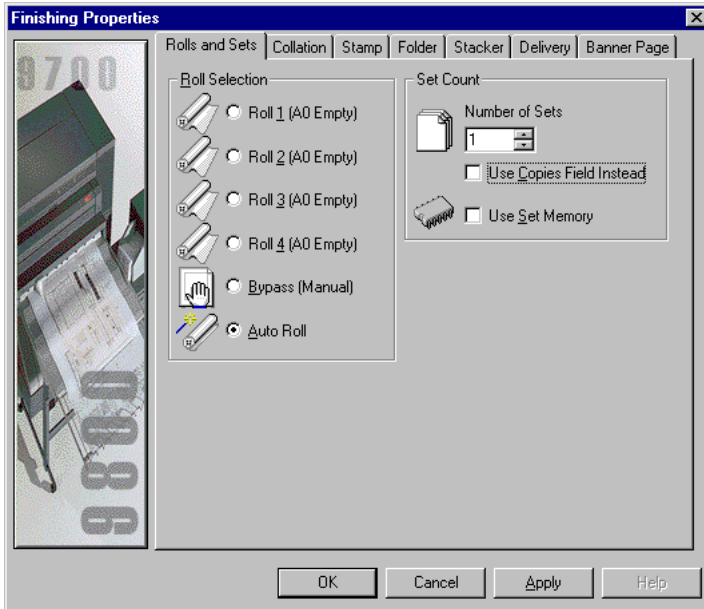
The job will be sent to Océ 9700/9800 Print Manager to be printed.

Rolls and Sets (Océ 9700/9800)

You can select the paper roll or Bypass (manual sheet feed), and specify the number of sets you want to print.

▼ **Specifying rolls and sets**

1 If not already selected, click the 'Rolls and Sets' tab at the top of the 'Finishing Properties' window.

2 The following window will appear:

[153] Finishing Properties window: Rolls and Sets

3 Select one of the rolls, bypass or auto roll. if you select auto roll, the Océ 9700/9800 will select the roll that ensures a best fit for the printed drawing. First Repro Desk searches for a roll of the specified media type. If such a roll is found, Repro Desk will search for the exact size. If the exact size is not found, a larger size will be selected.

4 Specify the number of copies of the whole job (sets) you want to print, in one of the following ways:
- You can fill in a number, or
- Select 'Use copies field instead'.
  If you select this option, the number of copies as defined in the job window will be used.

5 If your printer supports set processing, you can select 'Use set memory'. In that case the job will be sent to the printer once, and the printer will use its set memory to generate the copies. Using the set memory of the printer provides a better performance. Only if the printer has not enough set memory, you must de-select this option.

Note: *If the printer does not support set processing, this option can not be selected.*
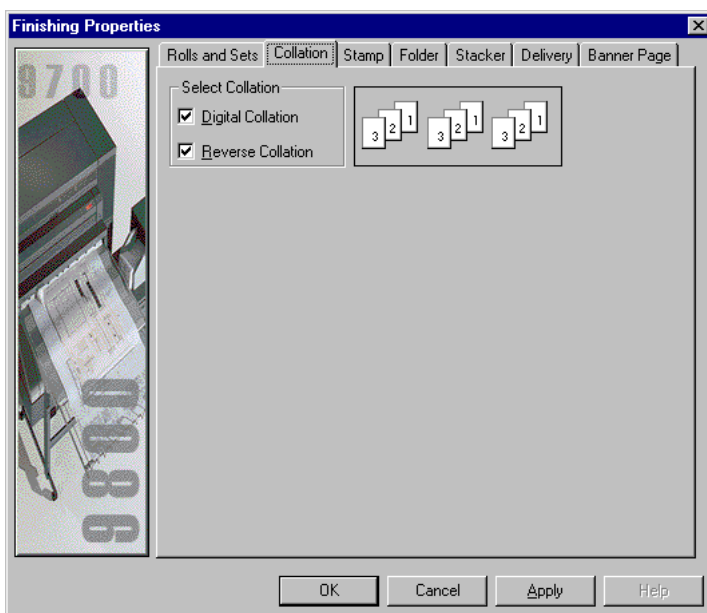
6 Click Apply.

Collation (Océ 9700/9800)

You can specify the order in which the copies of a job are printed.

▼ **Specifying collation**

1 Click the 'Collation' tab at the top of the window.

2 The following window will appear:

[154] Finishing Properties window: Collation

3 If required, you can select the following options:
  ■ Digital collation: If you select this option, the prints will be sorted by set.

■ Reverse collation: If you select this option, the first file of the job will be printed last. As result, the first file of the job will be on top after printing.
Note: *The drawings in the window will show the PRINT order of the drawings, depending on options that are selected. The result after printing will show a reversed order.*
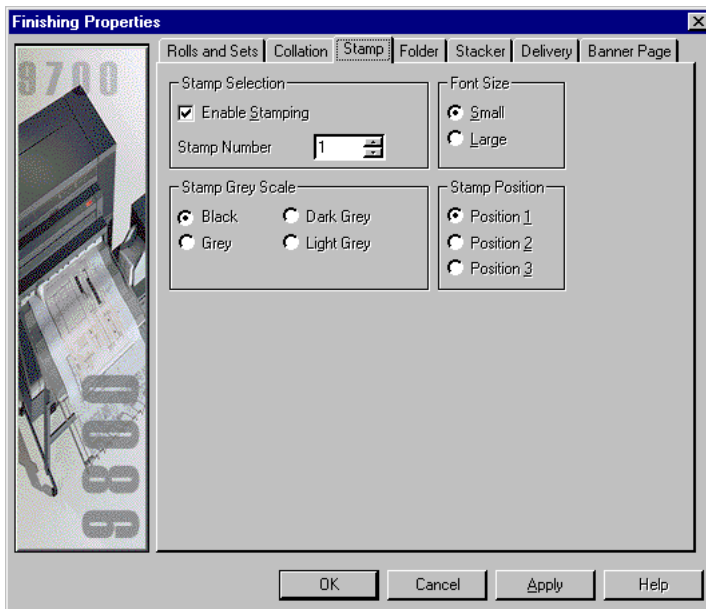
4 Click Apply.

Printer stamp (Océ 9700/9800)

If the Océ 9700/9800 supports printer stamps, you can specify such a stamp to be used for the whole job. A printer stamp must already be specified on the printer, using the Océ 9700/9800 operating panel. You can choose one of the three fixed positions for the stamp, as defined during installation of the Océ 9700/9800.

▼ **Specifying printer stamp**

1 Click the 'Stamp' tab at the top of the window.

2 The following window will appear:

[155] Finishing Properties window: Stamp

3 Select 'Enable Stamping', and choose one of the available printer stamps, by specifying its number.

4 If required, you can change the settings for the 'Gray Scale', 'Font Size' and 'Stamp Position'.

5 Click Apply.

Folder (Océ 9700/9800)

If the Océ 9700/9800 is equipped with a folder, you can specify folder settings. You can save the folder settings in a configuration file, and recall them whenever needed.

It is possible to specify the Folding options already when creating the job (see 'Folder' on page 160).

When creating the job, you can see in the viewer what part of the drawing will be on top after folding (see 'View fold' on page 138).

Folder options The folder of the Océ 9700/9800 can be equipped with a number of options. Depending on the configuration of the folder you are using, you can specify the following options:

- Don't fold: Output will not be folded.
- Fold: Output will be folded without any options.
- Fold & Punch: Output will be folded and punched (if puncher installed).
- Fold & Reinforce: Output will be folded, and a reinforcement strip will be added (if reinforcement unit is installed).
- First fold Exit: Output will only be folded in one direction (first fold), and then delivered in the First fold delivery tray.

Note: *To use Punching or Reinforcement, you must select one of the belts for output delivery in the delivery settings only (see 'Delivery (Océ 9700/9800)' on page 285).*

Method You can specify one of the following folding methods: Standard, Ericsson or AFNOR.

Orientation If you select 'Portrait' as Orientation, the drawing should be in portrait orientation. If you select 'Automatic', the machine determines the length of the drawing to obtain a good fold package, depending on the roll width
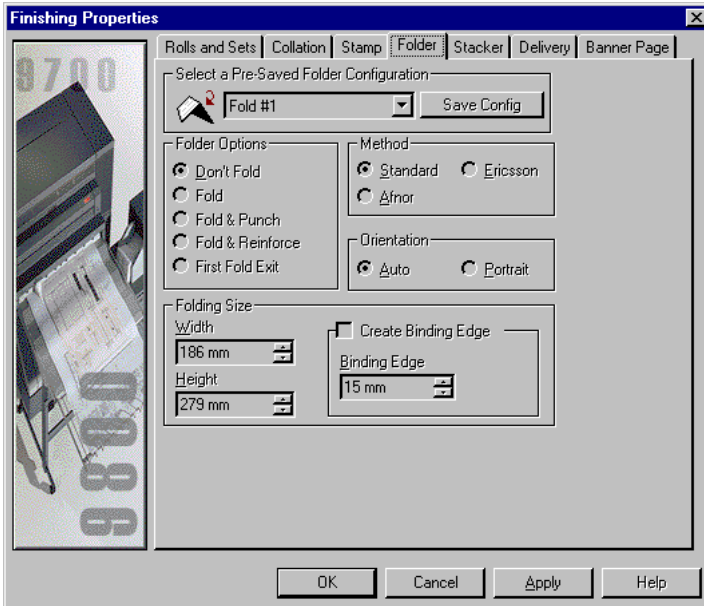
Folding size You can specify the Folding width and Folding height yourself.

Binding Edge You can select if you want a binding edge, and specify the size of that edge.

▼   **Specifying folder settings**

1 Click the 'Folder' tab at the top of the window.

2 The following window will appear:
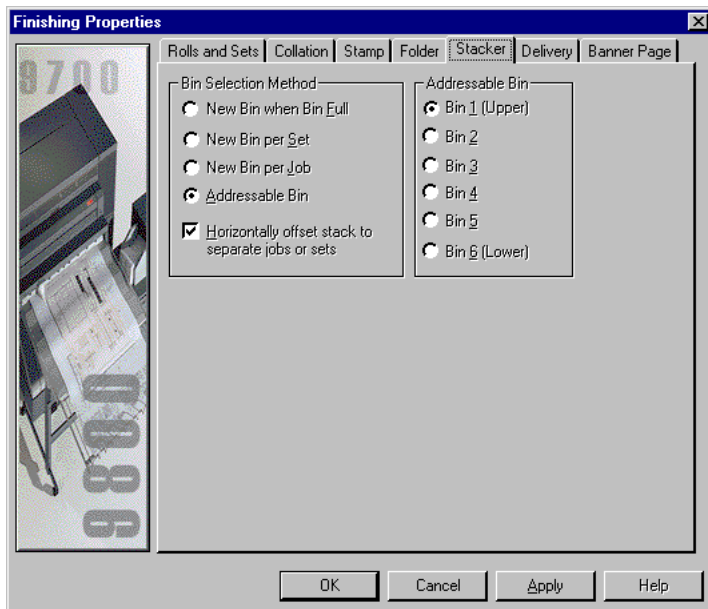

[156] Finishing Properties window: Folder

3 If you want to use pre-saved folder settings, select one of the available predefined configurations.

4 If required, change one or more folder settings.

5 If you want to save your new folder settings, click 'Save Config' and specify the name of the folder settings.

6 Click Apply.

Stacker (Océ 9700/9800)

If the Océ 9700/9800 is equipped with a high capacity stacker, you can specify stacker settings.

▼ **Specifying Stacker Settings**

1 Click the 'Stacker' tab at the top of the window.

2 The following window will appear:


[157] Finishing Properties window: Stacker

3 Select the bin selection method you want to use:

■ New bin when bin full
All copies are delivered onto the same bin. If this bin is full, the next bin will be used (bin 6 will be followed by bin 1).

■ new bin per set
Each set will be delivered on a new bin (bin 6 will be followed by bin 1).
Note: *If a set does not fit onto one bin, the next bin will be selected automatically to finish the set.*

■ New bin per job
Each job will be delivered on a new bin (bin 6 will be followed by bin 1).
Note: *If a job does not fit onto one bin, the next bin will be selected automatically to finish the job.*

Note: *One job may contain several sets.*

■ Addressable bin

All output is delivered on the bin that is specified at the right side of the window. This process will continue until the specified bin is full (regardless if another bin is empty). In that case printing is stopped.

4 If required you can select 'Horizontally offset stack. In that case the bin will shift between two jobs or sets, to provide easy job/set separation (see figure 158).
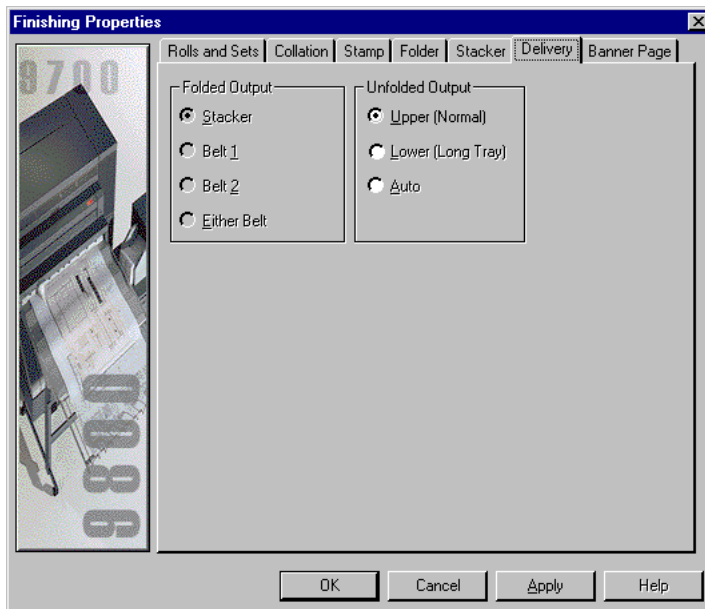

Offset stack not selected   **Offset stack selected**
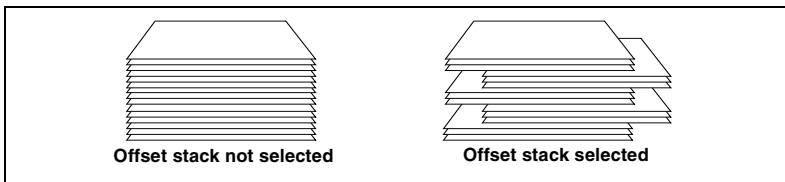
[158] Using 'Offset stack'

5 Click Apply.

Delivery (Océ 9700/9800)

You can specify delivery options as follows.

▼ **Specifying delivery settings**

1 Click the 'Delivery' tab at the top of the window.

2 The following window will appear:

[159] Finishing Properties window: Delivery

3 If the Océ 9700/9800 is equipped with a folder, you can select one of the following options for the folded output:
- Stacker: The folded output will be delivered in the standard delivery tray of the folder.
- Belt 1 or Belt 2: If installed, you can select one of the delivery belts to collect the folded output
- Either Belt: If two belts are installed, you can select this option to use both belts. If one belt is full, the folder will switch automatically to the other belt.

4 You can select one of the following options for the unfolded output:
- Upper (Stacker): The unfolded output will be delivered to the copy delivery tray, or the optional high capacity stacker.
- Lower (Long Tray): The unfolded output will be delivered through the lower output in a container (if it is configured).

■ Auto: Normally the upper output is used. Only if the copy is too long to be collected on the copy delivery tray or high capacity stacker (longer than 1230 mm or 48.5"), the lower output is used.

5 Click Apply.

Banner page (Océ 9700/9800)

You can specify to print a banner page for the current job, or for each set in the current job. You can use any ASCII file or stamp (*.LBL) as banner page. If you use a stamp file, you can include variables like 'job name' or 'date & time' (see 'Electronic stamps' on page 178).

▼ **Specifying banner page**

1 Click the 'Banner Page' tab at the top of the 'Configure Queue' window.
2 The following window will appear:
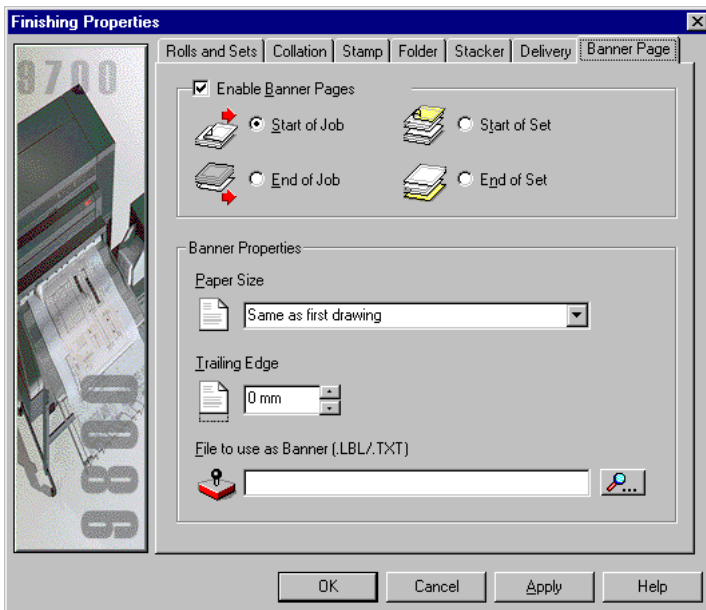
[160] Finishing Properties window: Banner Page

3 Select when you want to print a banner page: at the start/end of the job or at the start/end of a set.
4 Select the paper size for the banner page.

You can select one of the available standard sizes, or 'Same as first drawing' (the same size as the first drawing of the job or set).

5 If required, you can specify a trailing edge for the banner page.

6 Use the button to select the file you want to use as banner page. You can select any ASCII (*.ASC) file or electronic stamp (*.LBL) file.

7 Click Apply.

Chapter 18
Print on Océ 3165

océ

Océ 3165 PostScript printer

The Océ 3165 printer can be installed in two ways:

- As local printer, connected to one of the parallel ports (for example, LPT1) of the Server PC.
- As remote printer, connected to a network.

Note: *If the Océ 3165 is installed as remote printer, you must install a driver on the Océ Repro Desk PC. You can use any Windows driver for this purpose, since it is only used to make the connection to the Océ 3165. Océ Repro Desk will provide the actual driver functionality.*

You can select the following Océ 3165 options (see 'Options (Océ 3165)' on page 296):

- Staple
- Print on both sides (Duplex printing)
- Paper Source

It is also possible to save the output as PostScript file in a specified directory, or to send the output to a queue.

▼   **Printing on the Océ 3165 or saving as a PostScript file**

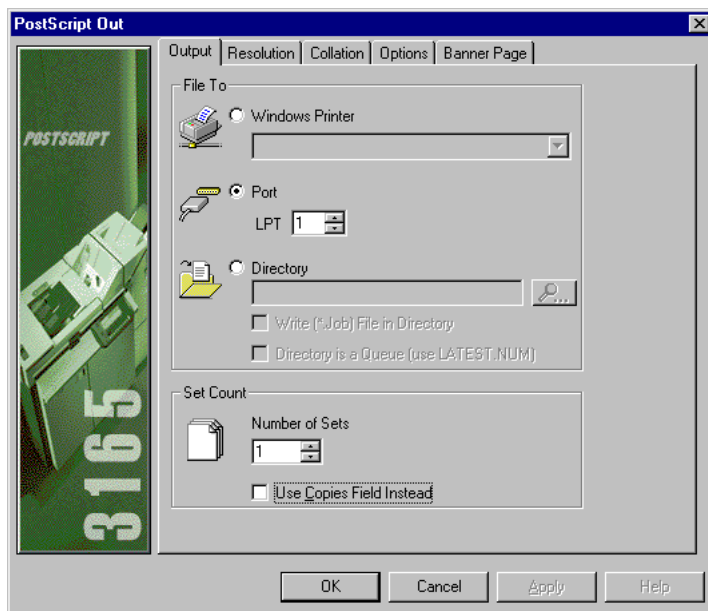1   Open a job window, containing the job you want to print.
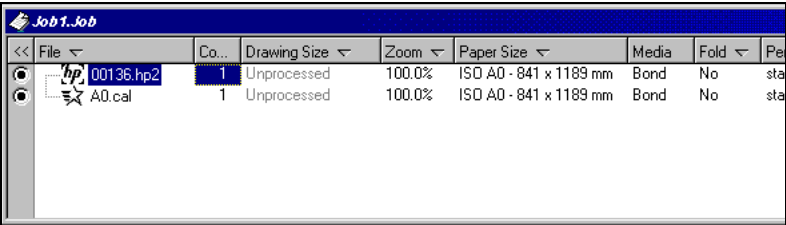
[161] Job Window

2 If required, you can change the file settings in the Job window (see chapter 9, 'Imaging properties' on page 151).

3 Select 'Print PostScript' in the 'Print' Quick menu.
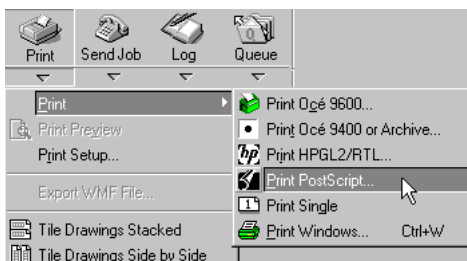
[162] Selecting 'Print PostScript' in the 'Print' Quick menu

4 The following window will appear:

[163] 3165 or PostScript Output window

5 Specify the required settings in the 'PostScript Out' window.
For more information, see sections below.

6 Click OK.

Output (Océ 3165)

You can select the printer you want to send the output to, or you can specify a directory or queue to save the output as PostScript file. If you have selected a printer, you can also specify the number of copies.

▼ **Specifying output settings for the Océ 3165 printer**

1 If not already selected, click the 'Output' tab at the top of the 'PostScript Out' window.

2 The following window will appear:

[164] PostScript Out window: Output

3 If the Océ 3165 is installed as remote printer, select 'Windows Printer', and choose the Océ 3165 from the list of available Windows printers.
If the Océ 3165 is installed as local printer, select 'Port' and specify the according port number.

4 Specify the number of copies:
■ Number of Sets: You can specify the number of sets yourself. Each set will contain one copy of each drawing in the print job. The Copies column in the job window will be ignored.

■ Use Copies Field Instead: The number of copies as defined for each drawing in the Copies column of the job window will be used.

5 Click Apply.

▼ **Specifying output settings to save the file on disk**

1 If not already selected, click the 'Output' tab at the top of the 'PostScript Out' window (see figure 164 on page 292).

2 Select 'Directory' and specify the appropriate directory (you can use the Browse button at the right side).

3 If you want to save the *.Job file in the specified directory as well, select the option 'Write (*Job) File in Directory'.

4 Make sure the option 'Directory is a Queue' is *not* selected.

5 Click Apply.

▼ **Specifying Output settings to send the file to a queue**

1 If not already selected, click the 'Output' tab at the top of the 'PostScript Out' window (see figure 164 on page 292).

2 Select 'Directory' and specify the appropriate queue by (you can use the Browse button at the right side to select the *.Q file in the Queue folder).

3 Make sure the option 'Write (*Job) File in Directory' is *not* selected.

4 Select the option 'Directory is a Queue'.

5 Click Apply.

Resolution (Océ 3165)

You can specify the resolution of the output in dots per inch (DPI).

Note: *This option will only have effect when the original file contains raster data, or if the option 'Send monochrome raster' is set (see 'Options (Océ 3165)' on page 296).*

▼ **Specifying the output resolution for the Océ 3165**

1 Click the 'Resolution' tab at the top of the window.
2 The following window will appear:
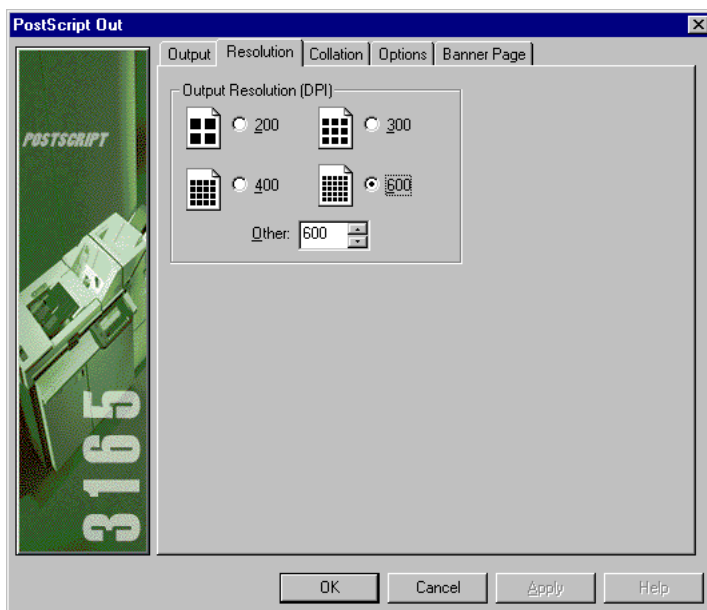
[165] PostScript Out window: Resolution

3 Select 600 dpi.
4 Click Apply.

▼ **Specifying the output resolution to save the file on disk**

1 Click the 'Resolution' tab at the top of the window (see figure 165 on page 294).
2 If you want to use the file as input for a software application, specify the maximum resolution.

If you want to use the file for printing at another time, specify the resolution of the printer.

3 Click Apply.

Collation (Océ 3165)

You can specify the order in which the copies of a job are printed.

▼ **Specifying collation for the Océ 3165**

1 Click the 'Collation' tab at the top of the window.

2 The following window will appear:
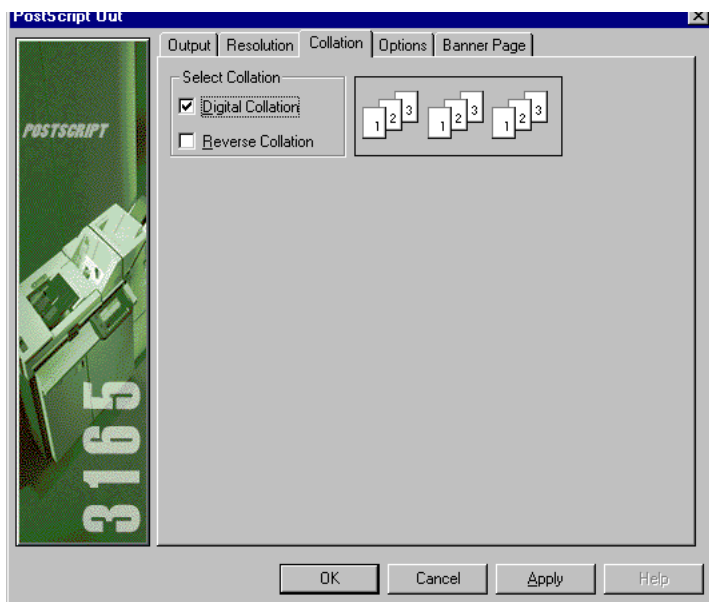
[166] PostScript Out window: Collation

3 If required, you can select the following options:
  - Digital Collation: If you select this option, the prints will be sorted by set.
  - Reverse Collation: If you select this option, the first file of the job will be printed last.

  Note: *The drawings in the window will show the PRINT order of the drawings, depending on options that are selected.*

4 Click Apply.

Options (Océ 3165)

You can specify the following Océ 3165 options:

Image output options You can specify the following image output options:

- Send only monochrome raster
  The PostScript file will contain raster data without colors.
  If this option is not selected, the contents of the PostScript file depends on the contents of the source file: vector data will remain vector data, and raster data will remain raster data.
  This option can be selected in combination with other options (see below).

The following options only work when the source file contains vector data:

- Draw all lines 1 pixel thick
  This option only works when the source file contains vector data.
- Draw all lines in monochrome (no color)
- Draw all lines solid (no raster patterns)

Margin You can specify the margin width in either inches or, if you enable "Use Metric Units," millimeters.

Staple If you have specified the number of sets in the 'Output' menu, each set will be stapled. If you have specified to use the Copies field, the whole job will be stapled once.

Print on both sides (Duplex printing) If you select this option, the Océ 3165 will print on both sides of the paper. You can choose between:

- Long side: the output will be printed in such a way, you can bind the long edge and open it as a book.
- Short Side: the output will be printed in such a way, you can bind the short edge and open it as a calendar.

Paper source You can select one of the following options:

- Automatic
- Tray1: Paper size configurable per job
- Tray2: Paper size fixed: configured once during installing
- Tray3: Paper size fixed: configured once during installing
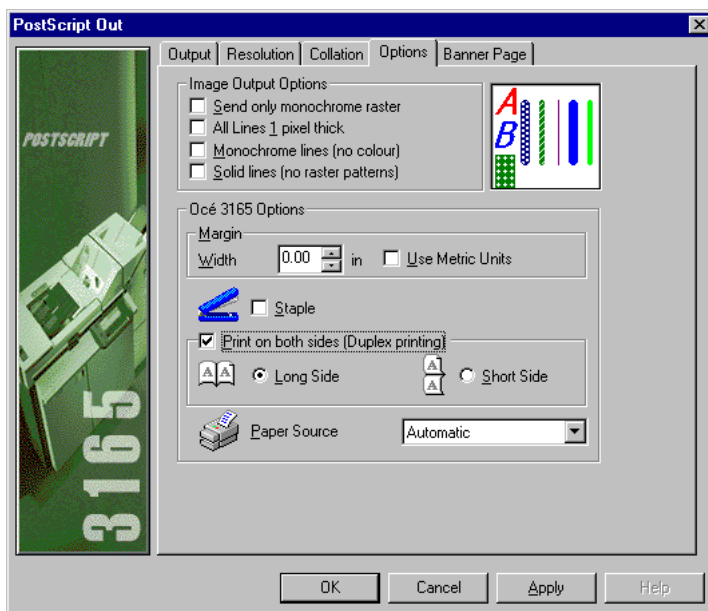- Tray4: Paper size fixed: A4 (large tray)

If you select Automatic, the Océ 3165 will select the paper size that ensures a best fit for the printed drawing.

▼ **Specifying options**

1 Click the 'Options' tab at the top of the window.

2 The following window will appear:
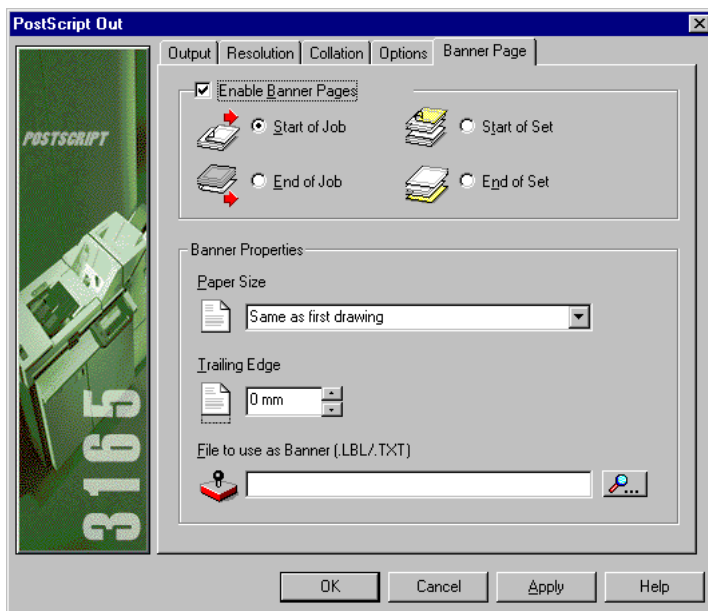

[167] PostScript Out window: Options

3 Select the required options.

4 Click Apply.

Banner page (Océ 3165)

You can specify to print a banner page for the current job, or for each set in the current job. You can use any ASCII file or stamp (*.LBL) as banner page. If you use a stamp file, you can include variables like 'job name' or 'date & time' (see 'Electronic stamps' on page 178).

▼ **Specifying Banner Page**

1 Click the 'Banner Page' tab at the top of the window.
2 The following window will appear:

[168] PostScript Out window: Banner Page

3 Select when you want to print a banner page: at the start/end of the job or at the start/end of a set.
4 Select the paper size for the banner page.
5 You can select one of the available standard sizes, or 'Same as first drawing' (the same size as the first drawing of the job or set).
6 If required, you can specify a trailing edge for the banner page.
7 Use the 🔎 button to select the file you want to use as banner page. You can select any ASCII (*.ASC) file or electronic stamp (*.LBL) file.
8 Click Apply.

Chapter 19
Unattended printing

Introduction

You can use Océ Repro Desk to automate print jobs and to print without user intervention.

Users of Repro Desk Remote can print on all printers that are attached to the Repro Desk Server, without user intervention at the server side. There are three methods of unattended printing:

Direct printing The users of Repro Desk Remote can define all print settings (such as which roll of paper) for each print job. The print jobs are printed automatically.

Note: *Direct printing does not apply to the Océ 9400 printer.*

Automatic printing The central repro center operator defines a number of queues with pre-set parameters (similar to print configurations). For example: a queue with folding, a queue with no folding, etc. When the remote customer sends a job to be printed, the default printer dependent settings of the selected print queue will be used for all print jobs. The print jobs are printed automatically.

Native Printing Native drawings can be printed without the need for Repro Desk Remote, and without specifying any print settings. Using a LAN connection, the drawing can simply be copied into a polling queue on Repro Desk Server. The drawing will automatically be printed, using the print settings of the selected polling queue.

That is, the central repro center operator defines a number of queues which contain all the parameters. There is no need to open ReproDesk Remote, the user simply drops a file into the queue.

About print settings

Printing with Océ Repro Desk involves two different kinds of print settings:

- Printer independent settings (These are job settings. They are usually set by the remote client).
- Printer dependent settings (These settings apply to the entire job. They are usually set by the repro center operator).

Depending on the print method, these settings can be specified manually on Océ Repro Desk Remote or Océ Repro Desk Server, or they can be assigned automatically.

Printer independent settings Printer independent settings are usually specified in the Job window by users of Océ Repro Desk Remote. Different settings can be specified for each drawing in a job (see 'Job settings' on page 103). For detailed printer settings the Imaging Properties window can be used (see 'Imaging properties' on page 151).
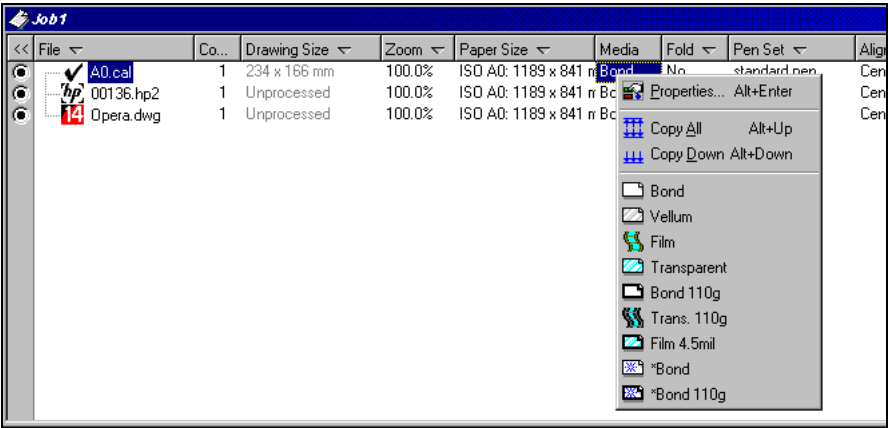
[169] Specify printer independent settings in the Job window

Printer dependent settings Printer dependent settings are usually specified in the Finishing Properties dialog box on Océ Repro Desk Server. These settings apply to all drawings in a job (see 'Printing' on page 215).
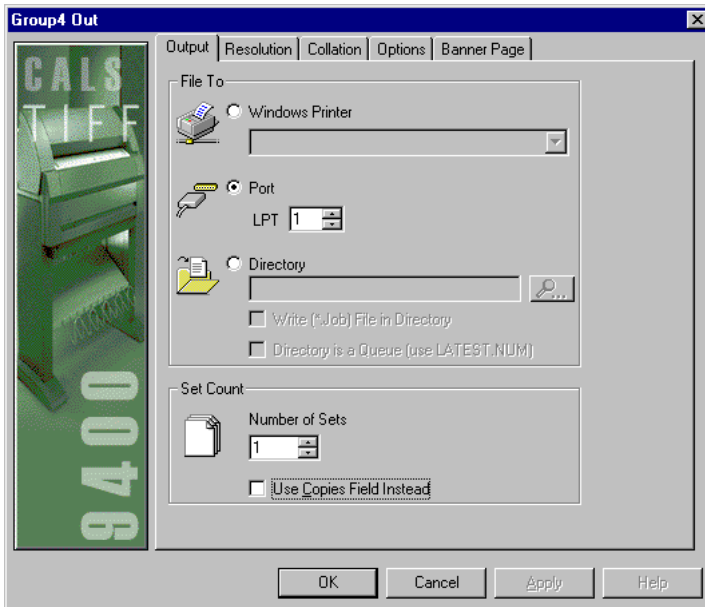
[170] Example of Print window: Océ 9400 Finishing Properties
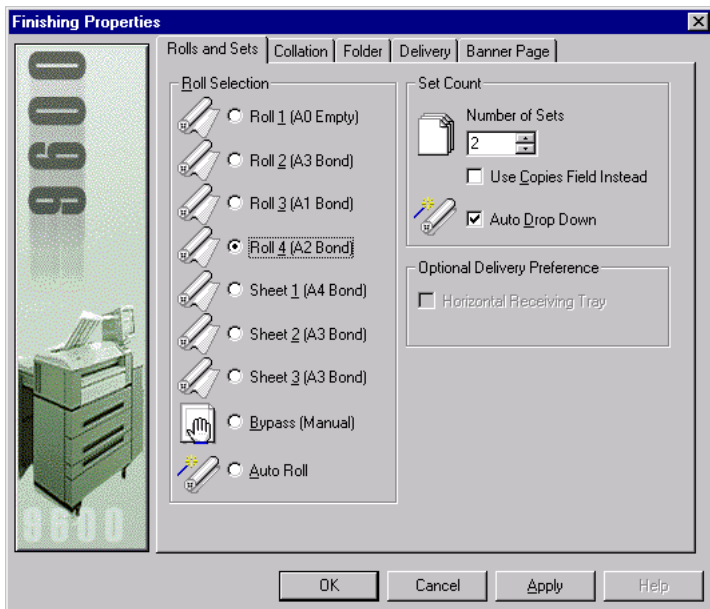
[171] Example of Print window: Océ 9600 Finishing Properties
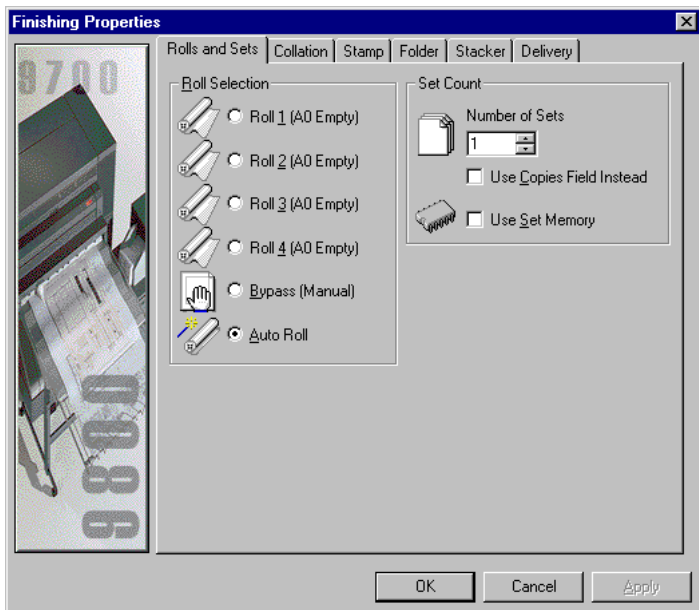
[172] Example of Print window: Océ 9700/9800 Finishing Properties

Océ Repro Desk offers four printing methods, handling the printer independent settings and the printer dependent settings in a different way:

Printing methods

	Printer Independent Settings	Printer Dependent Settings
Standard printing	Manually, usually on Repro Desk Remote	Manually, on Repro Desk Server
Direct printing	Manually, on Repro Desk Remote	Manually, on Repro Desk Remote
Automatic printing	Manually, on Repro Desk Remote	Automatically, specified per queue
Native printing	Automatically, specified per queue	Automatically, specified per queue

Direct printing

Direct printing can only be used if the Repro Desk Remote (LAN) stations and the Repro Desk Server are connected to the same TCP/IP network.

The unattended Repro Desk Print Server needs a broadcasted print queue for each connected printer. A broadcasted print queue is an automatic print queue, that is broadcasted over the TCP/IP network. Incoming jobs are automatically printed on the specified printer.

Each Repro Desk Remote station that is connected to the same TCP/IP network as Repro Desk Server, will receive a message of the broadcasted print queue and automatically add the queue to its print menu.

When you select the queue in the print menu, it will act as if you clicked the Print button on the server. The print window of the printer that is connected to the queue appears, and you can specify printer dependent settings for the current print job.

Automatic printing

Automatic Printing can be used for network and modem connections, between Repro Desk Remote stations and Repro Desk Server.

Network connection The users of Repro Desk Remote can send a print job to an automatic print queue on the server. Each job will be printed on the printer that is connected to the queue, using default printer dependent settings. On the server you can create different automatic print queues, each with its own printer dependent settings.

Modem connection Repro Desk Remote stations that are connected by a modem, can also use an automatic print queue. You can configure Repro Desk Server in such a way that all incoming jobs of a certain Repro Desk Remote station are automatically put in a specified automatic print queue (see 'Users' on page 433).

Note: *Using a modem connection, only **one** automatic print queue at a time can be configured to receive all incoming jobs from a specified Repro Desk Remote station. Changing to another automatic print queue, can only be done at Repro Desk Server.*

To prepare Automatic Printing, you must create an automatic print queue for each printer that is connected to Repro Desk Server.

It is also possible to create multiple automatic print queues, connected to the same printer. This allows you to specify different printer-dependent settings for each queue. By selecting another queue, you can choose which printer-dependent settings will be used.

Native printing

Native drawings can be printed without the need for Repro Desk Remote, and without specifying any print settings. Using a LAN connection, the drawing can simply be copied into a polling queue on Repro Desk Server. The drawing is automatically printed, using the print settings of the selected polling queue.

Polling queue To print native drawings, you need a polling queue on Repro Desk Server. A polling queue is a subdirectory named 'POLL...' (for example, POLLa0_paper), inside an automatic print queue (for example, Q9600).

The printer dependent settings are specified for the entire automatic print queue, whereas the printer independent settings can specified differently for a number of subdirectories. In this way a number of polling queues can be created in the same automatic print queue, each containing different printer independent settings.

To prepare native printing, you must create one or more automatic print queues with different printer dependent settings (for example, Q9600 and Q9400) each containing a number of polling queues with different printer independent settings (for example, POLLa0_paper, POLLa1_paper, POLLa2_paper, POLLa3paper).

Note: *Only the BASIC printer independent settings can be specified for polling queues.*

By copying a native drawing into one of the available polling queues, you can choose what print settings will be used to print the drawing automatically.

To prepare direct, automatic and native printing

▼   **Create a print queue**

1 Start up Repro Desk

2 Select 'Create New Queue' in the 'Queue' quick menu
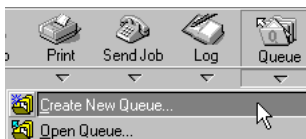
[173] Selecting 'Create New Queue in the 'Queue' quick menu

3 The following window appears:
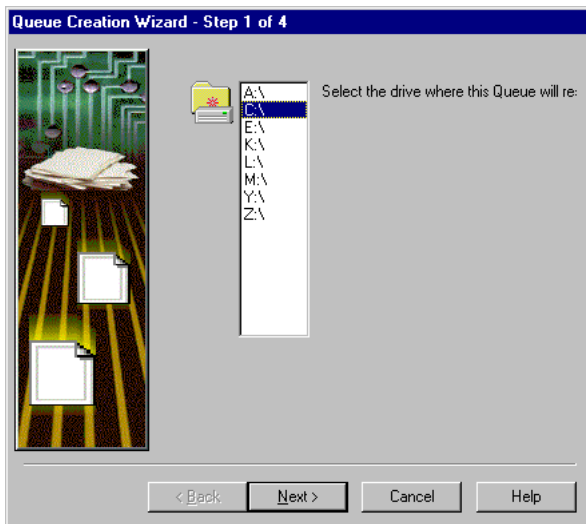
[174] Queue Creation Wizard - Step 1 of 4

4 Select the drive where the new queue will reside, and click 'Next'.
  The following window appears:
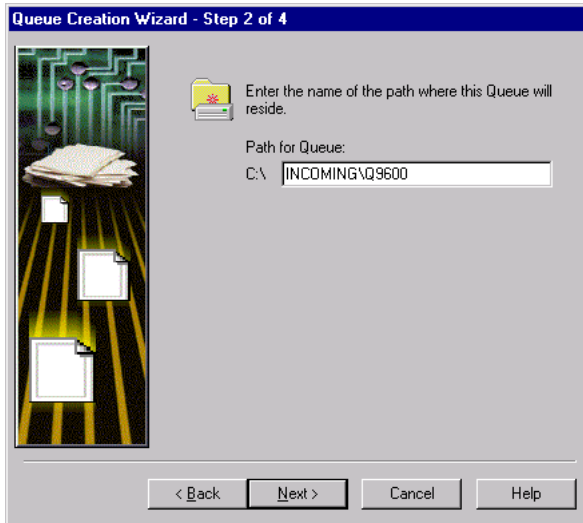
[175] Queue Creation Wizard - Step 2 of 4

5 Delete any text in the text box.
6 Specify the complete path and name of the new queue directory (for example, INCOMING\Q9600), and click 'Next'.

The following window appears:
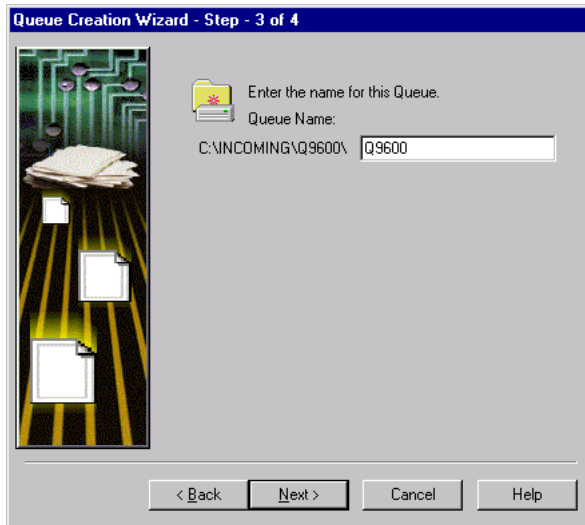
[176] Queue Creation Wizard - Step 3 of 4

7 Delete any text in the text box.
8 Specify only the name of the queue (for example, Q9600).
Note: *It is recommended to use the same name as you specified in the previous screen.*
9 Click 'Next'

The following window appears:
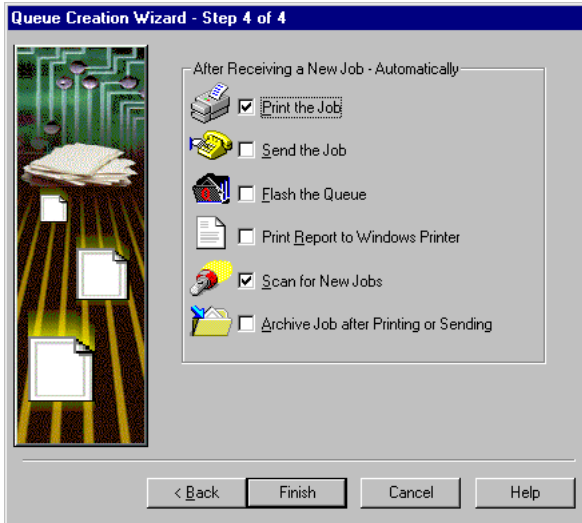
[177] Queue Creation Wizard - Step 4 of 4

10 Select the options 'Print the Job' and 'Automatically Scan for New Jobs'.
11 If required, select 'Archive Job after Printing or Sending'.
12 Deselect all the other options.
   Note: *More information about the queue options can be found in 'Queue options' on page 207.*
13 Click 'Finish'.

The 'Configure Queue' window appears:
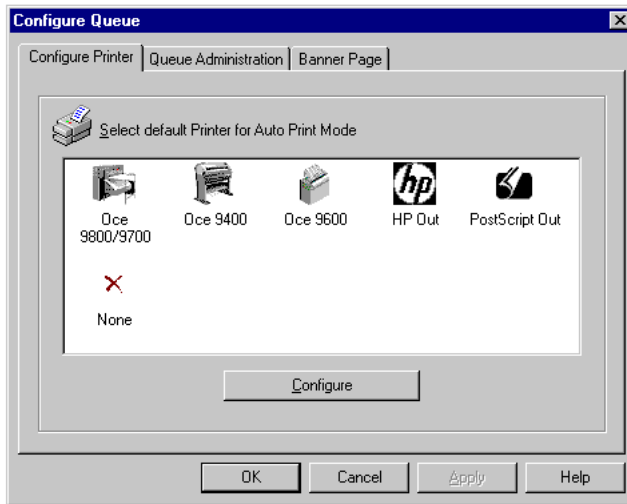
[178] Configure Queue window

▼   **To reach this window from elsewhere in Repro Desk:**

1 Click on the 'Queue' icon.

2 Select the required directory and filename.
For example: Incoming/Incoming.q.

3 Go to the 'Configure' menu.

4 Select 'Queue...'.

To create a polling queue

To use Native printing, an automatic print queue must be opened on Repro Desk Server, containing one or more polling queues. The users can copy native drawings directly into one of the polling queues. All incoming drawings will be printed automatically on the connected printer, using the print settings that are specified for the queue.

Inside an existing automatic print queue, you can create one or more polling queues, each containing different printer-independent settings.

▼   **Create a polling queue**

1 Create an automatic print queue as described on page 307, and make sure this queue is selected (by clicking once on the queue window).

2 Select 'Configure polling queue' in the 'Queue' quick menu.
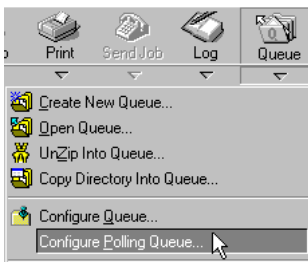
[179] Select 'Configure Polling Queue'

3 The following window appears:
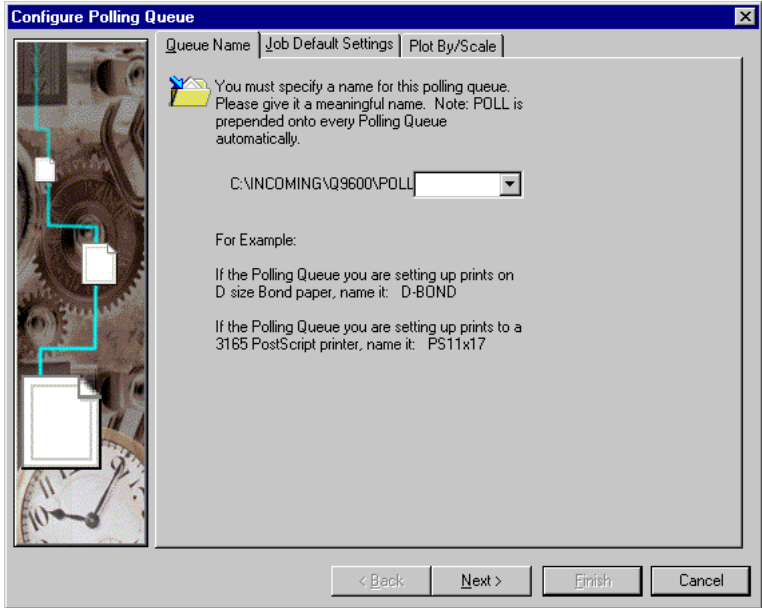
[180] Configure Polling Queue: 'Queue Name' window

4 Specify the name for the polling queue (for example, 'a0_paper').

Note: *The specified name will automatically be preceded by 'POLL'.*

5 Click on the 'Job default settings' tab.

The following window appears:
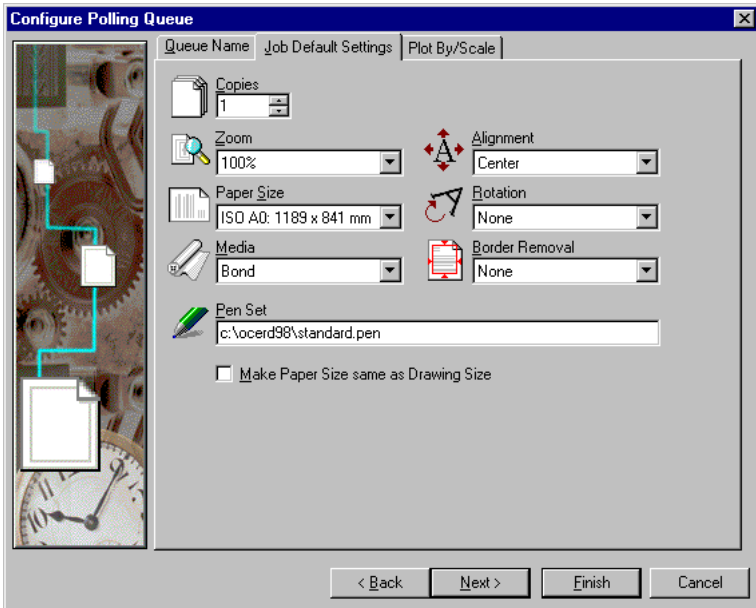
[181] Configuring Polling Queue: 'Job Default Settings' window

6 Specify the printer independent settings for this queue.

7 If you want this queue to print AutoCAD DWG drawings, click on the 'Plot by / Scale' tab.

8 Specify the DWG settings:
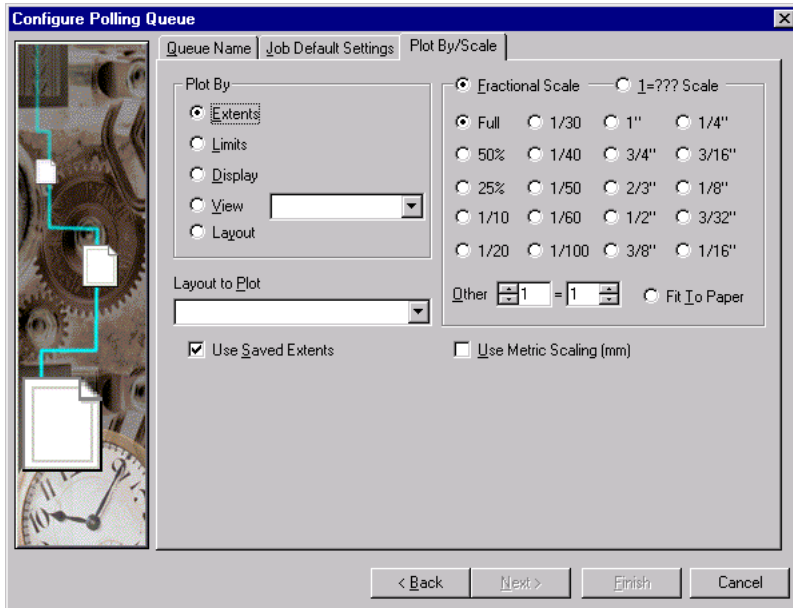
[182] Configuring Polling Queue: 'Plot By/Scale' window

9 Click Finish.

All the settings are added to the polling queue.

Enable/Disable printing at Repro Desk Server

To enable direct printing   To enable automatic printing for users of Repro Desk Remote, you must open an broadcasted queue on Repro Desk Server.

After opening this queue, the name of the server PC followed by the name of the queue, appears in the print menu of all Repro Desk Remote stations that are connected to the same ICP/IP network.

To keep automatic printing enabled, the queue must remain opened (you can minimize the queue window).

When the queue is closed, the option in the print menu of Repro Desk Remote is grayed out, and can no longer be selected.

Note: *If the connected printer of the automatic print queue is an Océ 9600, make sure the corresponding print manager is up and running (see 'Start up the Océ 9600 print manager' on page 256). If the connected printer is an Océ 9700/9800, make sure the according print manager (DRI) is up and running.*

To enable native printing You must open an automatic print queue on Repro Desk Server, containing one or more polling queues.

To keep native printing enabled, the queue must remain opened (you can minimize the queue window).

When the queue is closed, users can still send jobs to the queue. These jobs remain in the queue, and are not printed. When the queue is opened again, all jobs in the queue will be printed automatically.

Note: *If the connected printer is an Océ 9700/9800, make sure the according print manager (DRI) is up and running.*

▼ **To enable printing, by opening a broadcasted or automatic print queue**

1 Click the 'Queue' button in the tool bar.

[183] Queue button

2 The following window appears:
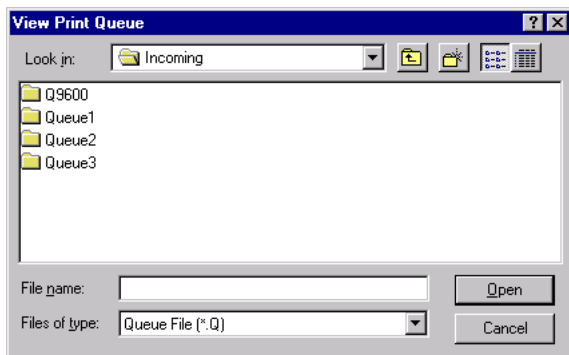
[184] View print queue window

3 Open the directory that contains the broadcast or automatic print queue (for example, INCOMING\Q9600).
Note: *For an automatic print queue, this directory should also contain one or more polling queues (for example, POLL_a0_paper).*
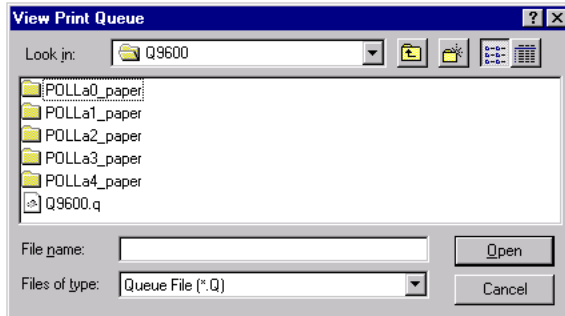
[185] Directory that contains an automatic print queue, and a number of polling queues

4 Select the *.Q file (Q9600.Q), and click 'Open'.
The Queue window appears:
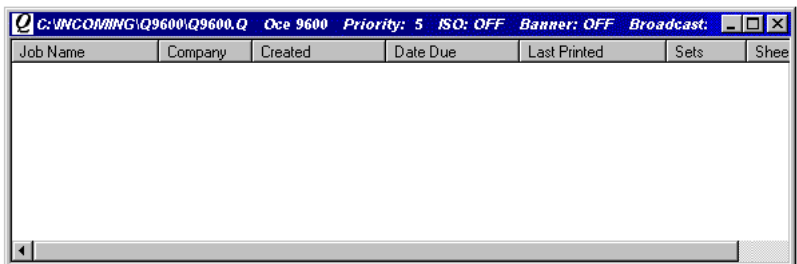
[186] Queue window

5 If required, you can minimize the Queue window, by clicking the ▬ button in the upper right corner of the window, or by selecting Minimize from the window menu.

▼ **To disable printing**

1 Close the queue window of the broadcasted or automatic print queue, by clicking on the ✕ sign at the upper right corner of the window, or by selecting Close from the window menu.

Send to a polling queue

Users can send a native drawing directly to the polling queue on the server. The PC of the user and the Repro Desk Server must be connected to the same local area network (LAN).

▼ **Native printing**

1 Use Window's Explorer (or any other program) to go to the queue directory on Repro Desk Server (for example, C:\INCOMING).
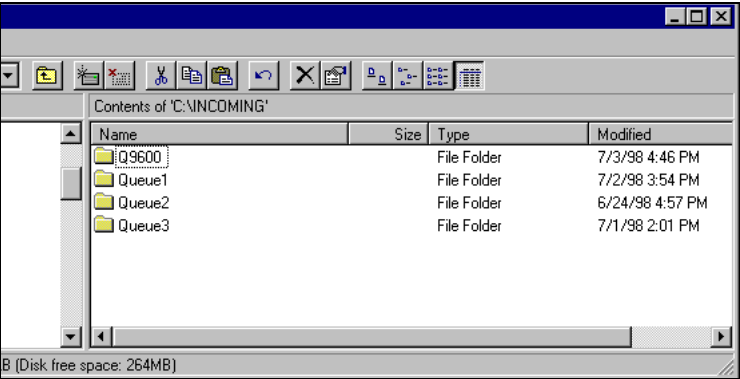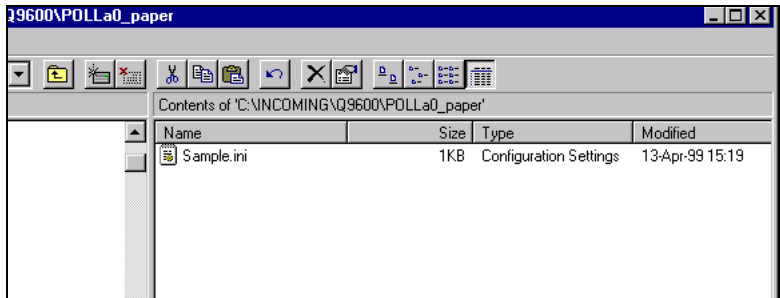

[187] Queue directory 'C:\INCOMING'

2 Open the directory that contains the automatic print queue (for example, INCOMING\Q9600):
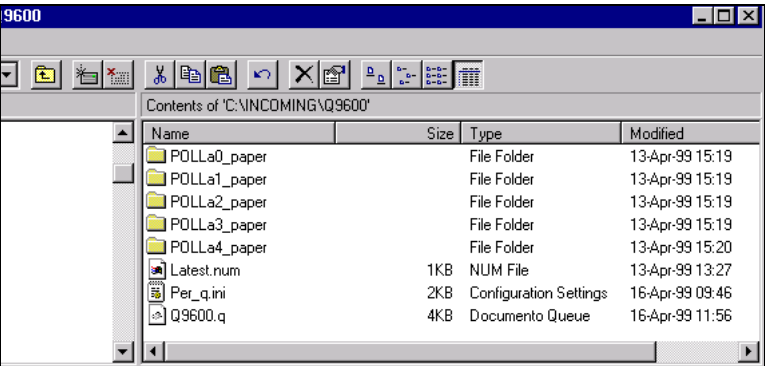
[188] Directory that contains an automatic print queue, and a number of polling queues

3 Open the polling queue directory that contains the required print settings (for example, 'POLLa0_paper'):

[189] Polling Queue directory: 'A0_paper'

4 Copy the native drawing (for example, '00136.hp2') into the polling queue directory:
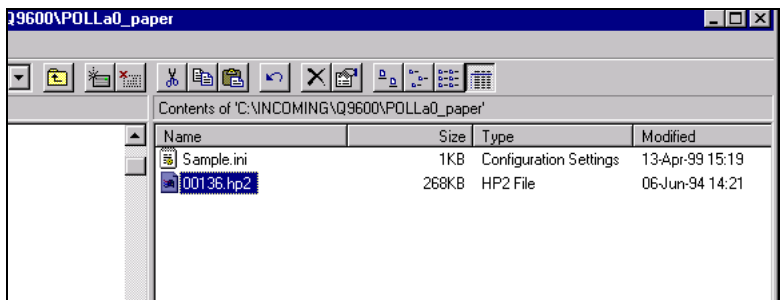
[190] Drawing copied into polling queue

5 The drawing will be printed automatically on the connected printer, using the print settings that are specified for the queue.
Note: *After printing, the drawing will be removed from the polling queue.*
6 Click 'Finish'.

The 'Configure Queue' window appears:
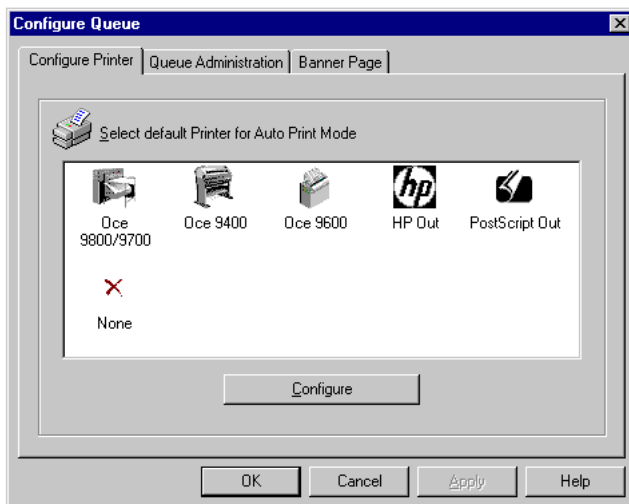
[191] Configure Queue window

7 Specify the required print settings.
8 Click OK.

The Queue window appears:
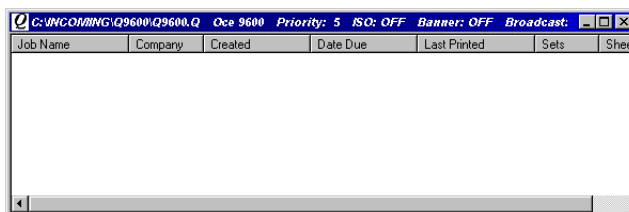
[192] Queue window

# Configure printer for broadcasted print queue

You can select the printer you want to connect to the queue, and specify the default printer dependent settings.

These settings will normally not be used for a broadcasted print queue. When you select a broadcasted print queue in the print menu of another Repro Desk station, you can define the printer dependent settings for the current job. These settings overrule the default settings.

▼   **Configuring the connected printer of a broadcasted print queue**

1 If not already selected, click the 'Configure Printer' tab at the top of the 'Configure Queue' window.

2 The following window appears:
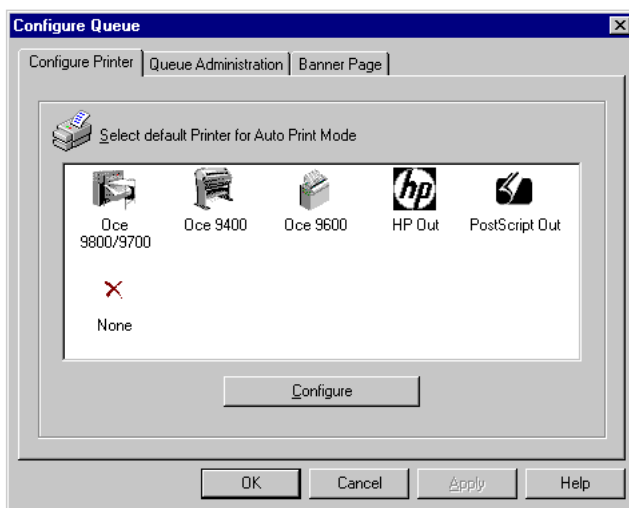
[193] Configure Queue window: Configure Printer

Note: *To reach this window from elsewhere in Repro Desk, see 'To reach this window from elsewhere in Repro Desk:' on page 311.*

3 Select the printer you want to connect to the queue, by clicking it once.

4 Click Configure.

The Finishing Properties window of the selected printer appears.
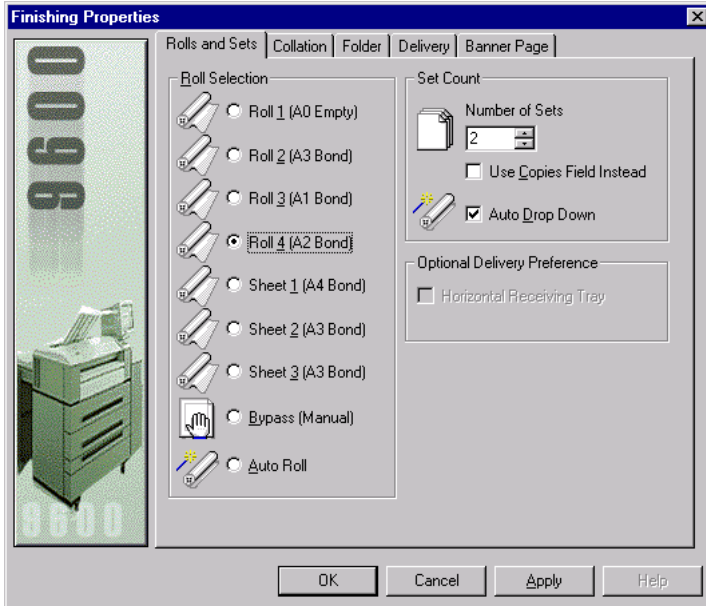
[194] Example: Print window of Océ 9600

5 If required, specify the default print settings.

The following are recommended:

■ Enable 'Autoroll'.

■ Enable 'Use Copies Field Instead'.

■ Disable all items on the 'Collation' tab

■ Folding set to 'No folding'.

This makes sure that the information sent to a queue will be printed as it is defined in the actual job, which prevents some queue settings overruling settings of the sent job, resulting in unexpected output.

Note: *In case of a broadcasted print queue, these default settings will be overruled by the settings that have been specified by the user, after selecting the broadcasted print queue in the print menu.*

6 Click OK

The print window closes.

Queue administration for broadcasted print queue

You can specify if the queue must be a broadcasted queue. That is, if users of other Repro Desk stations are allowed to select this queue in their print menu.

For a broadcasted print queue you can specify:
- passwords.
- the polling frequency for this queue
- the queue priority for printing
- ISO 9000 stamping
- E-mail notification.

Enable broadcasting (Allow remotes to see queue) The queue appears in the print menu of other Repro Desk stations connected to the network. Selecting this queue in the print menu opens the print window of the connected printer, enabling the user to specify print settings for each job. You can specify passwords to protect the usage by other Repro Desk stations.

Broadcasted queue passwords For a broadcasted print queue, you can specify three different passwords. When you specify a password in this window, the user of another Repro Desk Station will be asked for this password when using the broadcasted print queue for the first time in a session.

■ Administer/Configure/Modify
This password allows the user of another Repro Desk station to manipulate the jobs in the queue (for example, change the print order of the jobs). The Administer password automatically includes the other queue privileges: viewing and sending jobs.
■ View jobs in the queue
This password allows the user of another Repro Desk station to view the jobs in the queue. The View password automatically includes the privilege of sending jobs to the queue.
■ Send jobs to the queue
This password allows the user of another Repro Desk station to send a print job to the queue, by selecting the broadcasted print queue in the Print menu.

Polling frequency This is the frequency at which the queue searches the incoming directory to see if any new jobs have arrived.

Queue priority If two queues want to print on the same printer at the same time, you can specify which queue comes first.

Enable E-Mail notification Select this check box if you want the queue to notify the queue administrator by e-mail about activity in the queue.

Note: *You must have MAPI-compliant e-mail software installed and functioning on the server machine. It is recommended that you test the e-mail software before using the Repro Desk e-mail notification function.*
■ E-mail address
The address of the queue administrator.
■ New jobs in queue
Select this check box if you want the queue to notify the queue administrator by e-mail each time the queue detects a new job.

■ Queue error

Select this check box if you want the queue to notify the queue administrator by e-mail when a printing error occurs on a job in an autoprint queue.

ISO 9000 stamping You can specify a stamp to be printed on all drawings. For more information about creating a stamp, see 'Define Stamps and Overlays' on page 177.

▼ **Specifying queue administration for a broadcasted print queue**

1 Go to the 'Queue' quick menu.
2 Select 'Configure queue'.
3 Click the 'Queue Administration' tab at the top of the 'Configure Queue' window.

The following window appears:
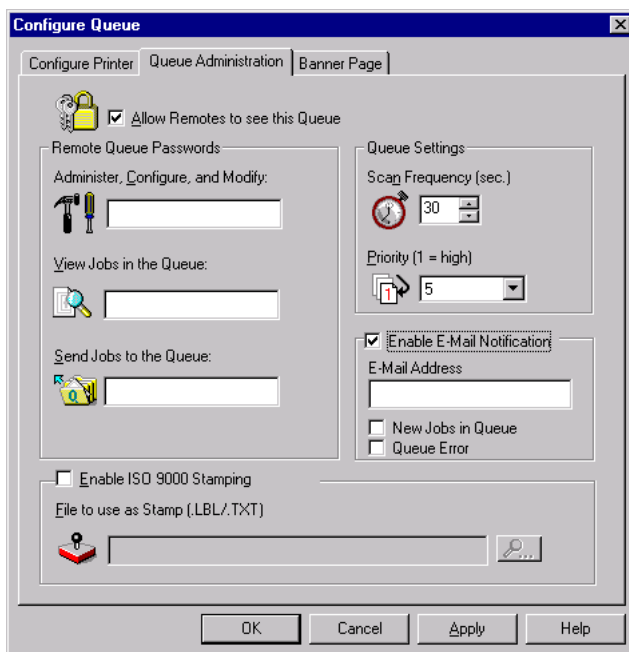
[195] Configure Queue window: Queue Administration

Note: *To reach this window from elsewhere in Repro Desk, see 'To reach this window from elsewhere in Repro Desk:' on page 311.*

4 Select 'Allow remotes to see this queue'.
5 If required, specify one or more passwords.

6 If required, change the queue timer frequency. The default setting is 30 seconds.

7 If required, specify the queue priority.

8 If required, select 'Enable E-mail notification'.

9 If required, select 'Enable ISO 9000 stamping'

10 Use the 🔎... browse button to select the stamp you want to use.

11 Click 'Apply'.

Queue administration for automatic print queue

For an automatic print queue, you must disable the 'Allow remotes to see this Queue' option.

Disable broadcasting (Remotes not allowed to see queue) The queue will *not* appear in the print menu of other Repro Desk stations connected to the network. Users of other Repro Desk stations can send a print job to the queue, using 'Send job' quick menu. In that case the default print settings of the queue will be used. It is not possible to specify passwords for an automatic queue.

▼ **Specifying queue administration for an automatic print queue**

1 Click the 'Queue administration' tab at the top of the 'Configure queue' window.
The following window will appear:
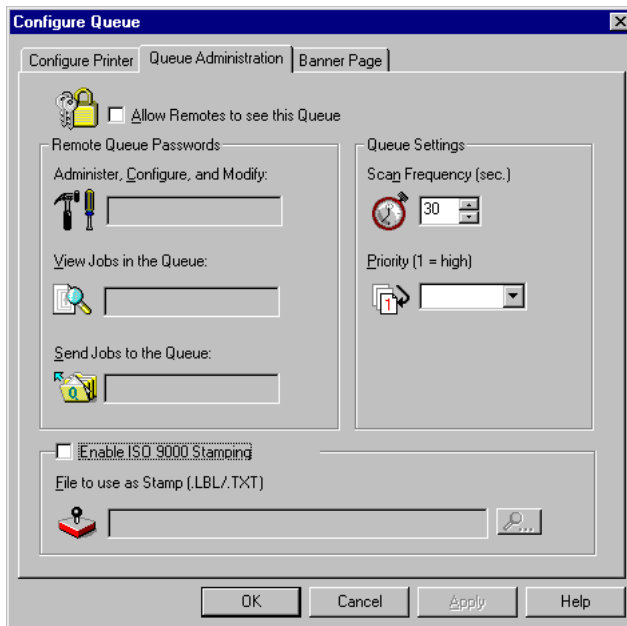
[196] Configure Queue window: Queue Administration

2 Deselect 'Allow remotes to see this queue'.

3 If required, change the queue scan frequency', specify the queue priority and enable ISO 9000 stamping.

**4** Use the 🔍 button to select the stamp you want to use.

5 Click 'Apply'.

Banner page for broadcasted print queue

You can specify to print a banner page automatically for each job or set. You can use any ASCII file or stamp (*.LBL) as banner page. If you use a stamp file, you can include variables like 'job name' or 'date & time' (see 'Electronic stamps' on page 178).

▼ **Specifying banner page**

1 Click the 'Banner Page' tab at the top of the 'Configure Queue' window.

2 The following window appears:
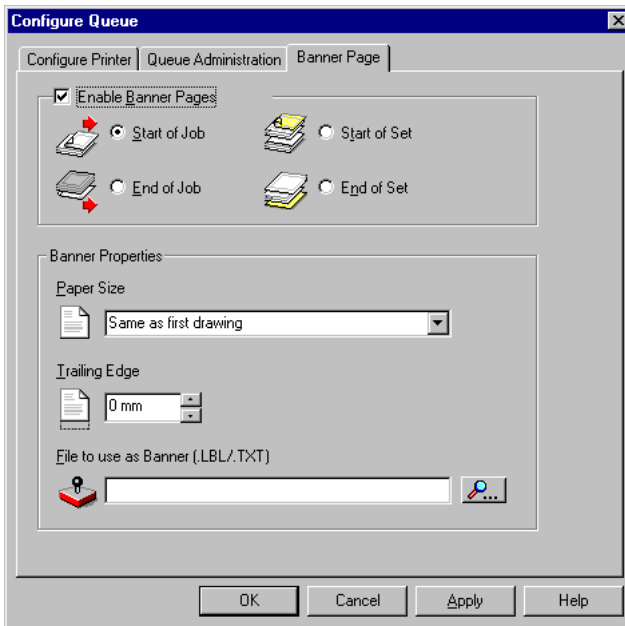
[197] Configure Queue window: Banner Page

3 Select when you want to print a banner page: at the start/end of a job or at the start/end of a set.

4 Select the paper size for the banner page.
You can select one of the available standard sizes, or 'Same as first drawing' (the same size as the first drawing of the job or set).

5 If required, you can specify a trailing edge for the banner page.

6 Use the 🔎 browse button to select the file you want to use as banner page.
You can select any ASCII (*.ASC) file or electronic stamp (*.LBL) file.

7 Click 'Apply'.

Automatic printing from Repro Desk Remote

Automatic printing can be used for network and modem connections, between Repro Desk Remote stations and Repro Desk Server.

Network connection Repro Desk Remote users can send a print job directly to the automatic print queue on the server. The Repro Desk Remote Station and the Repro Desk Server must be connected to the same local area network (LAN).

▼ **Automatic printing from Repro Desk Remote via network connection**

1 Open the job you want to print.
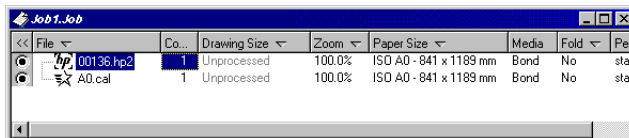
[198] Job Window

2 If required, you can change the file settings in the Job window (see chapter 9, 'Imaging properties' on page 151).

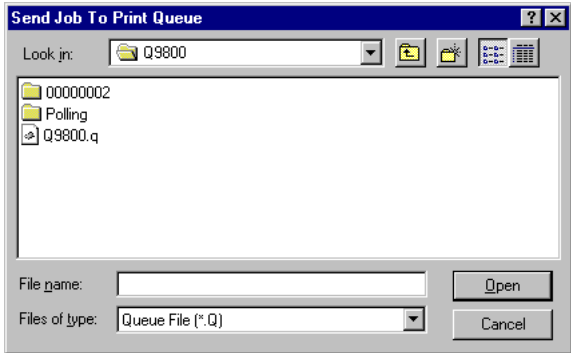**3** From the 'Send Job' quick menu, select 'To Network queue'.

[199] Selecting 'To Network Queue'

4 The 'Send Job to Print Queue' window appears:
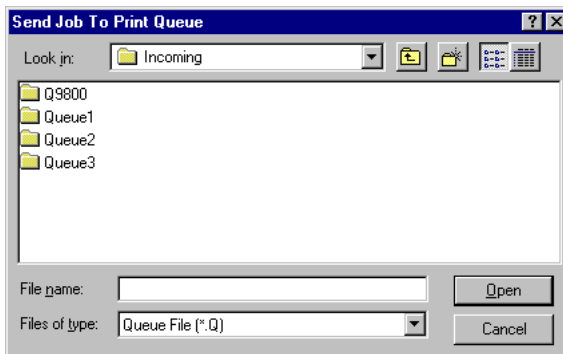
[200] 'Send Job To Print Queue' window

5 Open the directory on Repro Desk Server that contains the automatic print queue (for example, INCOMING\Q9800).

[201] Directory that contains a queue

6 Select the *.Q file (Q9800.Q).
7 Click 'Open'.
The print job will be sent to the automatic print queue. If this queue is opened on Repro Desk Server, the job will automatically be printed on the connected printer, using the default printer dependent settings, as specified for the automatic print queue.
Modem connection Repro Desk Remote stations that are connected by a modem, can also use an automatic print queue. Repro Desk Server can be configured in such a way that all incoming jobs of a certain Repro Desk Remote station are automatically put in a specified automatic print queue (see).

Note: *Using a modem connection, only **one** automatic print queue at a time can be configured to receive all incoming jobs from a specified Repro Desk Remote station. Changing to another automatic print queue, can only be done at Repro Desk Server.*

▼   **Automatic printing from Repro Desk Remote via modem connection**
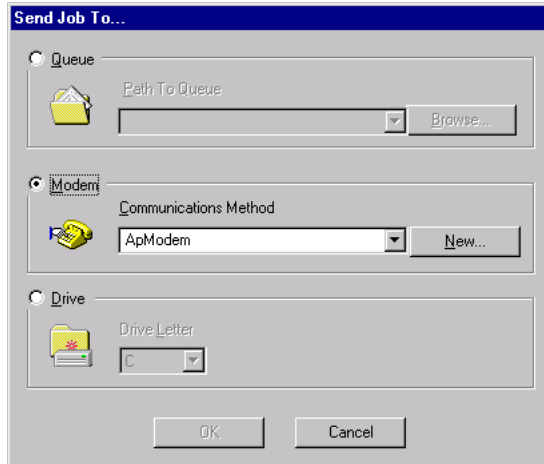
1 Open the job you want to print.
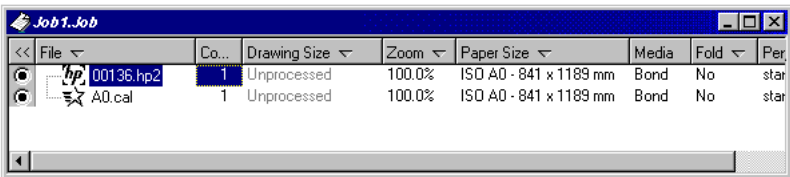
[202] Job window

2 If required, you can change the file settings in the job window (see 'Imaging properties' on page 151).

3 Click the 'Send Job' button.

[203] Send Job button

The 'Send Job To...' dialog box appears.

[204] Send job to Modem window

4 Select the 'Modem' radio button.

5 Choose your modem from the 'Communications Method' list.

6 Click OK.

The work order appears.

[205] Send job to ApModem work order

7 Type information in the work order as required.

8 Click the 'Submit' button.

The order receipt appears.

9 Click 'Close' or 'Print'.

The print job will be sent by modem to Repro Desk Server.

If configured correctly, all incoming jobs from a particular Repro Desk Remote station will be put in an automatic print queue. If this queue is opened on Repro Desk Server, the job will automatically be printed on the connected printer, using the default printer dependent settings, as specified for the automatic print queue.

Using direct printing

To use direct printing, a broadcasted print queue must be opened on Repro Desk Server. The users of Repro Desk Remote can select this queue in the print menu, to print a job directly on the configured printer. For each job, they can specify the printer dependent settings themselves. The printer is connected to Repro Desk Server, and must be specified as default printer for the broadcasted print queue.

Enable/Disable direct printing at Repro Desk Server

To enable direct printing for users of Repro Desk Remote, you must open a broadcasted print queue on Repro Desk Server. After opening this queue, the name of the server PC followed by the name of the queue, appears in the print menu of all Repro Desk Remote stations, that are connected to the same ICP/IP network.

To keep direct printing enabled, the queue must remain opened (you can minimize the queue window).

When the queue is closed, the option in the print menu of Repro Desk Remote is grayed out, and can no longer be selected.

Note: *If the connected printer of the broadcasted print queue is an Océ 9600, make sure the corresponding print manager is up and running (see 'Start up the Océ 9600 print manager' on page 256) If the connected printer is an Océ 9700/9800, make sure the according print manager (DRI) is up and running.*
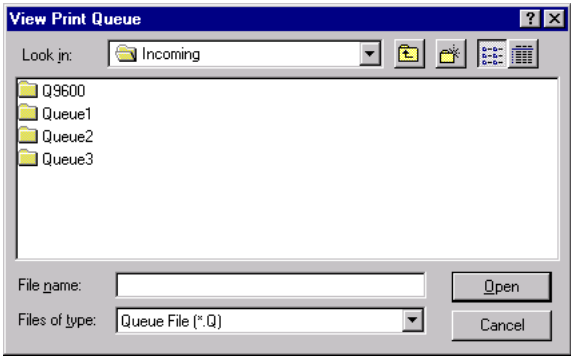
Note: .

▼   **Enable direct printing, by opening a broadcasted print queue**

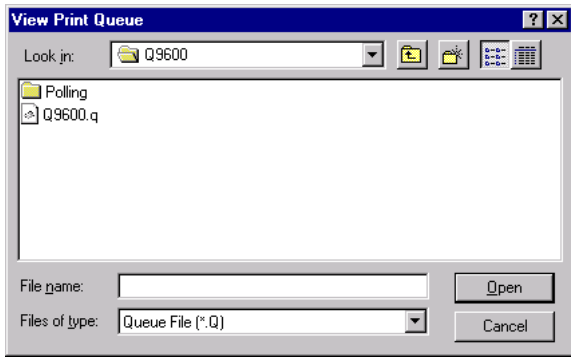 **1** Click the 'Queue' button in the tool bar.

[206] Queue button

2 The following window appears:

[207] View Print Queue window

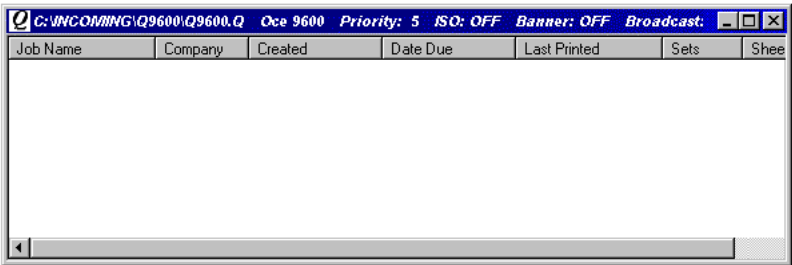**3** Open the directory that contains the broadcasted print queue (for example, INCOMING\Q9600).

[208] Directory that contains a queue

4 Select the *.Q file (Q9600.Q).
5 Click 'Open'.
The Queue window appears:

[209] Queue window

6 If required, you can minimize the Queue window, by clicking the ▪ button in the upper right corner of the window, or by selecting Minimize in the window menu.

▼ **Disabling direct printing**

1 Close the queue window of the broadcasted print queue, by clicking on the ☒ sign at the upper right corner of the window, or by selecting Close in the window menu.

Direct printing from Repro Desk Remote

When a broadcasted print queue is opened on Repro Desk Server, the name of the server followed by the name of the queue appears in the print menu of each Repro Desk Remote, connected to the same TCP/IP network.

The users of Repro Desk Remote can select this queue in the print menu, to print a job directly on the configured printer.

▼ **Direct Printing from Repro Desk Remote**

1 Open a job window, containing the job you want to print.

‹‹	File ▽	Co...	Drawing Size ▽	Zoom ▽	Paper Size ▽	Media	Fold ▽	Per
◉	*hp* 00136.hp2	1	Unprocessed	100.0%	ISO A0 - 841 x 1189 mm	Bond	No	star
◉	⤬ A0.cal	1	Unprocessed	100.0%	ISO A0 - 841 x 1189 mm	Bond	No	star
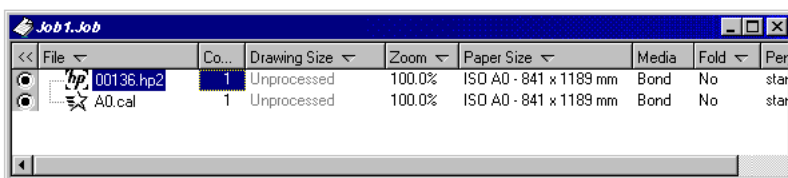
[210] Job Window

2 If required, you can change the file settings in the Job window (see 'Imaging properties' on page 151).
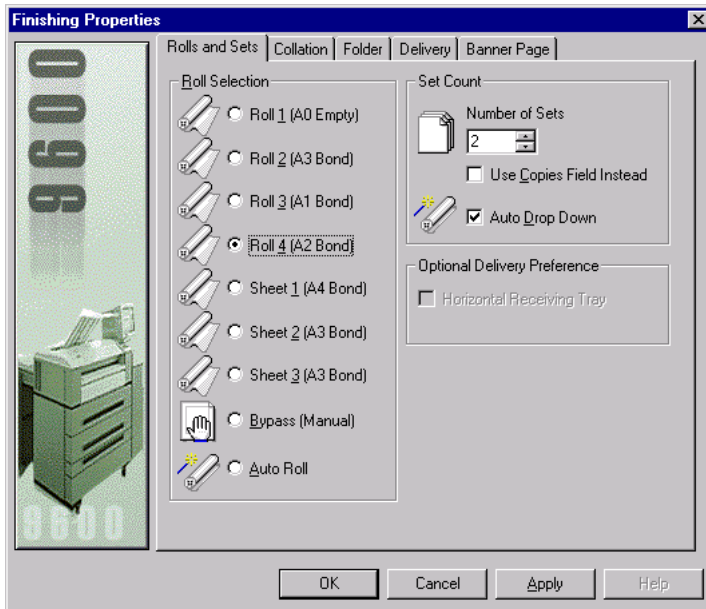
3 From the 'Print' quick menu, select the broadcasted print queue.

[211] Selecting a broadcasted print queue in the 'Print' quick menu

4 The print window appears.
The appearance of this window may differ, according to the type of printer that is connected to the broadcasted print queue.

[212] Example: Océ 9600 print window

5 Specify the required print settings in the print window (see 'Printing' on page 215).
6 Click OK.
The job is sent to the connected printer.

Chapter 20
Multiple machine support

océ

Introduction

Océ Repro Desk supports the installation of multiple Océ 9400, HPGL-2/RTL or PostScript printers (Océ 3165), attached to **one** Repro Desk Server.

If you want to install multiple Océ 9600, 9700, 9800 machines, each machine must be connected to its own Repro Desk Server (the Océ 9600 uses the Océ 9600 Repro Desk Server). You can use one of the Repro Desk Servers to receive jobs and to print on all installed printers.

**Océ 9800
Repro Desk Server
(unattended)**

**Océ 9600
Repro Desk Server
with modem connection
(main server)**

**Océ 9600
Repro Desk Server
(unattended)**
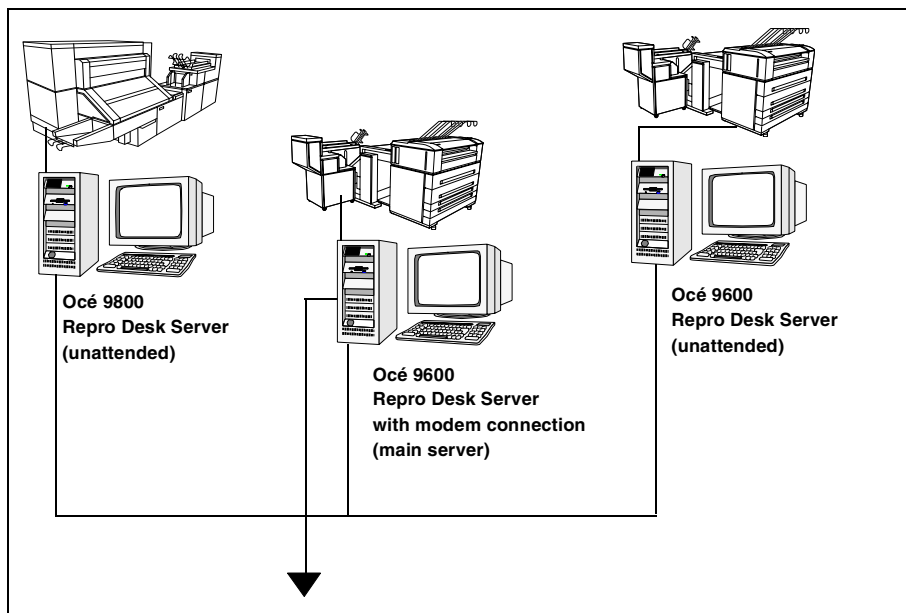
[213] Example of multiple machine support

All Repro Desk Servers must be connected to each other, using a TCP/IP network.

Printer dependent settings When you have received a job, you can print it on the local connected printer, or on one of the remote connected machines. For each printer you can specify printer dependent settings, related to the printer type and the installed options (for example, folder).

When you connect a Repro Desk Remote (LAN) to the TCP/IP network, you can also print directly to one of the installed printers, specifying the printer dependent settings or using default print settings.

Broadcasted Print Queue The unattended Repro Desk Print Servers need a broadcasted print queue. A broadcasted print queue is an automatic print queue, that is broadcasted over the TCP/IP network. Incoming jobs are automatically printed on the specified printer.

Each Repro Desk station that is connected to the same TCP/IP network, will receive a message of the broadcasted print queue, and automatically add the queue to its print menu.

When you select the queue in the print menu, it will act the same way as a local attached printer. The print window of the printer that is connected to the queue will appear, and you can specify your printer dependent settings.

Control center

Another way to look at multiple machine support is shown in the illustration below.

1 The customer prepares jobs on the Repro Desk Remote.
2 The files are transferred to the Job Printer site via LAN, FTP, modem, etc.
3 The Job Printer has a PC with Repro Desk Remote installed.
   This PC asks at a hub.
4 Using a broadcasted queue the jobs can be sent from the hub to the printers.
5 For example, Océ 9800 with PC running Repro Desk 9800 Server.
6 For example, Océ 9600 with PC running Repro Desk 9600 Server.
7 HP-GL/2 files can be can be sent to an inkjet printer.
8 Such as the Océ 5200.
9 PostScript files can be sent to a PostScript printer.
10 Such as the Océ 3165 or a laser printer.
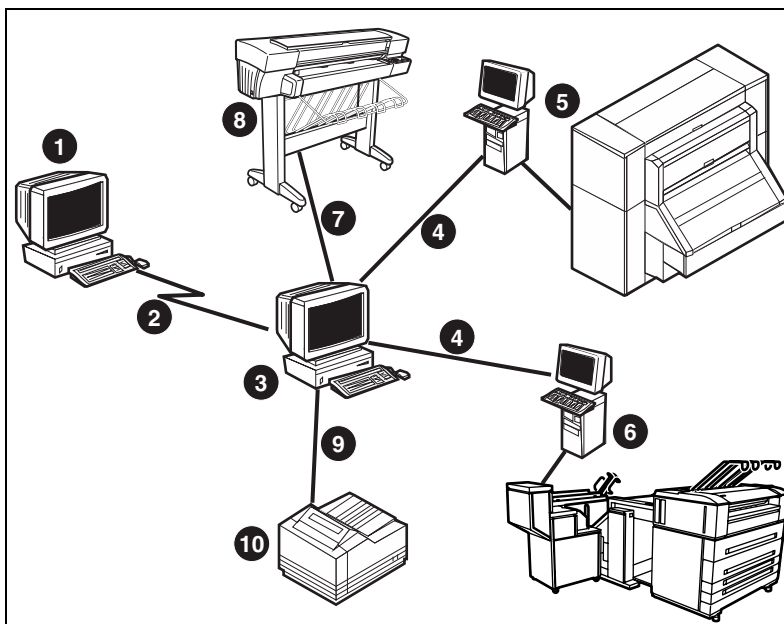
[214] Multiple machine support

Prepare multiple machine support

Make sure that all Repro Desk Servers are connected to the same TCP/IP network.

To prepare Multiple Machine Support, you must create a broadcasted print queue on each unattended Repro Desk Server.

▼ **Create a broadcasted print queue**

1 Start up Repro Desk
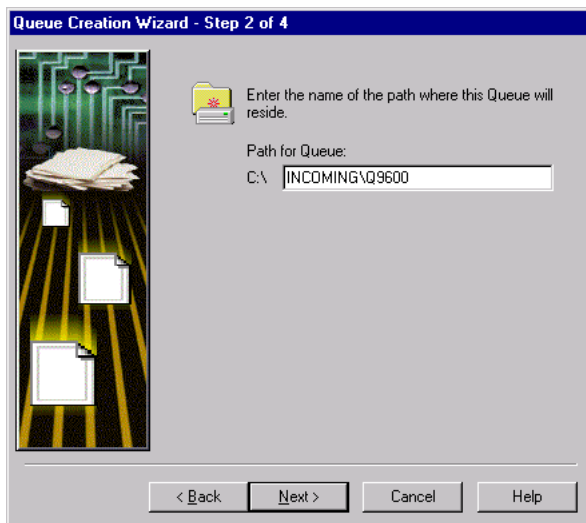
2 Select 'Create New Queue' in the 'Queue' Quick menu
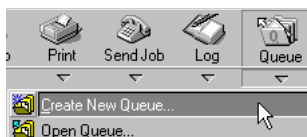
[215] Selecting 'Create New Queue in the 'Queue' Quick menu
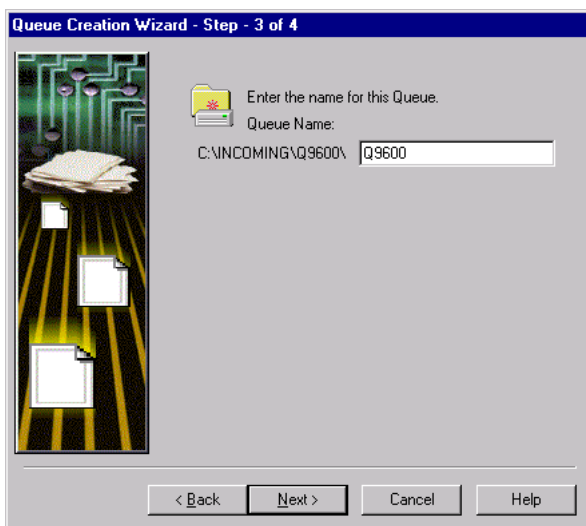
3 The following window will appear:
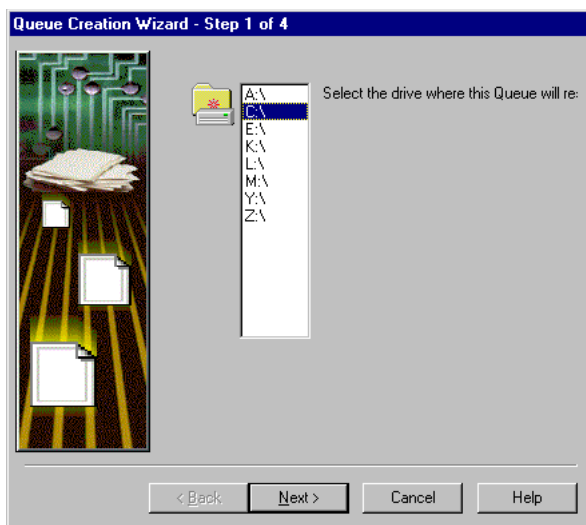
[216] Queue Creation Wizard - Step 1 of 4

4 Select the drive where the new queue will reside, and click 'Next'.
The following window will appear:

[217] Queue Creation Wizard - Step 2 of 4

5 Delete whatever is already filled in, specify the complete path and name of the new queue directory (for example, INCOMING\Q9600), and click 'Next'.
The following window will appear:

[218] Queue Creation Wizard - Step 3 of 4

6 Delete whatever is filled in, and specify only the name of the queue (for example, Q9600).
Note: *It is recommended to use the same name as you specified in the previous screen.*

7 Click 'Next'
The following window will appear:

[219] Queue Creation Wizard - Step 4 of 4

8 Select the options 'Print the Job' and 'Scan for New Jobs'.
If required, select 'Archive Job after Printing or Sending'.
Deselect all the other options.
Note: *More information about the queue options can be found in 'Queue options' on page 207.*

9 Click 'Finish'.

The 'Configure Queue' window will appear:
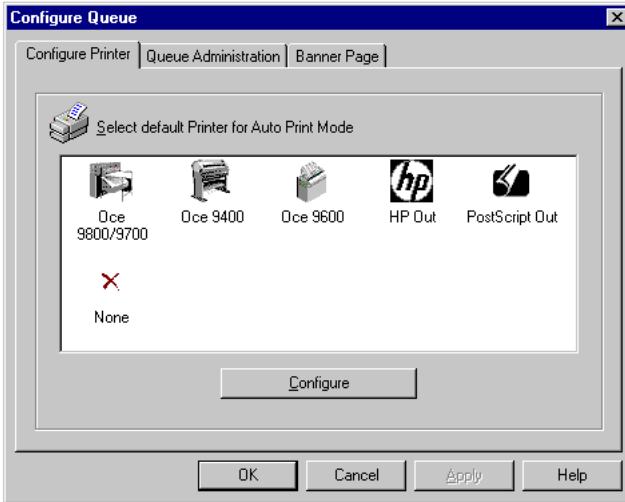
[220] Configure Queue window

10 Specify the required queue settings in the Configure Queue window.
For more information, see sections below.

11 Click OK.

Configure printer for broadcasted print queue

You can select the printer you want to connect to the queue, and specify the default printer dependent settings.

These settings will normally *not* be used for a broadcasted print queue. When you select a broadcasted print queue in the print menu of another Repro Desk station, you can define the printer dependent settings for the current job. These settings will overrule the default settings.

▼ **Configure the connected printer of a broadcasted print queue**

1 If not already selected, click the 'Configure Printer' tab at the top of the 'Configure Queue' window.
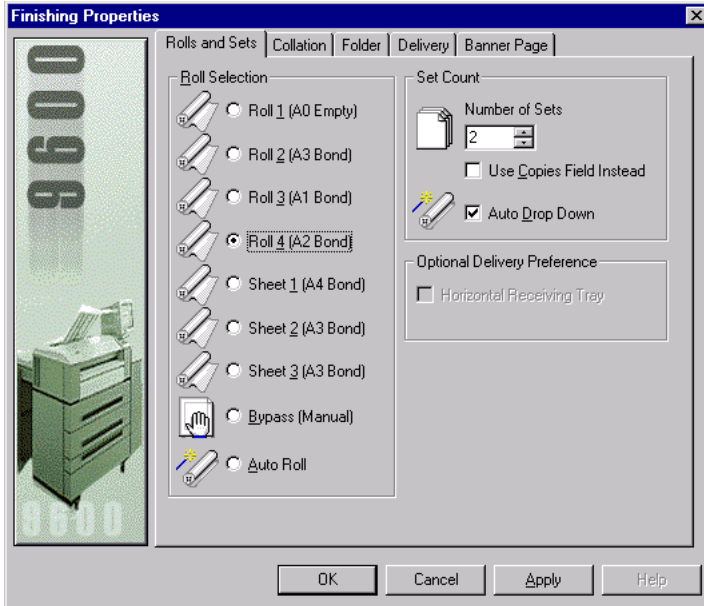
2 The following window will appear:
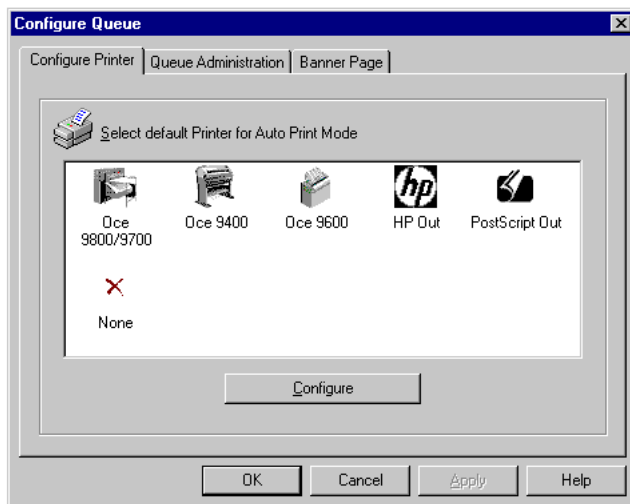
[221] Configure Queue window: Configure Printer

3 Select the printer you want to connect to the queue, by clicking it once.

4 Click Configure.

The print window of the selected printer will appear.

[222] Example: Print window of Océ 9600

5 If required, specify the default print settings.

The following are recommended:

- Enable 'Autoroll'.
- Enable 'Use Copies Field Instead'.
- Disable all items on the 'Collation' tab
- Folding set to 'No folding'.

Note: *In case of a broadcasted print queue, these default settings will be overruled by the settings that have been specified by the user, after selecting the broadcasted print queue in the print menu.*

6 Click OK

The print window will disappear.

Queue administration for broadcasted print queue

You can specify if the queue must be a broadcasted queue. That is, if users of other Repro Desk stations are allowed to select this queue in their print menu. For a broadcasted print queue you can specify passwords. You can specify the

Polling Frequency for this queue, and the queue priority for printing. Furthermore you can specify ISO 9000 Stamping.

Enable Broadcasting (Allow Remotes to see Queue) The queue will appear in the print menu of other Repro Desk stations connected to the network. Selecting this queue in the print menu will open the print window of the connected printer, enabling the user to specify print settings for each job. You can specify passwords to protect the usage by other Repro Desk stations.

Broadcasted Queue Passwords For a broadcasted print queue, you can specify three different passwords. When you specify a password in this window, the user of another Repro Desk Station will be asked for this password when using the broadcasted print queue for the first time in a session.

- Administer/Configure/Modify
  This password allows the user of another Repro Desk station to manipulate the jobs in the queue (for example, change the print order of the jobs). The queue settings can only be changed on the Repro Desk station where the queue resides. The Administer password automatically includes the other queue privileges: viewing and sending jobs.
- View Jobs in the Queue
  This password allows the user of another Repro Desk station to view the jobs in the queue. The View password automatically includes the privilege of sending jobs to the queue.
- Send Jobs to the Queue
  This password allows the user of another Repro Desk station to send a print job to the queue, by selecting the broadcasted print queue in the Print menu.

Polling Frequency This is the frequency at which the queue searches the incoming directory to see if any new Jobs have arrived.

Queue Priority If two queues want to print on the same printer at the same time, you can specify which queue will come first.

ISO 9000 Stamping You can specify a stamp to be printed on all drawings. You can select the stamp and the pen set, and you can specify the location on the drawing. For more information about creating a stamp, see 'Define Stamps and Overlays' on page 177.

▼ **Specify Queue Administration for a broadcasted print queue**

1 Click the 'Queue Administration' tab at the top of the 'Configure Queue' window.

2 The following window will appear:
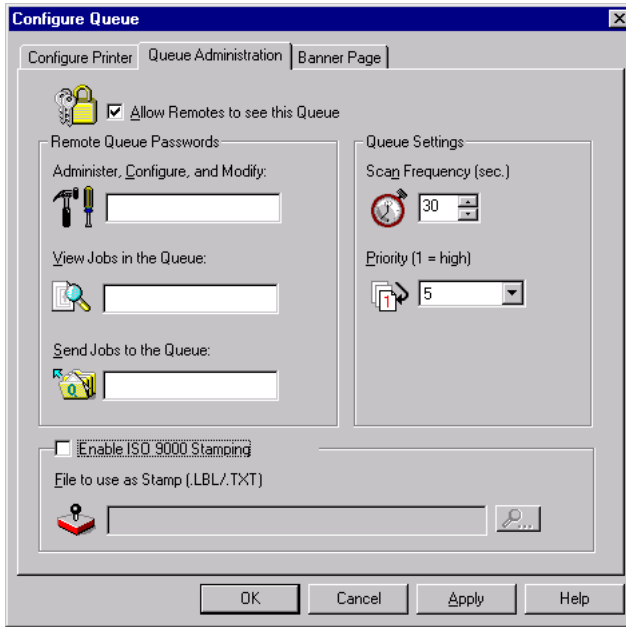
[223] Configure Queue window: Queue Administration

3 Select 'Allow Remotes to see this Queue'.

4 If required, specify one or more passwords.

5 If required, change the Queue Timer Frequency. The default setting is 30 seconds.

6 If required, specify the Queue Priority.

7 If required, select 'Enable ISO 9000 Stamping'
Use the 🔎 button to select the stamp you want to use.

8 Click Apply.

Banner page for broadcasted print queue

You can specify to print a banner page automatically for each job or set. You can use any ASCII file or stamp (*.LBL) as banner page. If you use a stamp file, you can include variables like 'job name' or 'date & time' (see 'Define Stamps and Overlays' on page 177).

▼ **Specify Banner Page**

1 Click the 'Banner Page' tab at the top of the 'Configure Queue' window.
2 The following window will appear:
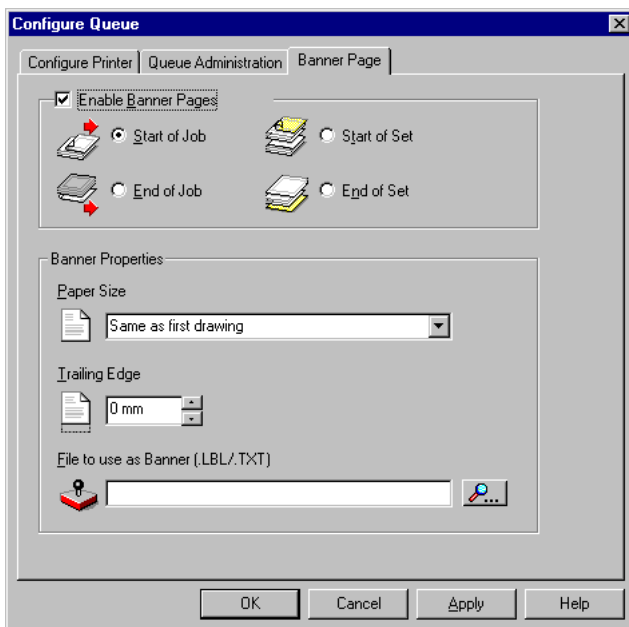
[224] Configure Queue window: Banner Page

Note: *To reach this window from elsewhere in Repro Desk, see 'To reach this window from elsewhere in Repro Desk:' on page 311.*

3 Select when you want to print a banner page: at the start/end of a job or at the start/end of a set.
4 Select the paper size for the banner page.
You can select one of the available standard sizes, or 'Same as first drawing' (the same size as the first drawing of the job or set).
5 If required, you can specify a trailing edge for the banner page.

6 Use the 🔍... button to select the file you want to use as banner page. You can select any ASCII (*.ASC) file or electronic stamp (*.LBL) file.

7 Click Apply.

Using multiple machine support

To use Multiple Machine Support, a broadcasted print queue must be opened on each unattended Repro Desk Server. On the main Repro Desk Server you can select these queues in the print menu, to print a job directly on the configured printer. For each job, you can specify the printer dependent settings, the same way as if you print on a local attached printer.

Enable/Disable printing at unattended Repro Desk Server

To enable printing from the main Repro Desk Server, you must open a broadcasted print queue on each unattended Repro Desk Server. After opening this queue, the name of the unattended server (PC name), followed by the name of the queue, will appear in the print menu of the main Repro Desk Server.

To keep printing enabled, the queue must remain opened (you can minimize the queue window).

When the queue is closed, the option in the print menu of the main Repro Desk Server will be grayed out, and can no longer be selected.

Note: *If the connected printer of the broadcasted print queue is an Océ 9600/9700/9800, make sure the corresponding print manager is up and running (see 'Start up the Océ 9600 print manager' on page 256).*

▼   **Enable printing, by opening a broadcasted print queue**

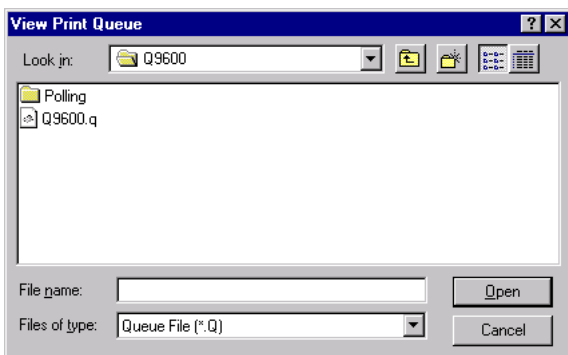1 Click the 'Queue' button in the Tool bar.

[225] Queue button

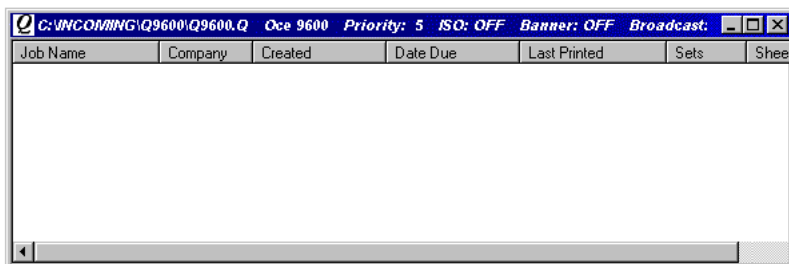**2** The following window will appear:
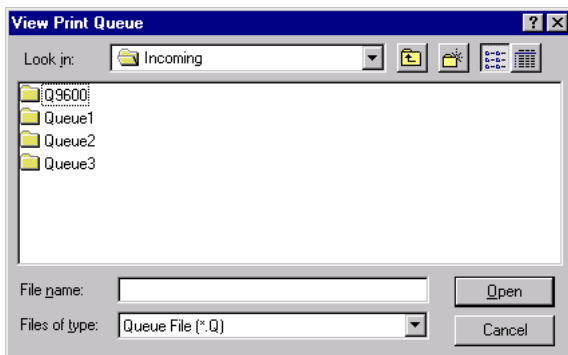
[226] View Print Queue window

3 Open the directory that contains the broadcasted print queue (for example, INCOMING\Q9600).

[227] Directory that contains a queue

4 Select the *.Q file (Q9600.Q), and click open.
The Queue window will appear:

[228] Queue window

5 If required, you can minimize the Queue window, by clicking the ▬ button in the upper right corner of the window, or by selecting Minimize in the window menu.

▼ **Disabling Direct Printing**

1 Close the queue window of the Broadcasted Print Queue, by clicking on the ✕ sign at the upper right corner of the window, or by selecting Close in the window menu.

Print from the main Repro Desk Server

When a Broadcasted Print Queue is opened on each unattended Repro Desk Server, the name of the unattended server (PC name), followed by the name of the queue, will appear in the print menu of all other Repro Desk Servers on the same network.

On the main Repro Desk Server, you can select this queue in the print menu, the same way as you select a local attached printer.

▼ **Print from the main Repro Desk Server**

1 Open a job window, containing the job you want to print.
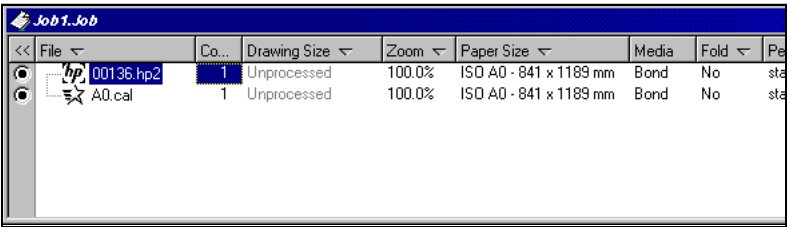

[229] Job Window

2 If required, you can change the file settings in the Job window (see 'Imaging properties' on page 151).

3 Select a local attached printer or a broadcasted print queue, in the 'Print' Quick menu.

[230] Selecting a broadcasted print queue in the 'Print' Quick menu

4 The print window will appear.

The appearance of this window may differ, according to the type of printer that is connected to the broadcasted print queue.
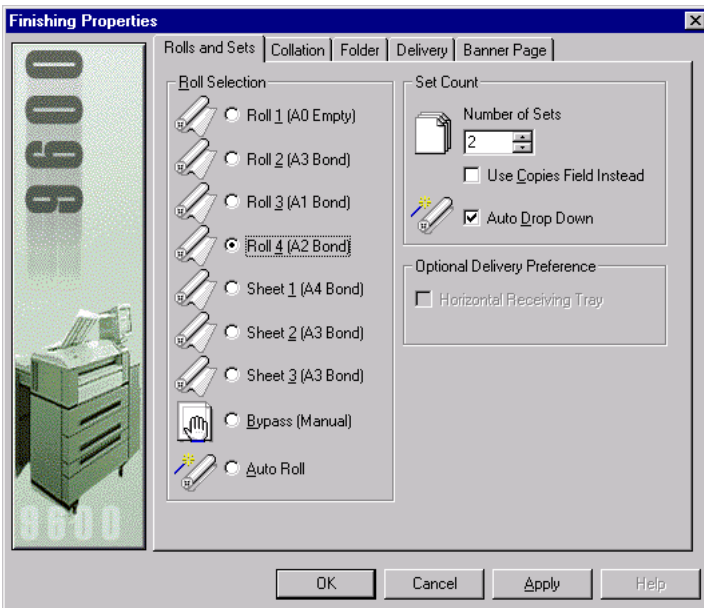
[231] Océ 9600 print window

5 Specify the required print settings in the print window.

The following are recommended:
- Enable 'Autoroll'.
- Enable 'Use Copies Field Instead'.
- Disable all items on the 'Collation' tab
- Folding set to 'No folding'.

For more information, depending on the printer you are using, see:

- 'Printing' on page 215 (Windows printer or HP-GL/2 HP-RTL output)
- 'Print on an Océ 9400' on page 245
- 'Print on an Océ 9600' on page 255
- 'Print on Océ 9700 or Océ 9800' on page 273
- 'Print on Océ 3165' on page 289.

6 Click OK.

The job will be sent to the connected printer.

Chapter 21
Accounting

océ

What is accounting?

This chapter explains how you can use standard Repro Desk functionality to keep track of your print jobs. It briefly explains how you can further process this information, for example, by means of a spreadsheet program.

Accounting information

Océ Repro Desk keeps track of the printing of jobs. This information includes, amongst others, the following items:

- Project identification
- Company identification
- Date of printing
- Date due
- Number of sets printed
- Number of sheets printed
- Print area of printed sets
- Type of media
- Any comments from the queue.

You can extract this information and in some cases import it into a text file for use within other applications such as invoicing, billing, budget planning etc. You can use it directly with databases that support the ODBC standard (for example, Microsoft Access).

The accounting process

Accounting consists of five stages outlined below and further explained in the following sections:

- Preparing Océ Repro Desk for accounting
- Extracting accounting information
- Querying the information
- Reporting the information
- Processing the accounting information.

To prepare Repro Desk for accounting

Standard accounting

The standard accounting method logs information that can only be read by Océ Repro Desk.

ODBC accounting

ODBC stands for open data base connectivity. It is the industry standard database format for many database applications.

Note: *If you want to use ODBC accounting, you enter ODBC as a CD key during setup from the Océ installation CD. ODBC will then be automatically installed.*

ODBC set accounting

The ODBC Set accounting method corresponds to the information logged by Océ Repro Desk about an entire job. The accounting data for the job is summarized into one record of information.

ODBC sheet accounting

The ODBC Sheet accounting method corresponds to the information logged by Océ Repro Desk about each individual drawing in the job. Each drawing's accounting data is logged as a separate record in the log.

Note: *For a description of the information in the logs, see 'Understanding logs' on page 373.*

To prepare Océ Repro Desk for accounting, you first have to specify which kind of accounting information you wish to extract:
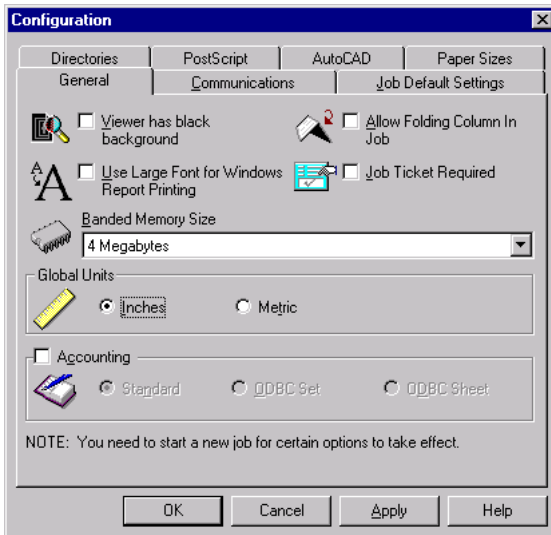
▼   **How to specify the kind of accounting information you need**

1 Select 'Defaults' in the 'Configure' menu.
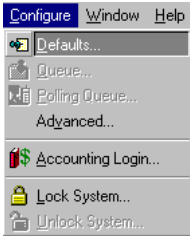
[232] Selecting 'Defaults' in the 'Configure' menu

2 The Configuration dialog box appears:

[233] Configuring: Accounting

3 Check the 'Accounting' check box in the General tab.
4 Select one of the following options:
   ■ Standard
   ■ ODBC Set
   ■ ODBC Sheet
5 Click Apply.
6 Click OK.

ODBC Set and Sheet Accounting

You can choose both 'ODBC Set' and 'ODBC Sheet' from the Configuration Manager. The application acts like ODBC Sheet Accounting except that a set record with the job ticket information is written for each sheet record.

▼ **To choose both ODBC Sheet and Set Accounting**

1 From the Configure menu, choose Advanced.
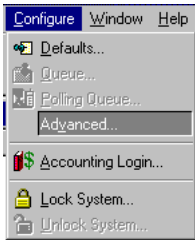
[234] Selecting 'Advanced' in the 'Configure' menu

2 The Configuration Manager window appears:
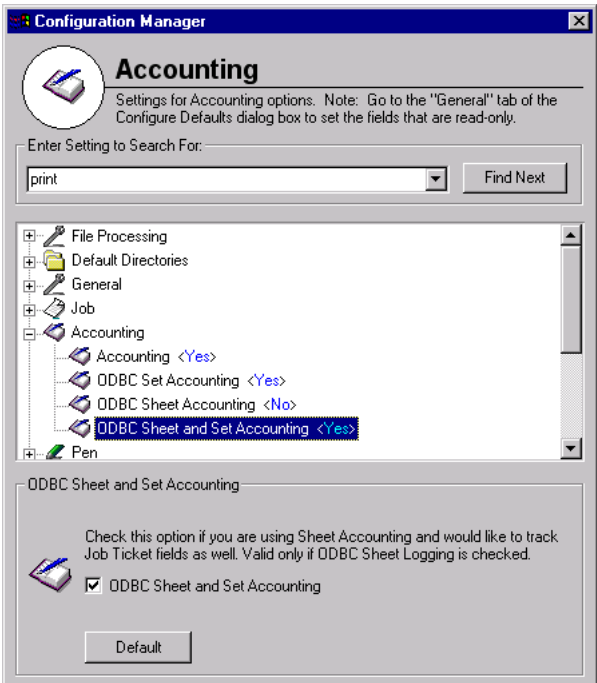
[235] Configuration Manager window

3 From the list, click the plus sign (+) to the left of Accounting.

The Accounting menu appears.

4 Toggle the following to Yes:

- ■ Accounting
- ■ ODBC Set Accounting
- ■ ODBC Sheet and Set Accounting.

5 Click OK.

Export accounting information

You can export accounting information from any active log and save it as a text file. You can further process the accounting information with any application that can import tab-separated or comma-separated text files, such as:

- ■ Word processors
- ■ Database programs
- ■ Spreadsheets

▼ **Open and view an existing log file**

1 Click the arrow next to the Log button.

[236] The Log button

The Log quick menu appears.

2 From the Log quick menu, choose the file you wish to open.

The log file window appears.

Key	Job Id	Date-Time	Type	Account Id	User Id	Sheets	Sets	Contact	Account Number
1	0	:000 12:4:13	Windo	0	0	1	1		
2	1	I00 12:10:10	Windo	0	0	2	1		
3	2	I00 12:11:25	Windo	0	0	5	1		

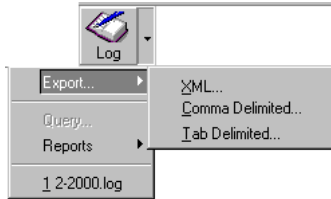*C:\ocerd\1-2000.MDB*

[237] The log file window

▼ **Print accounting information**

1 Open the log window that you wish to print.

2 In the button bar, click 'Print'.

▼ **Export accounting information**

1 Open the job from which you wish to export information.

2 Click the arrow next to the Log button.
The Log quick menu appears.

3 From the Log quick menu, choose Export.
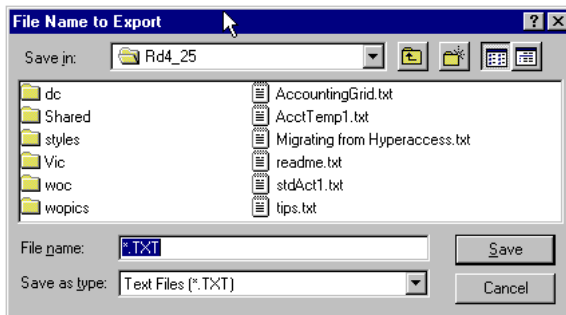The Export menu appears.

[238] Export menu

4 From the Export menu, choose one of these options:

■ XML...

■ Comma delimited...

■ Tab delimited...

Note: *The XML export option is available only for ODBC accounting, not for standard accounting.*

The File Name to Export dialog box appears.

[239] File name to export

5 Select the *.txt file that you wish to expor.

6 Select the location for it.

7 Click 'Save'.

To use Accounting login

The Accounting Login retrieves information that can be used to track the work submitted by an employee or for a customer. Each user should use the Accounting Login immediately after launching Apprentice each time.

▼ **Use Accounting login**

1 From the Configure menu, choose Accounting Login.
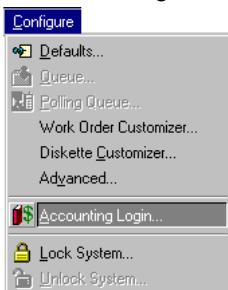
[240] Selecting 'Accounting login' in the 'Configure' menu

The Accounting Login dialog box appears:
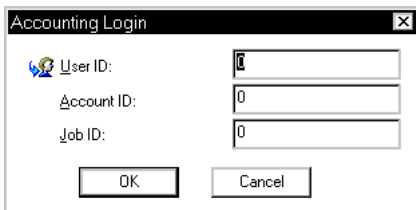
[241] Accounting login window

2 Type the ID information assigned to the employee or customer.

3 Accounting Login adds this data to the same three fields in the accounting log file.

Note: *When making copies (without Repro Desk) on the 9800, the User ID and Account ID information come from the scanner.*

Query accounting information

In addition to generating standard logs, you can use the Query feature to extract very specific data from the accounting information database. You can save queries and query results to use again.

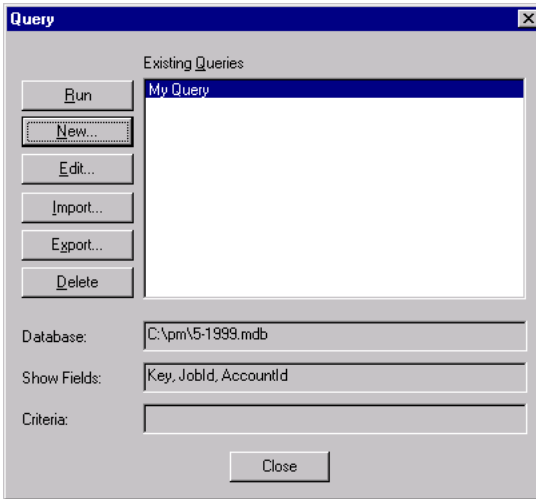Fields at the bottom of the Query window display information about the selected query.
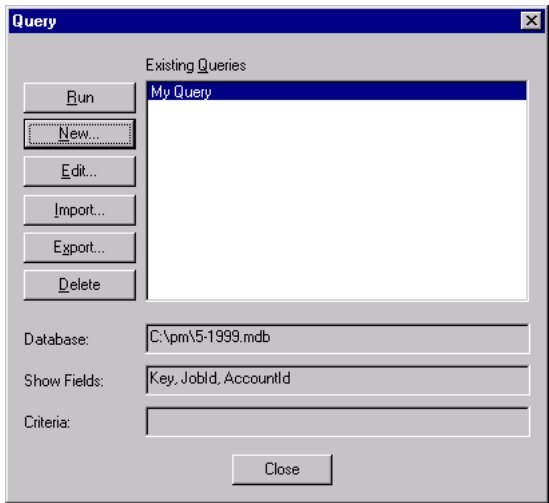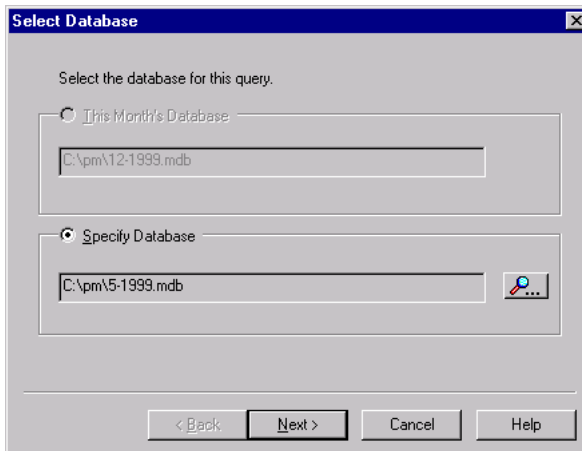

[242] Query dialog box.

Note: *The Query feature is available only when ODBC Set or ODBC Sheet accounting is selected.*

▼ Generate a new query

1 Click the arrow next to the Log button.

The Log quick menu appears.

2 From the Log quick menu, choose Query.

The Query window appears.

3 Click New.

The Select Database window appears.

4 Select This Month's Database.

or

5 Click Specify Database.

6 Use the Browse button to navigate to the *.mdb file you wish to use.

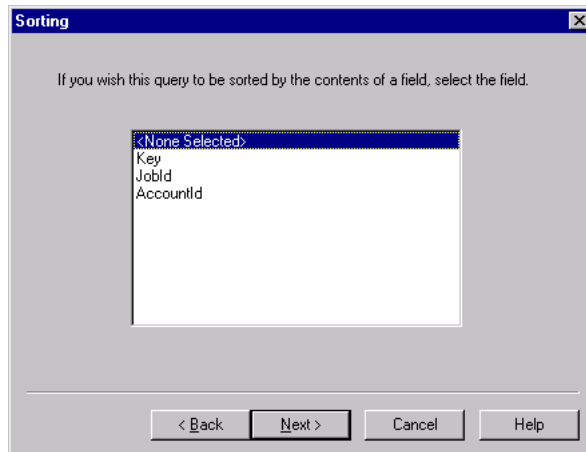**7** Click Next.

The Select Fields window appears.
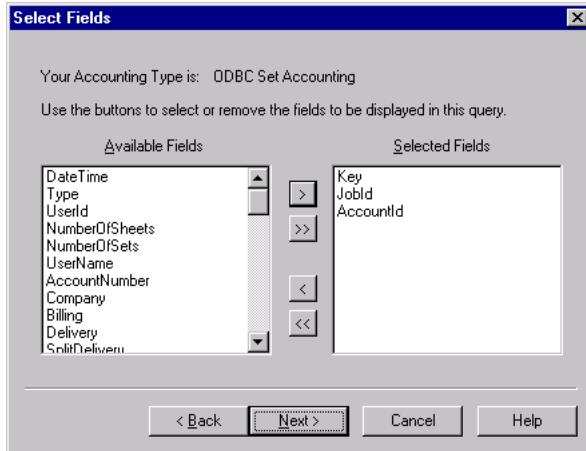
8 From the Available Fields list, select fields to use in the query.

9 Use the transfer arrows to add them to the Selected Fields list.

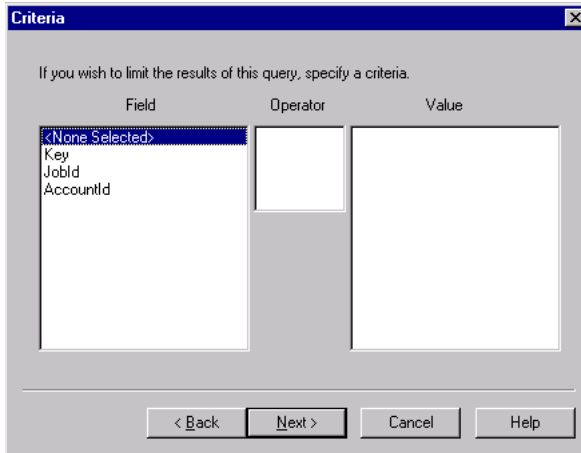**10** Click Next.

The Sorting window appears.

11 Select a field by which to sort the results.

12 Use <None selected> to skip this function.

13 Click Next.

The 'Criteria' window appears.

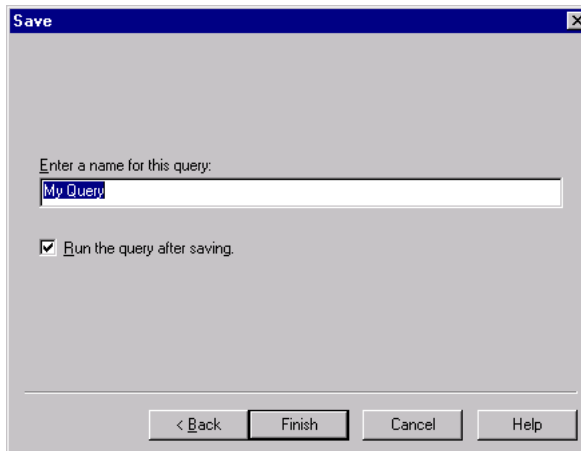**14** Select fields for the report.

15 If you select a field, you must select an operator and a value to go with it.

16 Use <None Selected> to skip this function.

Note: *The Greater than operator pulls data greater than or equal to the selected value. For dates, the operators check only the month, not the time.*

17 Click Next.

The Save window appears.

18 Type a name for the query.

19 Click Finish.

20 A preview of the query results appears.
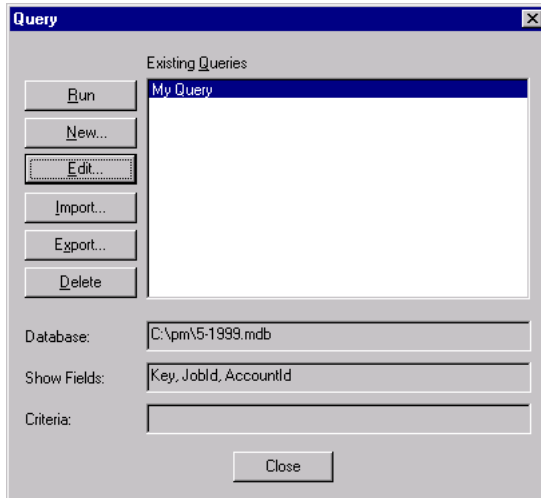
21 Click Close.

▼   **Modify a query**

   1 From the Query window, click Edit.

The Select Database window displays the database name for the selected
query.

   2 Click Next.

The Select Fields window displays the fields used in the selected query.

   3 Modify the fields as needed.

   4 Click Next.

The Sorting window displays the sort option used in the selected query.

   5 Modify the sort option as needed.

   6 Click Next.

The Criteria window displays operations and values for the selected query.

   7 Modify operations and values as needed.

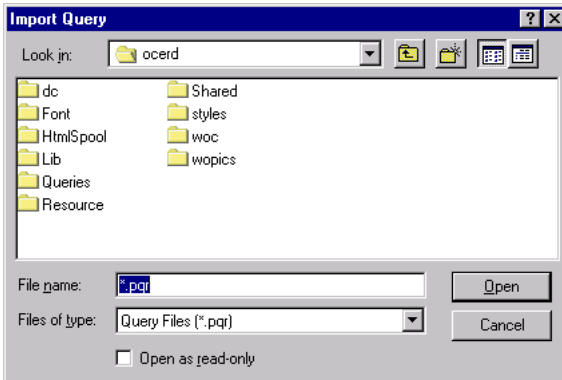   **8** Click Next.

The Save window appears.

   9 Type a name for the modified query.

   10 Click Finish.

The modified query's name appears in the Existing Queries list in the Query
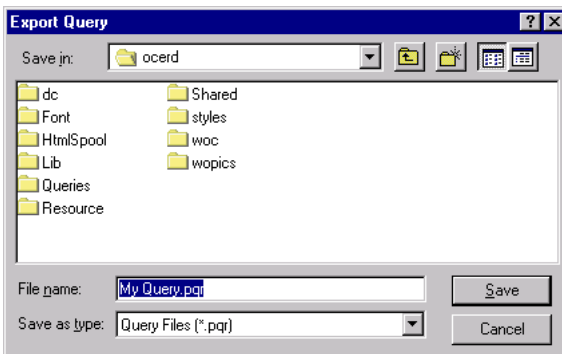window.

▼ **Import a query**

1 From the Query window, click Import.

The Import Query dialog box appears.

2 Navigate to the desired query.

3 Click Open.

The query appears in the Existing Queries list in the Query window.

▼ **Export a query**

1 From the Query window, select the query to be exported.

2 Click Export.

The Export Query dialog box appears:

3 Navigate to the desired location.

4 Click Save.

The query appears in the location you selected.

▼   **Delete a query**

1 From the Query window, select the query to be deleted.

2 Click Delete.

A message box appears, asking if you're sure you want to delete the selected query.

3 Click OK.

The query is removed from the Existing Queries list.

Report accounting information

Océ Repro Desk has three predefined reports that allow you to quickly recap data in various ways.

Weekly Plot Report Displays all accounting information for the jobs printed in the last 7 days.
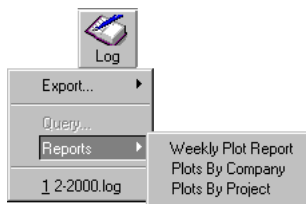
Plots by Company Displays accounting information for printing services provided to each company.

Plots by Project Displays accounting information for printing services provided to each project.

▼　　　**View a report**

1 Click the arrow next to the Log button.
The Log Quick menu appears.

[243] Log menu: Reports options

2 Select Reports.
The Reports submenu appears.
3 Select the desired report from the Reports submenu.

Understanding logs

The tables below describe information contained in logs.

Note: *Jobs that are paused or interrupted on the printer are only partially counted in the logs.*

Standard Accounting

Field	Description	Source
Project	The product portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
Company	The company portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
Date	The date and time that the job was printed.	Queue
Date Due	The date due portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
Sets	The number of sets printed.	Queue
Sheets	The number of sheets per set.	Queue
Square Feet	The exact print area of the set in square feet.	Queue
Square Feet Rounded	The rounded print area of the set in square feet.	Queue
Square Meters	The exact print area of the set in meters.	Queue
Square Meters Rounded	The rounded print area of the set in meters.	Queue
Media	The type of media, or "" if it hasn't been printed.	Queue
Comment	This is the comment field from the Queue.	Queue
User Name	The username portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
PO Number	The purchase order number portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
Delivery	The Delivery portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
Billing	The Billing portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
Split Delivery	The Split Delivery portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
First Media	The First Media portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
Additional Media	The Additional Media portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
Additional Count	The Additional Count portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
Archive	0 = no 1 = yes	Job ticket
Serial Number	The Serial Number portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket

Field	Description	Source
Use Copies	The Use Copies portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
Serial Number	The Serial Number portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
Method	The Method portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
Account Number	The Account Number portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
Phone	The Phone portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
Phone2	The Phone2 portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
Fax	The Fax portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
Email	The Email portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
Time Due	The Time Due portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
Special Instructions2	The Special Instructions2 portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
Electronic Media Format	0 = PC 1 = Macintosh.	Job ticket
Drymount Specs	The Drymount Specs portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
Drymount Trim	The Drymount Trim portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
Edging	0 = no 1 = yes	Job ticket
Other Edging	The Other Edging portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
Laminate Both Sides	0 = no 1 = yes	Job ticket
Laminate Specs	The Laminate Specs portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
Special Instructions3	The Special Instructions3 portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
Print Both Sides	0 = no 1 = yes	Job ticket
Binding	0 = GBC 1 = Screw Post 2 = Staple 3 = Other	Job ticket
Binding Other Grid	The Other Grid portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
Cover Color	The Cover Color portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket
Special Instructions4	The Special Instructions4 portion of the job ticket.	Job ticket

ODBC Set Accounting

Field	Description	Source
Key	System assigned auto increment	Automatically generated.
JobId	Unique identification of job together with DateTime	Set with Accounting Login dialog.
DateTime	Date and Time of action	Print queue
Type	Type of job: 0 = plot; 1 = copy; 2 = scan; 3 = drive; 4 = raster; 5 = modem; 6 = windows print; 7 = queue; 8 = email	Automatically generated.
AccountId	Information from job ticket	Set with Accounting Login dialog.
UserId	Identification of the user number	Set with Accounting Login dialog.
NumberOfSheets	Number of Sheets printed	Print queue
NumberOfSets	Number of Sets printed	Print queue
UserName	Contact Name	Job ticket
AccountNumber	Account Number	Job ticket
Company	Company Name	Job ticket
Billing	Billing Address	Job ticket
Delivery	Delivery Address	Job ticket
SplitDelivery	Split Delivery Address	Job ticket
Project	Project Name	Job ticket
PONumber	Purchase Order Number	Job ticket
SpecialInstruction	Special Instructions	Job ticket
LinearFeetBond	Total amount printed	Print queue
LinearFeetVellum	Total amount printed	Print queue
LinearFeetMylar	Total amount printed	Print queue
SqFeetBond	Total amount printed	Print queue
SqFeetVellum	Total amount printed	Print queue
SqFeetMylar	Total amount printed	Print queue
LinearMetersBond	Total amount printed	Print queue
LinearMetersVellum	Total amount printed	Print queue
LinearMetersMylar	Total amount printed	Print queue
SqMetersBond	Total amount printed	Print queue
SqMetersVellum	Total amount printed	Print queue
SqMetersMylar	Total amount printed	Print queue

ODBC Sheet Accounting

Field	Description	Source
Key	System assigned auto increment	Autogenerated
DateTime	Date and time of action	Autogenerated
JobId	Unique identification of the job together with DateTime field. Set with Accounting Login dialog.	Accounting dialog box
AccountId	Identification of the account number. Set with Accounting Login dialog.	Accounting dialog box
UserId	Identification of the user number. Set with Accounting Login dialog.	Accounting dialog box
MachineId	Identification of the machine	Autogenerated
SortType	Sorting: 0 = sort by page 1 = sort by set	Autogenerated
TotalOriginals	Total number of originals in the job, for example, entries in the printer's memory (each entry is one page)	Autogenerated
TotalFolded	Total number of folded output pages	Autogenerated
TotalPunched	Total number of punched output pages	Autogenerated
TotalStamped	Total number of output pages with a printer stamp	Autogenerated
TotalEdited	Total number of edited output pages	Autogenerated
TotalEnlarged	Total number of enlarged (zoom > 100%) output pages	Autogenerated
TotalReduced	Total number of reduced (zoom < 100%) output pages	Autogenerated
PaperPrints	Total number of output pages on plain paper	Autogenerated
PaperClicks	Total number of plain paper media clicks	Autogenerated
PolyesterPrints	Total number of output pages on polyester	Autogenerated
PolyesterClicks	Total number of polyester media clicks	Autogenerated
TransparentPrints	Total number of output pages on transparent media	Autogenerated
TransparentClicks	Total number of transparent media clicks	Autogenerated
ScanResolution	Scan resolution in dpi	Autogenerated
ScanFileFormat	Scan file format: 0 = TIFF 1 = CALS	Autogenerated
ScanWidth	Scan width in pixels	Autogenerated
ScanHeight	Scan length in pixels	Autogenerated

Field	Description	Source
ScanFileSize	Scan file size in bytes	Autogenerated
ScanFileName	Name of the Scan file that was saved	Autogenerated
JobName	Name of the job	Autogenerated
PlotNumberOfFiles	Number of files in the plot job	Autogenerated
UserName	Name of the user	Autogenerated
AccountName	Name of the account	Autogenerated
JobType	Type of job: 0 = normal job 1 = matrix job	Autogenerated
Ext. Key	System assigned Auto increment	Autogenerated
Ext. DateTime	Date and Time of action	Autogenerated
Ext. JobId	Used for unique identification of job together with Ext.DateTime	Autogenerated
PaperFormat	ID number 10-255 for the size of paper used*	Autogenerated
Media	ID number 0-9 for the media type (See next table)	Autogenerated
Copies	Number of Copies Printed	Autogenerated
Meters	Total amount printed	Autogenerated
Filename	Actual filename printed	Autogenerated

Paper Format	ID number
ISO AO - 1198 x 841 mm	10
ISO A1 - 841 x 594 mm	11
ISO A2 - 594 x 420 mm	12
ISO A3 - 420 x 297 mm	13
ISO A4 - 297 x 210 mm	14
ISO B1 - 1000 x 707 mm	20
ISO B2 - 707 x 500 mm	21
ISO B3 - 500 x 353	22
ISO B4 - 353 x 250 mm	23
ANSI A - 11.00 x 8.50 inch	30
ANSI B - 17.00 x 11.00 inch	31
ANSI C - 22.00 x 17.00 inch	32
ANSI D - 34.00 x 22.00 inch	33
ANSI E - 44.00 x 34.00 inch	34
ARCH A - 12.00 x 9.00 inch	40
ARCH B - 18.00 x 12.00 inch	41
ARCH C - 24.00 x 18.00 inch	42
ARCH D - 36.00 x 24.00 inch	43
ARCH E - 48.00 x 36.00 inch	44
ARCH E1 - 42.00 x 30.00 inch	45

Paper Format	ID number
ARCH E2 - 38.00 x 26.00 inch	46
ARCH E3 - 39.00 x 27.00 inch	47
Custom Sizes	100+

[244] Media ID numbers, used in 'Paper Format' in the previous table

Chapter 22
Scan

Scanning

If you have an Océ 9600, 9700 or 9800 scanner attached and you have the optional Scan-to-File software installed on the server, you can scan drawings and save them as bitmap files. These files can then be printed on the Océ printer to produce a copy of the original drawing. Scanning is controlled through the Scan Documents dialogue box.

▼ **Opening the Scan document dialogue box**

1 Click the Scan button on the button bar to open the Scan dialogue box.
The Scan button is only available on the Océ Repro Desk Server software.
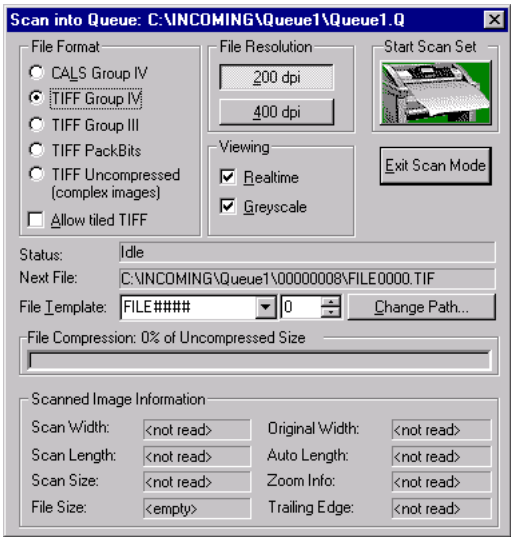
[245] Scan dialogue window

Preparation

Before you can actually start scanning your originals, you must:

- Set up a work order so the scanned files will be included in the accounting database.
- Set the File format. See 'File type' on page 392.
- Set the File resolution parameters. See 'Scan resolution' on page 391.
- Set up the file template to automatically name files as required.

▼ **Name scanned files**

1 Type in the base name of the file in the File template field.
 The default setting is 'FILE####'.
 - 'FILE' can be replaced by another name of your choice.
 - '####' is the counter which starts at 0000, and can be replaced by a numeric counter such as '1'.
2 Scanned files are saved by default in D\TEMPSCAN. If you want to save your scanned files in another location, click 'Change Path' and go to the directory where you want your scanned files to be saved.
 The name and path of the next file to be scanned is displayed in the Next file field.
3 Click 'OK'.

▼ Set up a work order

1 Open the job into which you plan to scan the documents.
2 Go to the 'Edit' menu.
3 Click 'Job Ticket'.
 The 'Work order' appears.
4 Add the appropriate information.
5 Click 'Submit'.
 The 'Order Receipt' appears.
6 Click 'Close'.
7 In the job window, click 'Save' to save the work order information.

Scan

▼ **Scan a document**

1 Make the required settings in the dialogue box.
2 Click Start Scan Set button to start scanning.
   The status bar displays Load document 1. When the scanner has finished
   scanning the first document it displays Load document 2, and so on until you
   have finished.
   While scanning, the Start Scan Set button changes to Stop Scan Set. Click this
   button if you want to pause scanning. Click the button again to resume where
   you left off.
3 When the message "Load Doc 1" is visible on the operating panel, insert the
   original in the scanner.
4 Press the Start button on the scanner operating panel.
5 Repeat inserting an original until you have scanned all your originals.
6 Click Exit Scan mode when you have finished scanning to close the scan
   documents dialogue box.

Océ scanner configuration When the scanner and Océ Repro Desk have
established communication, the Océ scanner settings are automatically
detected by Océ Repro Desk and displayed in the relevant fields: Scan width,
Scan length, Scan size, File size, Original width, Auto length, Zoom info and
Trailing edge.

Realtime viewing Check Realtime viewing if you want to see the scanning
progress in the viewer. Using the viewer does not make the scanning slower so
using it or not is a matter of personal preference.

Greyscale viewing If you select this option, the realtime viewer will use a
number of grey scale gradients to render the scanned in drawing instead of
using solid black. This option gives a far better view of the original drawing.

Allow tiled TIFF Selecting this option permits the user to scan a non-standard
drawing to a standard image size.
Often drawings will be slightly smaller than a truly standard paper size. In the
U.S., a 30 inch x 42 inch drawing is a commonly used size. For many reasons,
a drawing to be scanned may be slightly undersized. So if a customer had a
drawing that actually measured 29.5 x 41.5, the image should actually be 30 x
42.

Scan with the Océ 9600

If you have an Océ 9600 scanner attached and you have the optional Scan-to-File software installed on the server, you can scan drawings and save them as files. These files can then be printed on the Océ 9600 printer to produce a copy of the original drawing. Scanning is controlled through the Scan Documents dialog box.

As drawings are scanned, a preview of the scan is available in the Océ 9600 Print Manager window.

Name and save scanned files

Repro Desk offers the following possibilities for scanning.

1 Scan to a queue
2 Scan into a new job
3 Scan into an existing, not saved job
4 Scan into a saved job.

▼ **Scan to a queue**

1 Open a queue (see 'Opening a queue' on page 209) or activate an already opened queue.
2 Click the 'Scan' button in the toolbar.

[246] Scan button

The following dialog box appears.
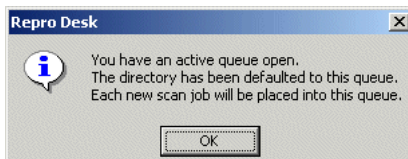
[247] Scan to queue dialog box

3 Click 'OK'.
   A subdirectory of the queue is created corresponding to 'latest.num'. The following dialog box appears, in which that subdirectory is the default.

You can not change the job name, the subdirectory name or the scan destination in this dialog box.
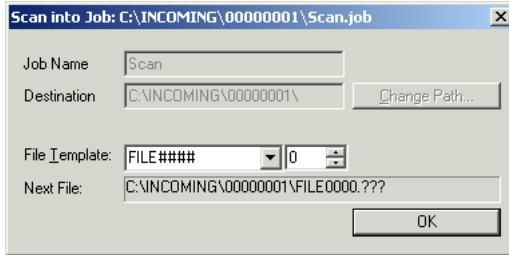
[248] Scan into job dialog box

4 If required, define the file template.
5 Click 'OK'.
   The scan job is saved. The 'Scan' button in the toolbar changes to a 'Stop Scan' button.

[249] Stop Scan button

An empty job window appears.
6 Scan the original on the Océ 9600 scanner.
   The scanned original appears as a file in the job window.
   You can now scan more originals or save and close the job.

▼ **Scan into a new job**
1 Click the 'Scan' button in the toolbar.
   When no job or queue is active, a new job window with a new job name appears.
   In front of the new job window, the following dialog box appears.
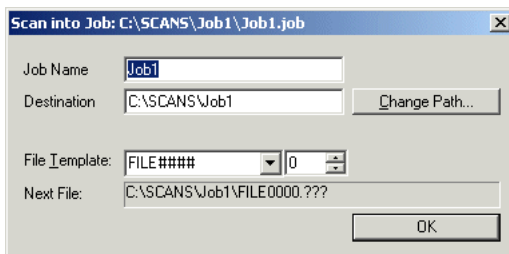
[250] Scan into a new job dialog box

2 If required, define the job name, destination and file template.
3 Click 'OK'.

The scan job is saved. The 'Scan' button in the toolbar changes to a 'Stop Scan' button.

4 Scan the original on the Océ 9600 scanner.

The scanned original appears as a file in the job window.

▼   **Scan into an existing, not saved job**

1 Make sure the existing, not saved job is active.

2 Click the 'Scan' button in the toolbar.

The following dialog box appears.
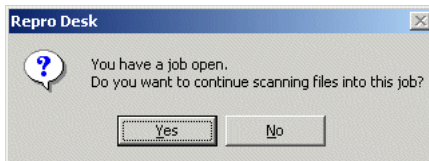

[251] Scan into a not saved job dialog box

3 Click 'Yes'.

The active job is renamed.

The renamed job window contains the files of the existing, not saved job (if any).

In front of the renamed job window, the following dialog box appears.
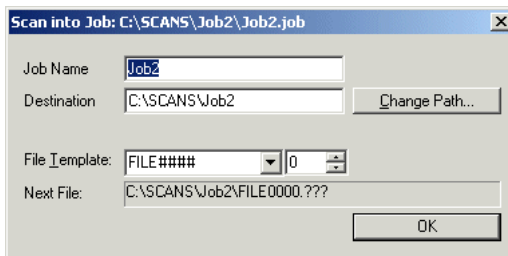
[252] Scan into job dialog box

4 If required, define the job name, destination and file template.

5 Click 'OK'.

The scan job is saved. The 'Scan' button in the toolbar changes to a 'Stop Scan' button.

6 Scan the original on the Océ 9600 scanner.

The scanned original appears as a file in the job window.

▼ **Scan into a saved job**

When you open a saved job, that job can contain the following.

- Only print files
- Print files and scan files.

When you open a saved job that does not contain scan files, you can define the file template for the new scan job.
When you open a saved job that contains scan files, you can not change the file template for the new scan job. This prevents you from overwriting the existing scan files in the job.

The procedure is basically the same in both cases. Depending on whether or not the saved job already contains scan files, in step 3 another dialog box appears.

Do the following to scan files into a saved job.

1 Open a saved job (see 'To open apreviously saved job' on page 98).
2 Click the 'Scan' button in the toolbar.
The following dialog box appears.
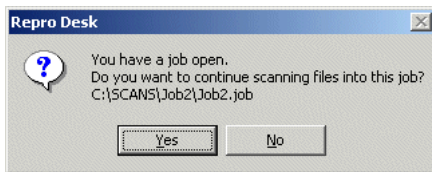
[253] Scan into a saved job dialog box

3 Click 'Yes'.
If the saved job only contains print files, the following dialog box appears.
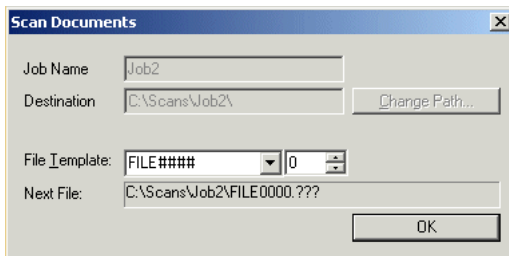
[254] Scan into a saved job that only contains print files dialog box

If the saved job contains print files and scan files, the following dialog box appears.
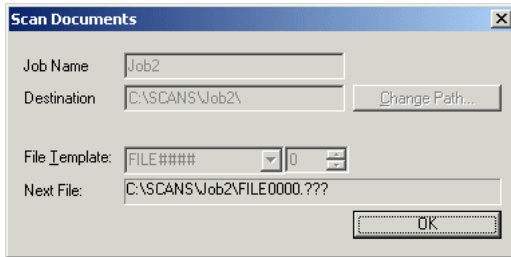
[255] Scan into a saved job that contains print files and scan files dialog box

4 Click 'OK'.
The scan job is saved. The 'Scan' button in the toolbar changes to a 'Stop Scan' button.

5 Scan the original on the Océ 9600 scanner.
The scanned original appears as a file in the job window.

Scanner settings on the Océ 9600

If you are using an Océ TDS9600 scanner, a number of scanner options will influence the result of the scanned image.

Brightness

The automatic background compensation (on by default) will provide a good quality copy from a large variety of originals. It ensures the production of background-free copies of most line drawings.

▼ **Set the automatic background compensation**

1 Go to the Original section.
2 Open the Image card.
3 Set the Background compensation function to On.
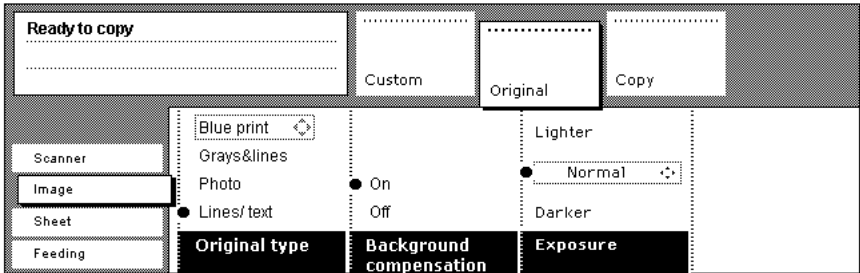
[256] Exposure settings

Manually adjust the brightness When copying extremely light or dark originals, or originals with unequal background density, the result may not meet your requirements (for example, too much background). In such cases you can manually adjust the brightness (see figure 256).

▼ **Manually adjust the exposure setting**

1 Go to the Original section.
2 Open the Image card.

3 Select Exposure function.

4 Use the arrow buttons to set the exposure as desired.
- The Up and Down arrow buttons can be used to gradually increase or decrease the exposure setting.
- The Left or Right arrow buttons can be used to go to the highest or lowest available exposure level at once.
- If you want to go from any negative value to the highest possible positive value, or vice versa, you have to press the appropriate Left or Right button twice.

5 Make other settings as required.

6 Feed the original.

Original type The Océ 9600 allows you to adjust the exposure setting according to the type of image on the original. There are five original types available.

▼   **Adjust the brightness according the type of image**

1 Go to the Original section.

2 Open the Image card.

3 Select Original type function.

4 Select the appropriate image type:
- By default Lines/text is selected with Background compensation enabled. This is the most suitable setting for originals that contain characters and line art.
- Select Photo when the original consists of a combination of characters, line art and picture images.
- Select Grays & lines when the original contains many gray scales and lines.
- If you select 'Photo' or 'Grays & lines', the Background compensation will be switched off automatically.
- Select Blue print when you want to copy an original with an image in negative (image in white on dark background). The copy will be positive (image in black on white background).
- Select Dark original when the original has an extremely dark background (that is, low contrast).

5 Make other settings as required.

6 Feed the original.

Scan to file mode

▼ **Set file mode**

1 Go to the 'File' section.

2 Open the 'Destination' card.
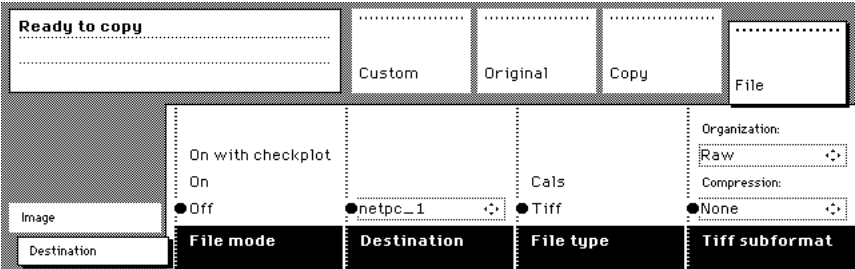
[257] File mode settings

3 Using the function buttons, choose:

- **On**. The document will be scanned to file
- **On** with checkplot. The document will be scanned to file and a copy will be printed.
- **Off**. The document is not scanned to file.

File size optimization

This option will decrease the amount of data that is used to store the scanned file. In this way you can store more images on your disk.

▼ **Selecting file size optimization**

1 Go to the 'File' section.

2 Open the 'Image' card.
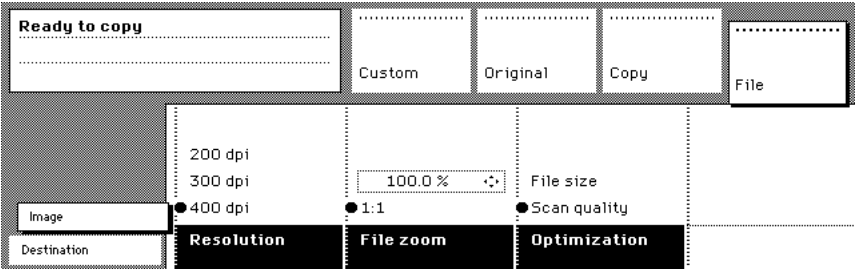
[258] Selecting Filesize optimization

3 Using the function buttons, choose the Optimization settings as described below:
- Choose File size to make the file size smaller. Some loss of image quality may occur.
- Choose Scan quality to make image quality better. The file size may grow.

Scan resolution

Scanning at 200 dpi is quicker but not recommended for grayscale images. Grayscale images should be scanned at 400 dpi. Grayscale images scanned at 200 dpi will produce a copy which is of inferior quality to the original.

Note: *If you scan a drawing at 200 dpi and you use the scanner operating panel option Scan with Copy, the copy is printed with 400 dpi after all.*

▼ **Set scan resolution**

1 Go to the 'File' section.

2 Open the Image card.
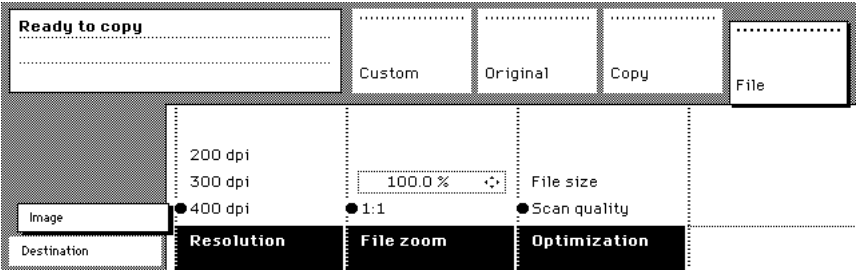
[259] Selecting scan resolution

3 Using the function buttons, choose the resolution:
- 200 dpi
- 300 dpi
- 400 dpi.

File type

This option defineds the type of raster data.

▼ **Set the scan to file type**

1 Go to the 'File' section.

2 Open the 'Destination' card.

Ready to copy	Custom	Original	Copy	File

	On with checkplot			Organization: Raw
	On		Cals	Compression:
Image	●Off	●netpc_1	●Tiff	●None
Destination	**File mode**	**Destination**	**File type**	**Tiff subformat**

[260] File type settings

3 Using the function buttons, choose:
- Cals.
- Tiff (If you choose Tiff, you must choose other options in the Tiff sub-format).

Tiff sub-format
- Organization: Raw or Tile

Compression: None, Group 3-1D, Group 4 or Pack Bits.

Zoom settings

You can use the 'File zoom' function button on the Océ 9600 operator panel to enlarge the scanned image.

Note: *The use of reduction in combination with scan-to-file functionality will not result in a reduced image. However, the print copy **is** reduced.*

▼ **Set the zoom factor**

1 Go to the 'File' section.
2 Open the Image card.
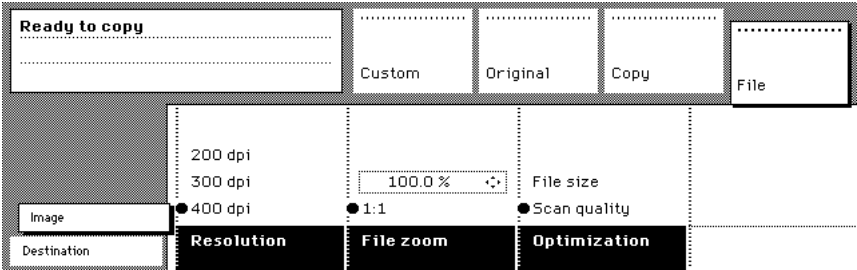
[261] Select Filesize optimization

3 Use the function buttons to choose:
   ■ 1:1 to scan at actual size.
   ■ Use the arrow buttons or numeric buttons to set a zoom percentage.

Scanner settings on the Océ 9700

If you are using an Océ 9700 scanner, a number of scanner options will influence the result of the scanned image.

It is recommended not to use the settings in the 'Image' card of the 'Copy' menu. These settings will only influence the printed copy (if 'with copy' is selected), not the scanned image. This would result in a difference between printed copy and scanned image.

Modifying the exposure

The automatic exposure control will provide a good quality copy from a large variety of originals. The automatic exposure setting, which is switched on (by default), ensures the production of background-free copies of most line drawings (see figure 271).

[262] Automatic exposure setting

▼ **Setting the automatic exposure**

1 Open the 'Special original' card in the 'Copy' section.
If the function 'Automatic exposure' is shown as in figure 271 above, then the automatic exposure has been activated already.

2 If 'Automatic exposure' is deactivated press the function button 'Automatic exposure'.

When scanning extremely light or dark originals, or originals with unequal background density such as paste ups, the result may not meet your requirements (for example, too much background). In such cases you can manually adjust the exposure.

▼ **Manually adjusting the exposure setting**

1 Press the 'Exposure' button on the main window of the operating panel, and use the higher/lower buttons to change the exposure.
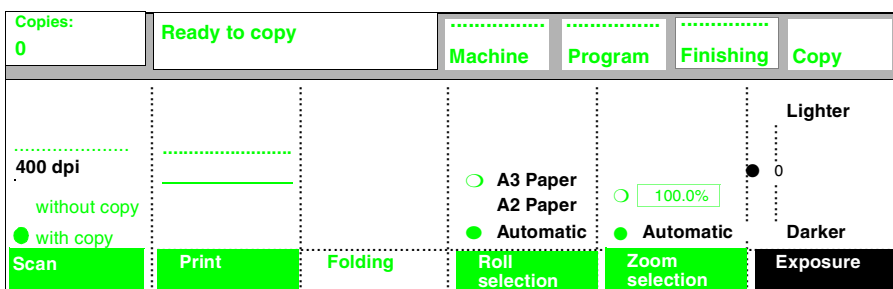
[263] Modifying the exposure on the Océ 9700

The Océ 9700 allows you to adjust the exposure according to the type of image on the original. There are four original types available. Select a suitable mode according to the original (see figure 264).
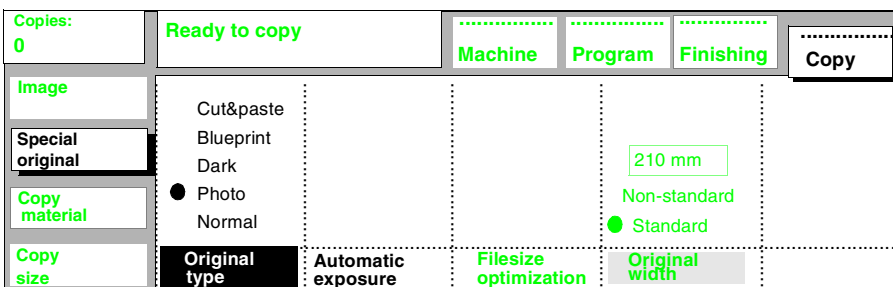
[264] Selecting the original type

▼ **Adjusting the exposure according the type of image**

1 Open the 'Special original' card in the 'Copy' section. By default 'Normal' and 'Automatic exposure' are active. When the original contains characters and line art this is the most suitable setting.

■ Press the function button 'Original type' to select 'Photo' when the original consists of a combination of characters, line art and picture images.
Note: *If you select 'Photo', the 'Automatic exposure' will be switched off automatically.*

■ Press the function button 'Original type' to select 'Dark' when the original has an extremely dark background (That is, low contrast).

■ Press the function button 'Original type' to select 'Blueprint' when you want to copy an original with an image in 'negative' (image in white on dark background). The copy will be 'positive' (image in black on white background).

■ Press the function button 'Original type' to select 'Cut&paste' when the original contains paste ups ('cut and paste' with scissors and glue for example).

File size optimization

This option will decrease the amount of data that is used to store the scanned file. In this way you can store more images on your disk.

▼ **Selecting file size optimization**

1 Open the 'Special original' card in the 'Copy' section.
If the function 'Filesize optimization' is shown as in figure 274 (black background), then the automatic exposure has been activated already.

[265] Selecting Filesize optimization

2 If 'Filesize optimization' is deactivated, press the function button.

Scanning non-standard size originals

The scanner of the Océ 9700 automatically detects the width of the inserted original. For European sizes, for example, it detects whether the width is A0, A1, A2, A3, A4, 500 mm, or 700 mm. The Océ Repro Desk system uses a memory table that contains all standard width - standard length combinations to predict the length of the original. The scanner also measures the real length of each original while it is transferred through the scanner.

Note: *If you are copying thick originals or originals in a carrier sheet, it is recommended to use the output at the rear side of the scanner to ensure correct delivery.*

Depending on the original, you must define both the original size and the original length as specified below:

■ Standard original:

Original width	Standard
Original length	Standard

■ Standard width, non-standard length:

Original width	Standard
Original length	Automatic

■ Non-standard width, non-standard length

	Option 1	Option 2
Original width	Non-standard	Custom
Original length	-	Automatic or Custom

Note: *For option 1, the original length is automatically set by the scanner.*

Note: *Selecting non standard original width (option 1) may cause some white space along your image. To prevent this, you can specify the exact width yourself (option 2).*

▼ **Defining the original width and length**

1 Open the 'Special original' card in the 'Copy' section.

Copies: 0	Ready to copy						
				Machine	Program	Finishing	**Copy**
Image							
Special original	Blueprint Dark Photo ● Normal				● 210 mm Non-standard Standard	● 400 mm ⬍ **Automatic**	
Copy material							
Copy size	**Original type**	**Automatic exposure**	**Filesize optimization**	**Original width**	**Original length**		

[266] Defining the original size

2 Press 'Original width' to select the required setting:

- Standard. This option must be used to copy a standard-size original.
- Non-standard. This option can be used to copy a non-standard original. The scanned width will be larger than the original width, to prevent information loss.
- Custom. You can define the original width yourself, using the higher/lower buttons or the numeric buttons.

3 If you have selected a standard width, you can define the original length by pressing the appropriate button:

- Standard. The scanner will use a standard original length.
- Automatic. The original length will be measured by the scanner.

Or,

4 If you have selected a non-standard width, the original length is automatically measured by the scanner. You cannot change the original length setting yourself. Or,

5 If you have specified the original width yourself (custom), you can also define the original length by pressing the according button:

- Automatic. The original length will be measured by the scanner.
- Custom. You can define the original length yourself, using the higher/lower buttons or the numeric buttons.

Using the zoom settings

You can use the 'Zoom selection' function button on the Océ 9700 operator panel to enlarge the scanned image.

Note: *The use of reduction in combination with scan-to-file functionality will not result is a reduced image. However, the print copy **is** reduced.*

▼ **Enlarging when scanning a standard size original**

1 Use the 'Zoom selection' function button to select the zoom function.
2 Use the higher button at the right of the display to increase the zoom factor.
Note: *If you hold down the higher button, the zoom factor will scroll up or down fast, with a pause when a fixed zoom step is reached. These fixed zoom steps can be specified by the key operator.*

Note: *If you want to change your zoom factor by non-standard steps, you have to use the custom width and custom length settings.*

Scanning originals with filing strip

You can adjust the original guide of the scanner to remove a filing strip along the left hand side (right hand side in the feed direction, face-down). This side can be shortened up to 60 mm (2.36 inch) (see figure 267).

Face up:
Left hand side
- 40 mm

Face down:
right hand side
in feed direction
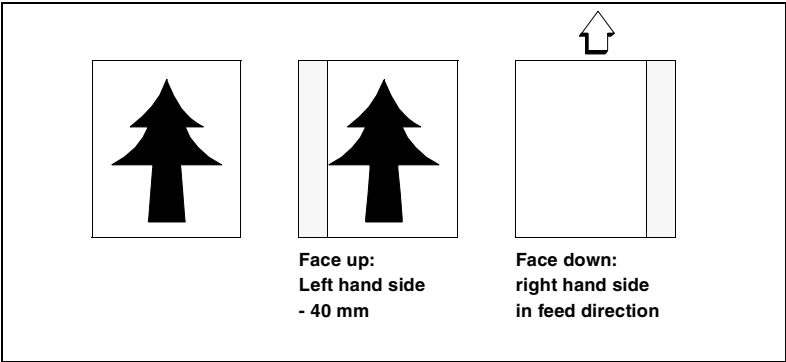
[267] Example of adjusting the left hand side of an original

▼ **Scanning with removed filing strip along the left hand side (right hand side in the feed direction, face-down)**

1 Press the catch underneath the original guide, and move it to the right.
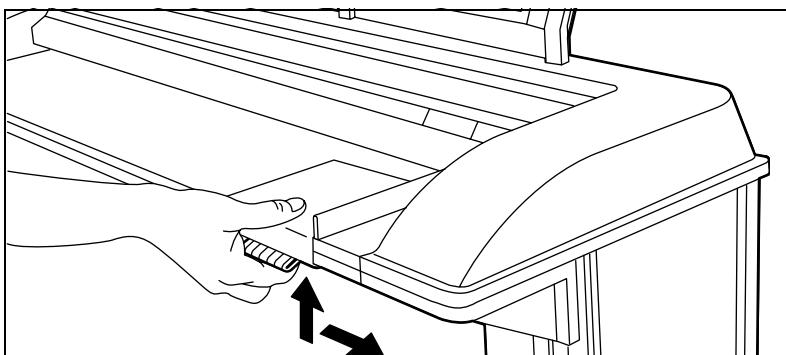
[268] Adjusting the original guide to add or remove a filing strip along the left hand side

2 Make all required settings.
3 Insert the original face down, right aligned along with the original guide on the scanner feed table.

You can also remove the filing strip along the right hand side (left hand side in the feed direction, face-down) by selecting a specific roll. If the paper width of the original is larger than the paper width of the selected roll, the remaining paper part on the right hand side will not be scanned (see figure 269).

Face up:
Right hand side
- 40 mm

Face down:
left hand side in
feed direction
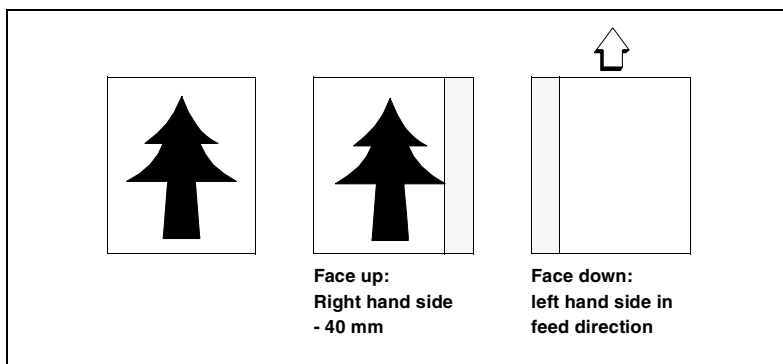
[269] Example of removing the right hand side of an original

▼ **Scanning with removed filing strip along the right hand side (left hand side in the feed direction, face-down)**

1 Select one of the roll selection buttons on the operating panel.
2 Select the 100% button.
3 Make sure the 'Auto zoom' and 'Auto roll' buttons are not selected.
4 Make other settings as required.
5 Feed the original.

It is also possible to adjust the length of the leading edge to eliminate a filing strip. The leading edge can be shortened up to 100 millimetres (3.93 inch).

▼ **Scanning with removed filing strip along the leading edge**

1 Open the 'Copy size' card in the 'Copy' section.
2 Press the function button 'Remove strip' twice (see figure 270).

Copies: 0	Ready to copy		Machine	Program	Finishing	Copy
Image		● A4 >> A4		4 mm ⬍		0 mm
Special original		● A3 >> A3				
		● A2 >> A2	210 mm			
Copy **material**		● A1 >> A1	● Standard cut	0 mm		0 mm
Copy size		● A0 >> A0	Synchro cut			
		Auto format selection	Copy length	Remove strip		Add strip

[270] Removing strip

3 Adjust the values in millimetres for the leading edge using the numeric or the higher/lower buttons.

Scanning with removed filing strip along the trailing edge If you want to remove the *trailing* edge, you can use the 'Remove strip' setting for the leading edge as described above, and feed the original with the trailing edge first. Then use the Océ Viewer to rotate the scanned image 180°.

Note: *You can also define the original width and length.*

Scanner settings on the Océ 9800

If you are using an Océ 9800 scanner, a number of scanner options will influence the result of the scanned image.

It is not recommended to use the settings in the 'Image' card of the 'Copy' menu. These settings will only influence the printed copy not the scanned image. This would result in a difference between the two images..

Modifying the exposure

The automatic exposure control will provide a good quality copy from a large variety of originals. The automatic exposure setting, which is switched on (by default), ensures the production of background-free copies of most line drawings (see figure 271).

Copies: 0	Ready to copy		Machine	Program	Finishing	Copy
Image	Cut&paste					
Special original	Blueprint				210 mm	
	Dark				Non-standard	
Copy material	Photo				● Standard	
	● Normal					
Copy size	**Original type**	**Automatic exposure**	**Filesize optimization**	**Original width**		
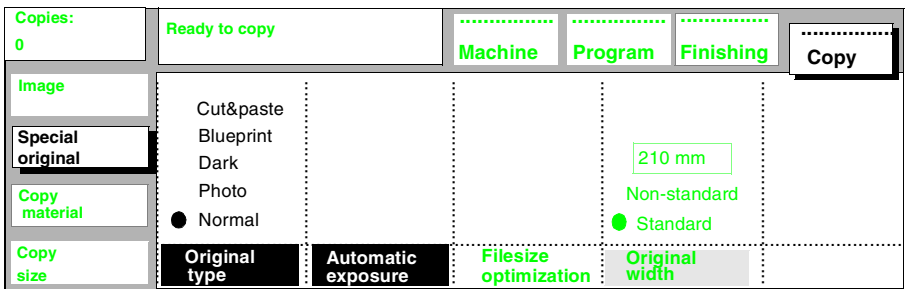
[271] Automatic exposure setting

▼   **Setting the automatic exposure**

1 Open the 'Special original' card in the 'Copy' section.
   If the function 'Automatic exposure' is shown as in figure 271 above, then the automatic exposure has been activated already.

2 If 'Automatic exposure' is deactivated press the function button 'Automatic exposure'.

When scanning extremely light or dark originals, or originals with unequal background density such as paste ups, the result may not meet your requirements (for example, too much background). In such cases you can manually adjust the exposure.

▼ **Manually adjusting the exposure setting**

1 Press the 'lighter or darker' button on the scanner operating panel to set the exposure as desired.
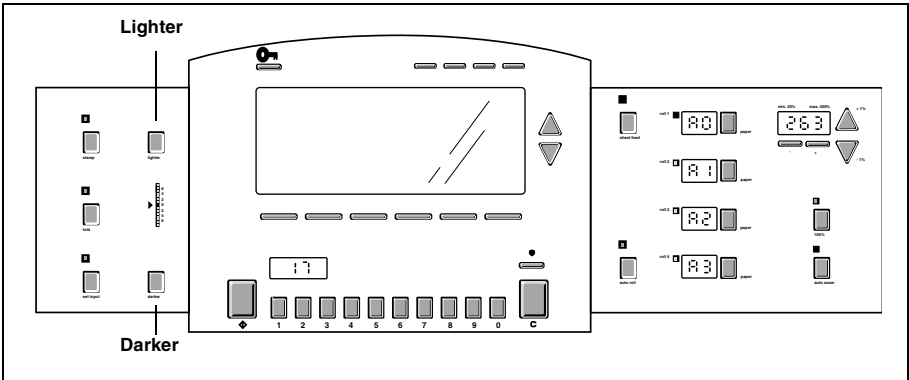
[272] Lighter/Darker buttons on the Océ 9800

The Océ 9800 allows you to adjust the exposure according to the type of image on the original. There are four original types available. Select a suitable mode according to the original (see figure 273).

[273] Selecting the original type

▼ **Adjusting the exposure according the type of image**

1 Open the "Special original' card in the 'Copy' section. As default 'Normal' and 'Automatic exposure' are active. When the original contains characters and line works this is the most suitable setting.

- Press the function button 'Original type' to select 'Photo' when the original consists of a combination of characters, line art and picture images.
  Note: *If you select 'Photo', the 'Automatic exposure' will default be switched off automatically.*
- Press the function button 'Original type' to select 'Dark' when the original has an extremely dark background (That is, low contrast).
- Press the function button 'Original type' to select 'Blueprint' when you want to copy an original with an image in 'negative' (image in white on dark background). The copy will be 'positive' (image in black on white background).
- Press the function button 'Original type' to select 'Cut&paste' when the original contains paste ups ('cut and paste' with scissors and glue).

File size optimization

This option will decrease the amount of data that is used to store the scanned file. In this way you can store more images on your disk.

Note: *If the original contains photographic images, this option must not be used.*

▼ **Activating file size optimization**

1 Open the 'Special original' card in the 'Copy' section.
If the function 'Filesize optimization' is shown as in figure 274 (white text on black background), then the Filesize optimization has been activated already.

[274] Selecting Filesize optimization

2 If 'Filesize optimization' is deactivated, press the function button.

Scanning non-standard size originals

The scanner of the Océ 9800 automatically detects the width of the inserted original. For European sizes, for example, it detects whether the width is A0, A1, A2, A3, A4, 500 mm, or 700 mm (or 707 mm, depending on the configuration). The Océ Repro Desk system uses a memory table that contains all standard width and standard length combinations to predict the length of the original. The scanner also measures the real length of each original while it is transferred through the scanner.

Note: *If you are copying thick originals or originals in a carrier sheet, it is recommended to use the output at the rear side of the scanner to ensure correct delivery.*

Depending on the original, you must define both the original size and the original length as specified below:

■ Standard original:

Original width	Standard
Original length	Standard

■ Standard width, non-standard length:

Original width	Standard
Original length	Automatic

■ Non-standard width, non-standard length

	Option 1	*Option 2*
Original width	Non-standard	Custom
Original length	-	Automatic or Custom

Note: *The original length is automatically set by the scanner for option 1.*

Note: *Selecting non standard original width (option 1) may cause some white space along your image. To prevent this, you can specify the exact width yourself (option 2).*

Note: *If your scanner is equipped with 5 sensors instead of 8 sensors, it can not discriminate between 700mm, A0 and 36". In that case always specify the original width yourself (option2) to scan a 700mm or A0 original.*

▼ **Defining the original width and length**

1 Open the 'Special original' card in the 'Copy' section.

Copies: 0	Ready to copy			Machine	Program	Finishing	Copy

Image

Special original

Blueprint
Dark
Photo
● Normal

● 210 mm
Non-standard
Standard

● 400 mm ⬍
Automatic

Copy material

Copy size

Original type	Automatic exposure	Filesize optimization	Original width	Original length

[275] Defining the original size

2 Press 'Original width' to select the required setting:
- Standard. This option must be used to copy a standard-size original.
- Non-standard. This option can be used to copy a non-standard original. The scanned width will be larger than the original width, to prevent information loss.
- Custom. You can define the original width yourself, using the higher/lower buttons or the numeric buttons.

3 If you have selected a standard width, you can define the original length by pressing the appropriate button:
- Standard. The scanner will use a standard original length.
- Automatic. The original length will be measured by the scanner. Or,

4 If you have selected a non-standard width, the original length is automatically measured by the scanner. You cannot change the original length setting yourself.
Or,

5 If you have specified the original width yourself (custom), you can also define the original length by pressing the appropriate button:
- Automatic. The original length will be measured by the scanner.
- Custom. You can define the original length yourself, using the higher/lower buttons or the numeric buttons.

Using the zoom settings

You can use the zoom settings on the Océ 9800 operator panel of the scanner to enlarge the scanned image.

Note: *The use of reduction in combination with scan-to-file functionality will not result is a reduced image. However, the print copy **is** reduced.*

▼ **Enlarging when scanning a standard size original**

1 Press one of the zoom step buttons on the operator panel, just below the zoom display, to change the zoom factor for your original by standard steps (A4 to A3, A3 to A2, etc). This will result in a standard size scanned image.
Note: *If you want to change your zoom factor by non-standard steps, you have to use the custom width and custom length settings.*

Scanning originals with filing strip

You can adjust the original guide of the scanner to remove or add a filing strip along the left hand side (in the feed direction, face-up). The left hand side can be extended up to 20 mm or shortened up to 60 mm (0.78 to 2.36 inch).

Left hand side - 40 mm
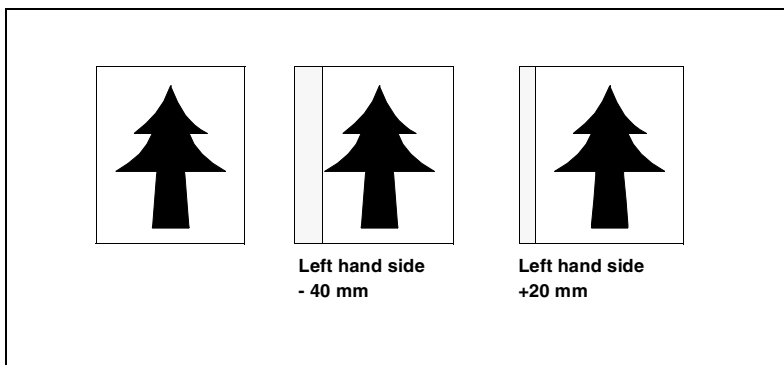
Left hand side +20 mm

[276] Example of adjusting the left hand side of an original

▼ **Scanning with removed or added filing strip along the left hand side**

1 If you want to remove a filing strip, move the original guide to the left.

2 If you want to add a strip, move the original guide to the right.
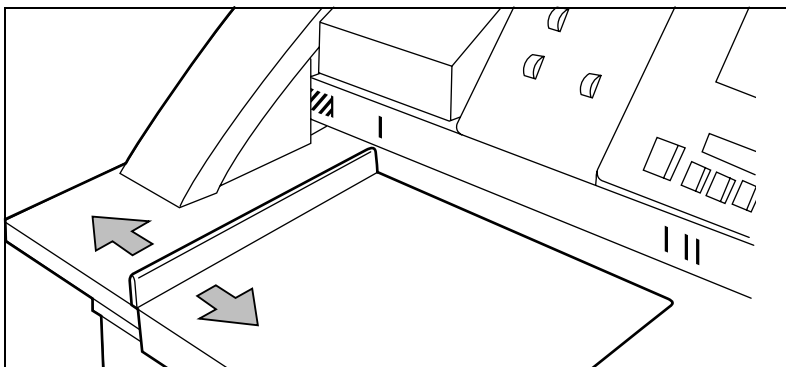
[277] Adjusting the original guide to add or remove a filing strip along the left hand side

3 Make all required settings.

4 Insert the original face up, left aligned along with the original guide on the scanner feed table.

Note: *The standard position of the original guide is marked on the copy feed table. If you move the original guide to the standard position it will click into place.*

You can also remove the filing strip along the right hand side (in the feed direction, face-up) by selecting a specific roll. If the paper width of the original is larger than the paper width of the selected roll, the remaining paper part on the right hand side will not be scanned (see figure 278).

Paper width on selected roll -20 mm

Right hand side -20mm
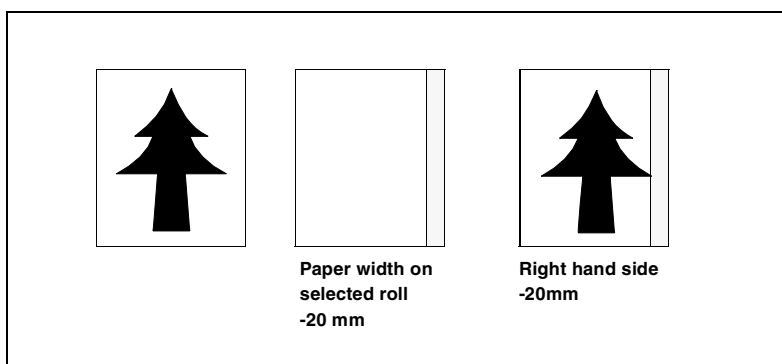
[278] Example of removing the right hand side of an original

▼ **Scanning with removed filing strip along the right hand side**

1 Select one of the roll selection buttons on the operating panel.

2 Select the 100% button.

3 Make sure the 'auto zoom' and 'auto roll' buttons are not selected.

4 Make other settings as required.

5 Feed the original.

It is also possible to adjust the length of the leading edge to eliminate a filing strip. The leading edge can be shortened up to 100 millimetres.

▼ **Scanning with removed filing strip along the leading edge**

1 Open the 'Copy size' card in the 'Copy' section.

2 Press the function button 'Remove strip' twice (see figure 279).

[279] Removing strip

3 Adjust the values in millimetres for the leading edge using the numeric or the higher/lower buttons.

Scanning with removed filing strip along the trailing edge If you want to remove the trailing edge, you can use the 'Remove strip' setting for the leading edge as described above, and feed the original with the trailing edge first. Then use the Océ Viewer to rotate the scanned image 180°.

Note: *You can also define the original width and length.*

Chapter 23
Work order customizer

*System administrators can use the work order customizer
to modify the default work order (job ticket) used by Repro
Desk when routing jobs.*

Introduction

While the basic work order provided with Repro Desk is sufficient for a wide variety of configurations, in certain environments more flexibility may be required. The work order customizer lets you tailor the Repro Desk work order to match individual corporate requirements. For instance, rather than specifying a project by name you may wish to fill in a project number instead. Or, perhaps, you have no need for the default Split Delivery field.

To use the work order customizer

1 Go to the Configure menu.

2 Select Work Order Customizer.

The form appears, separated into three Work Order Customizer sections:

■ The Order Receipt Header section controls what is shown on the order receipt after a job is sent.

■ The Work Order Fields section controls which pieces of information are required or even visible on the form as well as any default values that may be filled in automatically for the user.

■ The Work Order Colors and Fonts section controls the visual elements and appearance of the work order.

Order receipt header

The order receipt header lets you control company logo, address and other information.

You can make changes in the fields and view the output in the header.

▼ **To make changes to text**

1 Type new information in the text boxes.

▼ **To change the logo**

1 Click the 'Browse' button.
The Choose File dialog box appears.
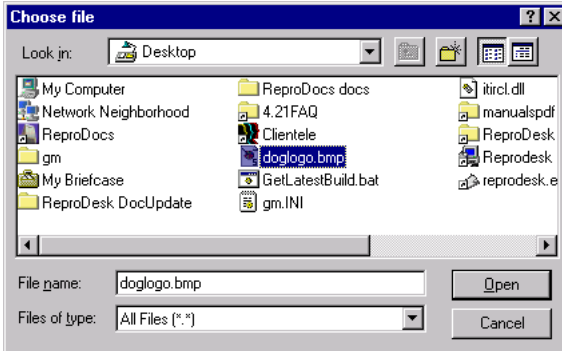
2 Navigate to the image you wish to use.
Note: *The recommended format is '.GIF'.*

3 Click 'Open'.
The path to the bitmap appears in the Logo Bitmap text field.
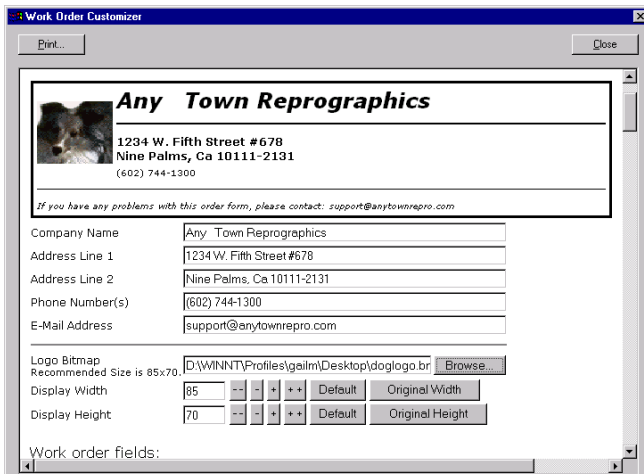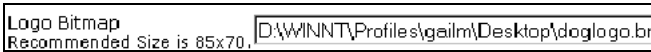
4 If necessary, use the plus and minus to increase or decrease the height and width of the logo.

Work order fields

Work order fields let you control how fields appear to clients.

- Required: Required fields must be visible to the client so that Repro Desk's accounting functions can process them. Clients must fill in the required fields before they send jobs.
- Visible: You can make non-required fields visible to the client. Visible fields appears on a work order but not are not mandatory.
- Always Blank: When a field is not visible, the Always Blank check box will be selected automatically.
- Default Value: Visible fields can have default values so that clients don't need to enter information that will be the same for each job submitted.

Several work order fields contain lists from which the client can choose from a set of options. These lists can be easily customized.

▼ **To remove text that is no longer needed**

1 Select the text.

2 Press 'Delete'.

3 Click the 'Reformat Lines' hyperlink to remove any blank lines from the list.
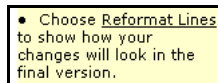
▼ **To add text at the end of a list**

1 Click at the end of the last line of text.

2 Press 'Enter'.

3 Type the new text.

▼ **To add a line of text within the list**

1 Click at the end of a line of text.

2 Press 'Enter'.

3 Type the new text.

Work order colors and fonts

The colors and fonts let you select typefaces, background colors and other visual elements.
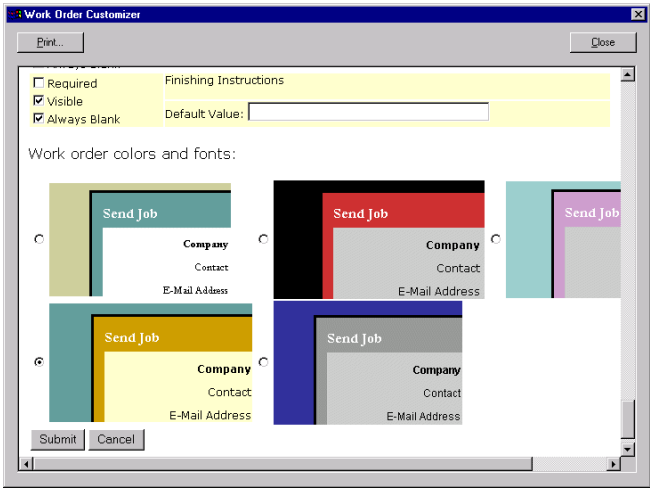
Preview the work order changes

You can view how the form will look with the options you have selected.

▼   **To view work order changes**

1 Click the 'Submit' button.
   The preview form appears:

2 Click 'Back' to make other changes in work order customizer.

3 Click 'Save Changes' to save the work order customizer options you selected. or,

4 Click 'Close' to close the form without saving changes.

Send the work order form to the customer

After you create a customized work order, you need to install it on the Remote client's machine.

▼ **Transfer customized work order**

1 Find the following newly created files in your Repro Desk installation directory (usually c:\ocerd):
   - logobitmap.gif
   - woinfo.xml.

2 Copy them to a floppy disk.

3 On the target machine, copy logobitmap.gif and woinfo.xml into the Repro Desk installation directory. (usually c:\ocerd).

Note: *Logobitmap2.gif is the default graphic that is installed with Repro Desk. If a customer chooses a different graphic, pmprotocol.dll copies it to the \ocerd directory, and renames it logobitmap.gif. If the customer adds a .jpeg, it will be renamed to .gif, and will still operate correctly.*

Restore the default work order

▼ **To restore the default work order**

1 Open the Work Order Customizer.

2 Click the 'New' button or choose the 'New' command from the File menu. A new pristine work order appears in the work order customizer window.

3 Click the 'Save' button or choose the 'Save' command from the File menu.

4 Save the new work order in your windows directory as 'wocust.ini'.

The work order is now restored to its original state.

Chapter 24
ApHost: Server

ApHost is a software application that can be used in combination with Repro Desk Server, to receive digital files by modem and ISDN connections.

Introduction

ApHost is a separate software application, that can be used to receive digital files by modem and ISDN connections (acting as normal modem). Files can be sent from a remote location, using ApModem. Incoming files will be saved in a queue, and can be accessed by Repro Desk as any other queue.

ApHost supports up to 8 phone lines.

Installation

ApHost is usually installed on the same PC as Repro Desk Server.

▼ **Install ApHost software**
1 Run 'setup.exe' from the installation disk.
Follow the instructions on the screen.
2 You will be asked to fill in your name, the name of your company and your registration number (CD Key).
3 Then you must specify the installation directory. You can change the default directory by using the 'Browse' option.
4 The next step is to specify the name of the Program folder. In this folder you will find the icon to start up the ApHost application.
5 The software will be installed.

Note: *You can select the 'Uninstall ApHost' icon in the specified folder to uninstall the ApHost application.*

Migration from Hyperaccess

If you have used Hyperaccess for remote communication with the previous release (R4.0) of Repro Desk, you can convert your list of Hyperaccess user names and passwords to a list that can be read by ApHost. For this purpose a special tool called 'Appass' is included.

Appass does NOT preserve user rights defined in Hyperaccess. Privileges for all users are set to 'User' status. This means that the users may send (but not receive) files, and only in a specified directory (for example, INCOMING\00012345, but not INCOMING\00012344 or any other

directory). Changing user's rights must be done manually within ApHost (see 'Users' on page 433).

Note: *Apass creates a new password file. If you have already created users and passwords in ApHost, you must either add the old users and passwords manually to the new list, or use Apass as described below and add the new users and passwords manually.*

▼ **Convert user list from Hyperaccess to ApHost**

1 Create a new folder called 'Temp' in the installation directory of ApHost.
2 Copy the file APPASS.EXE from the installation directory to the 'Temp' directory.
3 Search for the Hyperaccess password file called HAHOST.PWD in the HAWIN directory, and copy this file to the new Temp directory you just created.
4 Launch a DOS command prompt, and go to the new Temp directory, containing APPASS.EXE and HAHOST.PWD.
5 Type: 'appass hahost.pwd' and press Enter.
   Appass should respond: 'What is the default directory for users?'
6 Enter the directory path where remote customers submit files (for example, D:\INCOMING), and press Enter.
   Note: *Do not enter the numbered directory (for example, 00012345). ApHost will create the numbered directories for you.*
   Appass should respond: 'All records will be created with base user rights locked to the directory: <directory path you just specified>'.
   Appass will list the name of each user that is processed, and create an ApHost password file called PASSWD.DAT.
7 If ApHost is running, exit ApHost.
8 Copy PASSWD.DAT to the ApHost installation directory.
9 Start ApHost.
10 To confirm a correct installation, use ApModem with a user name and password converted with Appass.

Start ApHost

You can start ApHost in several ways, just like any other windows program. Follow the procedure below.

▼ **Start ApHost**

1 Double click on the Aphost icon in the Program folder you specified during installation.
Note: *If you run ApHost for the first time, an error message may appear: 'Unable to create directory'. Click OK and follow the procedure as described in 'Preferences' on page 424.*

2 If no phone lines are specified, the following window will appear:
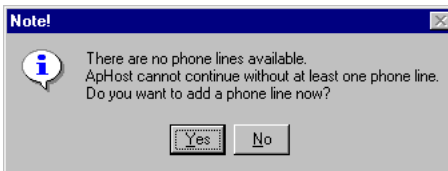
[280] Pop up window if no phone lines are specified

■ If you want to specify phone lines now, click 'Yes' (see 'Add a new phone line or change properties of existing phone line' on page 426).
■ If you want to do this another time, click 'No', and follow the procedures in 'Preparations' on page 424.

3 If no users are specified, the following window will appear:
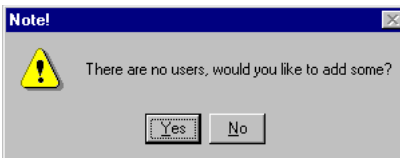
[281] Pop up window if no users are specified

■ If you want to specify users now, click 'Yes' (see 'Add a new user or change properties of an existing user' on page 434). It is however recommended to set your Preferences first.
■ In that case click 'No', and follow the procedures as described in 'Preparations' on page 424.

4 The ApHost main window will appear, containing four sub windows as shown in the next figure:
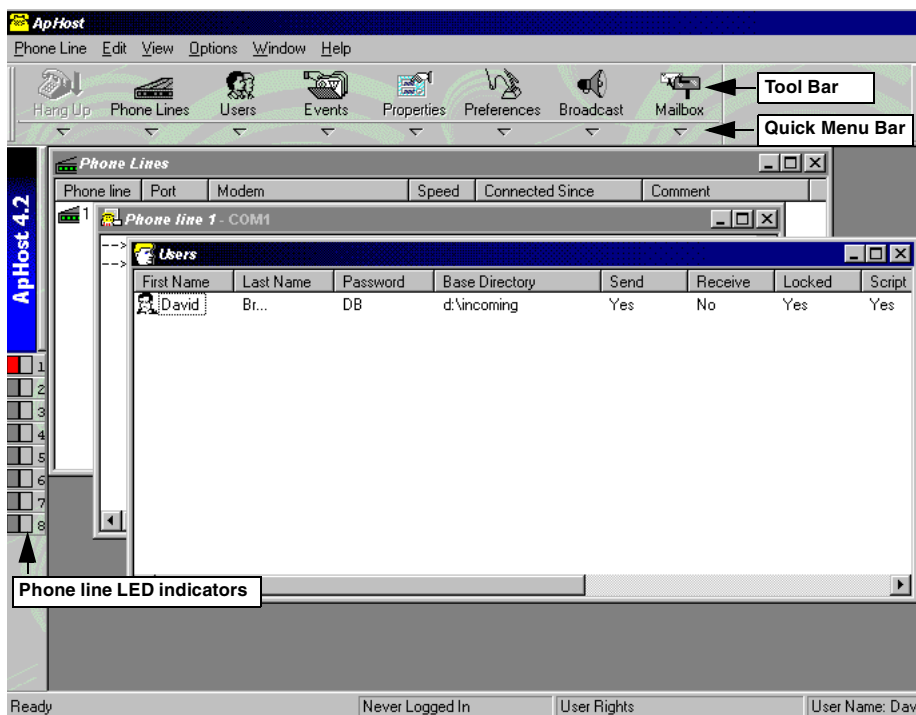
[282] Main window APHost

To stop ApHost

To exit the ApHost application, follow the next procedure:

▼　　　**To stop ApHost**

1 Select 'Exit' in the 'Phone line' menu in the upper left corner of the main menu:

[283] Stopping ApHost

Preparations

Before you can work with ApHost, you need to define several settings and default values. The following sections explain how to modify these settings to match your configuration or personal wishes.

Preferences

Preferences are a number of settings you can use to customize the ApHost application to your own needs.

Default home directory Here you can specify the default base directory for incoming files (for example, D:\INCOMING). The directory that is specified here, will be filled in automatically as default directory in the 'Add user' menu. If the specified directory does not yet exist, it will be created automatically the next time you start up ApHost.

Greeting file name You can specify the name of a text file, containing a greeting message that is displayed when a user logs in. To create a new file, fill in a name (for example, welcome.txt), and click Edit. A window will pop up, asking you if a new file should be created. Click Yes to open the new text file (in Notebook), and type your welcome message. Then save the text file and exit Notebook.

Answer number of rings: The number of rings before the modem answers. Default: 1.

Login attempts: The number of times a user is allowed to log in. Default: 3.

Inactivity timeout: The number of minutes after which the connection will be closed automatically if no activity takes place. Default: 5 minutes.

Initialization timeout: The number of seconds after which the connection will be closed if the initialization procedure is not succeeded.

Days to keep events: Number of days after which events will be deleted from the events view.

Events-Save to file: You can specify to save all events in a file.

Events-Detailed information: If you select 'Detailed information', additional communication information will be added to each event.

▼ **Change preferences**

1 Click the 'Preferences' button in the tool bar.

[284] Preferences button

2 The following window will appear:
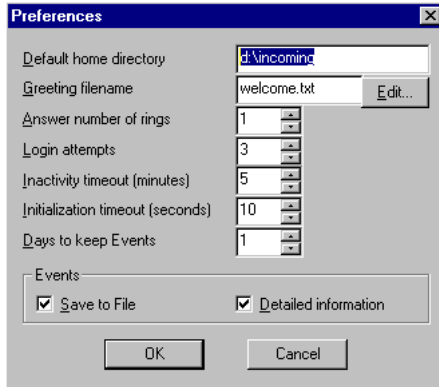
[285] Preferences window

3 Specify your settings.
4 Click OK to save new settings

Phone lines

Aphost can support up to 8 phone lines for communication purposes. If you run ApHost for the first time, one phone line is already specified as an example. Use the following procedure to change the settings of this phone line:

▼ **Add a new phone line or change properties of existing phone line**

1 Click the 'Phone Line' button in the tool bar.

[286] Phone lines button

2 The following window will appear:
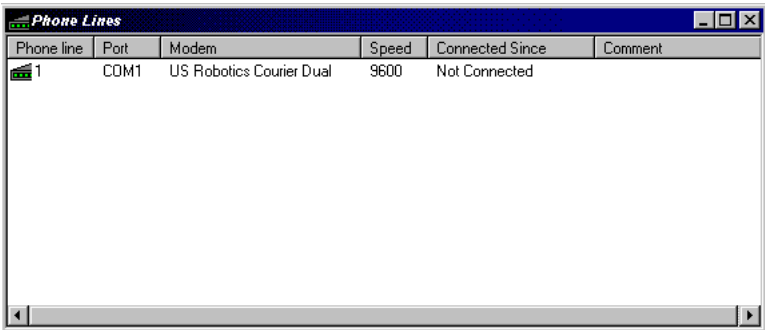
[287] The Phone lines window

3 If you want to add a new phone line, select 'Add' in the 'Phone lines' quick menu in the toolbar.

[288] Select 'Add' in the 'Phone lines' Quick menu

4 Or, if you want to change the properties of an existing phone line, select this phone line by clicking its icon in the first column.
Then click the 'Properties' button in the tool bar.

[289] Properties button

5 The following window will appear:
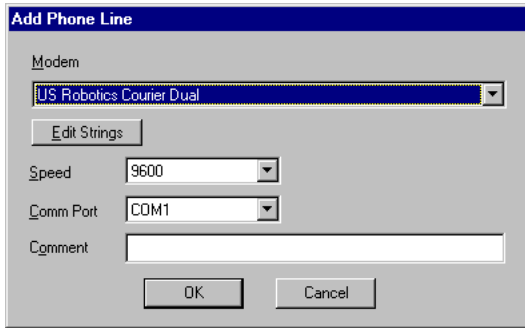
[290] Add Phone line window

Note: *If you are changing the properties of an existing phone line, the window title will be 'Phone Line Properties'.*

6 Select the modem you are using. The initialisation strings will be filled in automatically.
Note: *ApHost supports approximately 700 different modems. If your modem is not listed, choose 'US Robotics Courier Dual'.*

7 If your modem was not listed and you have chosen 'US Robotics Courier Dual', click the 'Edit Strings' button. The following window will appear:
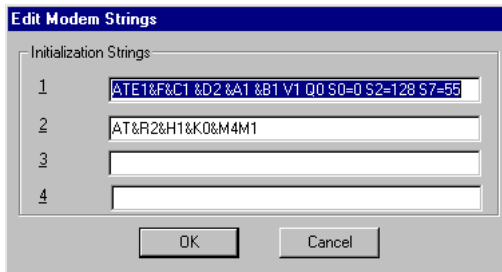
[291] Edit Modem Strings window

Note: *Consult your modem manufacturer's user manual for initialisation strings*
Clear the strings that are currently shown, and specify the initialisation strings of your modem (consult your modem manufacturer's user manual).

8 Specify the speed of the modem, and the communication port of your PC to which it is connected.

9 You can use the Comment field to specify a specific name for the modem.

10 Click OK to save your settings.

If you added a new phone line, the following window will appear:
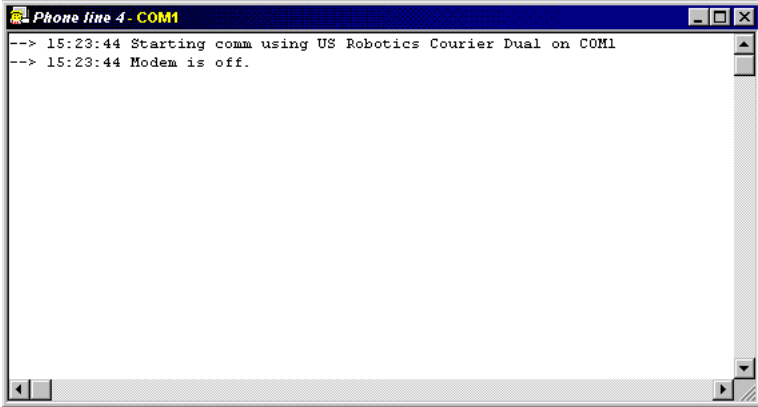
[292] Phone line x window

Note: *As long as phone line x is activated, its 'Phone line x' window is also active. You can minimize such a window without any problem, but if you would close it, you would also deactivate its phone line (a warning is displayed).*

Delete a phone line Usually there is no need to delete a phone line. You can change the properties of an existing phone line (see 'Add a new phone line or change properties of existing phone line' on page 426), or temporarily de-activate a phone line (see 'De-activate a phone line' on page 437). If you want to delete a phone line, follow the next procedure:

▼ **Delete a phone line**

1 Click the 'Phone line' button in the tool bar.

[293] Phone Lines button

2 The 'Phone Line' window will appear (see figure 287 on page 426).

3 Select the phone line you want to delete by clicking its icon in the first column.

4 Select 'Delete' in the 'Phone lines' Quick menu.
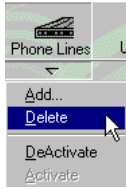
[294] Select 'Delete' in the 'Phone lines' Quick menu

5 The selected phone line will be deleted after confirmation.

Create queues

For each remote user who wants to send jobs to ApHost, you can specify a queue to receive these jobs. First you must create these queues with Repro Desk, as explained in the following example:

▼ **Create an incoming queue**

1 Start up Repro Desk

2 Select 'Create New Queue' in the 'Queue' quick menu
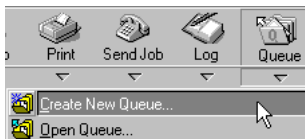
[295] Select 'Create New Queue in the 'Queue' Quick menu

3 The following window will appear:
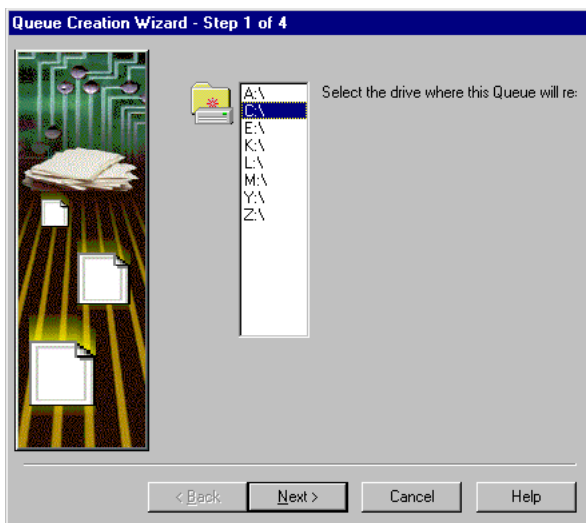
[296] Queue Creation Wizard - Step 1 of 4

4 Select the drive where the new queue will reside, and click 'Next'.
The following window will appear:
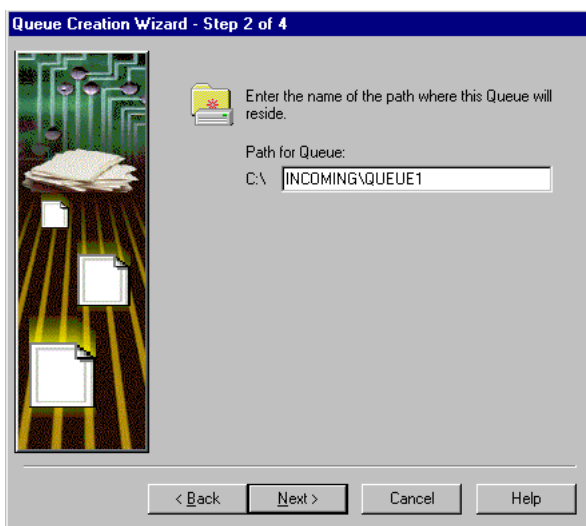
[297] Queue Creation Wizard - Step 2 of 4

5 Delete whatever is already filled in, specify the complete path and name of the new queue directory (for example, INCOMING\QUEUE1), and click 'Next'.

The following window will appear:
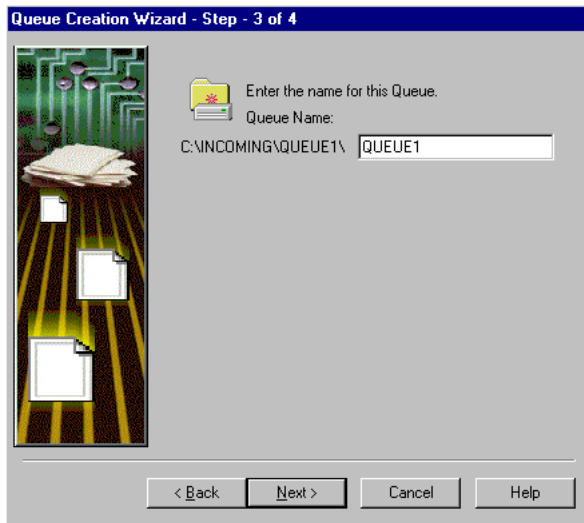
[298] Queue Creation Wizard - Step 3 of 4

6 Delete whatever is filled in, and specify only the name of the queue (for example, QUEUE1).
Note: *It is recommended to use the same name as you specified in the previous screen.*

7 Click 'Next'

The following window will appear:

[299] Queue Creation Wizard - Step 4 of 4

8 Select the following options:
- Flash the queue: The queue window will flash when a new job arrives (clicking on the job will stop flashing).
- Print report to windows printer: the work order of each new job will automatically be printed to a Windows printer (to configure the Windows printer, select 'Print Setup' from the 'Print' Quick menu).
- Automatically scan for new jobs: the queue will automatically be scanned for new incoming jobs. This option must be selected to make use of the previous options.

9 Make sure all other options are deselected.

10 Click 'Finish'.

The queue window of the new queue will appear:
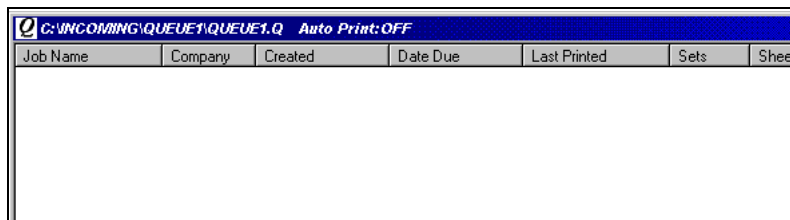
[300] Queue window

Note: *More information about the queue options can be found in 'Queue options' on page 207.*

Users

Remote users who want to send files to Aphost, must be registered first. For each user you can specify a name, password, base directory for incoming files and user rights.

To assign rights to a user you can select one of the following user types:

User: Recommended user type for most purposes

Administrator: Only for internal use

Custom: You can enable each right individually. Use with caution.

Disabled: No rights. Can be used to disable all rights for a certain user, without deleting the user from the user list.

The following rights are enabled for each user type:

	User	Administrator	Custom	Disabled
Send	*	*	(*)	
Receive		*	(*)	
Script	*		(*)	
Locked	*		(*)	
Change dir		*	(*)	
Make dir		*	(*)	
Directory		*	(*)	

[301] User rights for each typical user

- Send: Caller may send files to Aphost
- Receive: Caller may receive files from Aphost
- Script: Aphost will connect each caller to a separate numbered directory for example, D:\INCOMING\00012345)
- Locked: Caller can not change directory above the base directory
- Change dir: Caller may change directories
- Make dir: Caller may create a directory
- Directory: caller may see the contents of a directory

▼　**Add a new user or change properties of an existing user**

1 Click the 'Users' button in the tool bar.

[302] Users button

2 The following window will appear:
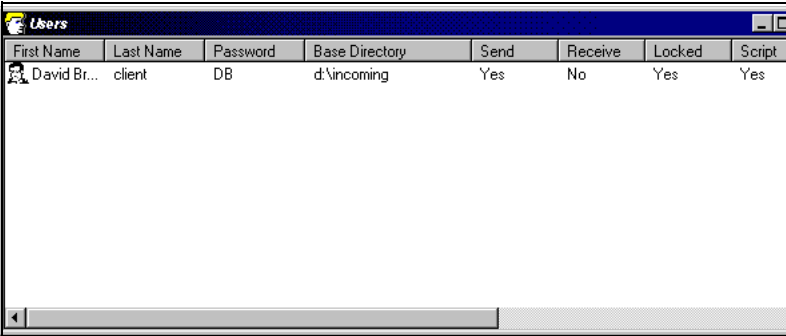
[303] The Users window

3 If you want to add a new user, select 'Add' in the 'Users' quick menu in the toolbar.

[304] Selecting 'Add' in the 'Users' quick menu

4 Or, if you want to change the properties of an existing user, select this user by clicking its icon in the first column.
Then click the 'Properties' button in the tool bar.

[305] Properties button

5 The following window will appear:

[306] Add User window

Note: *If you are changing the properties of an existing user, the window title will be 'User Properties'.*

6 Select the 'First Name' field, and specify the name of the user.
Se also 'Set up ApHost for the New User' on page 36.

7 Select the 'Last Name' field and specify 'client'.
Note: *If you are receiving files with ApModem, the Last Name must be 'client'.*

8 Select the Password field and specify the password of the specified user.

9 Select the Base directory field and specify the path and name of the queue in which the incoming files are received (for example, D:\INCOMING\QUEUE1).
Note: *Default the base directory that is specified in the Preferences menu (for example, D:\INCOMING) is already filled in (see 'Preferences' on page 424).*
Note: *The specified queue must already exist (see 'Create queues' on page 429).*

10 Specify the Rights: 'User' is recommended for most purposes.

11 Click OK to save your settings.

▼   **Delete a user**

1 Click the 'Users' button in the tool bar.

[307] Users button

2 The Users window will appear (see figure 303 on page 434).

3 Select the user you want to delete by clicking the icon in the first column.

4 Select 'Delete' in the 'Users' quick menu in the toolbar.
The selected user will be deleted after confirmation.

Use ApHost

After starting up ApHost, all specified phone lines are activated automatically. For each phone line a 'Phone line x' window will be created that may not be closed as long as the phone line is active. You can however minimize a 'Phone line x' window without any problem.

Incoming files will be received automatically, so that you can minimize the main window and let ApHost work in the background.

Received files can be picked up by Repro Desk, by opening the queue of their incoming directory.

De-activate a phone line

If you want to shut off a phone line for a while, you can deactivate it as follows:

▼   **De-activate a phone line**

1   Click the 'Phone line' button in the tool bar.

[308] Phone line button

2   The 'phone lines' window will appear (see figure 287 on page 426).
3   Select the phone line you want to de-activate by clicking its icon in the first column.
4   Select 'DeActivate' in the 'Phone lines' quick menu in the toolbar.

[309] Select 'DeActivate' in the 'Phone Lines' Quick menu

5   The selected phone line is deactivated after confirmation. The 'Phone line x' window will be closed, and the phone line can not be used until it is activated again.

▼ **Activate a phone line**

1 Click the 'Phone line' button in the tool bar.

[310] Phone line button

2 The 'Phone line' window will appear (see figure 287 on page 426).

3 Select the phone line you want to activate by clicking its icon in the first column.

4 Select 'Activate' in the 'Phone lines' quick menu in the toolbar.
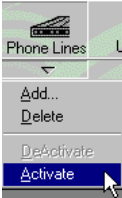
[311] Select 'Activate' in the 'Phone Lines' Quick menu

5 The 'Phone line x' menu will appear, showing all activities on the selected phone line:


```
--> 15:23:44 Starting comm using US Robotics Courier Dual on COM1
--> 15:23:44 Modem is off.
```
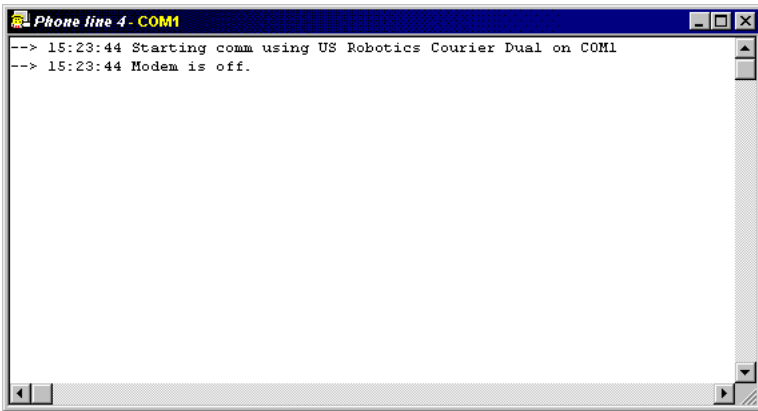
[312] The Phone line x window

Note: *As long as phone line x is activated, its 'Phone line x' window is also active. You can minimize such a window without any problem, but if you would close it, you would also deactivate its phone line (a warning is displayed).*

Get information about a specific phone line

The status of each phone line is shown by the colour of 8 pairs of LED
indicators at the left side of the main window.

[313] Phone line LED indicators

Each pair of LEDs represents a phone line. The LED on the left displays the
current state of the line. The LED on the right shows the activity on the line:

Left LED color	Meaning
Dark Gray	Not Configured
Gray	Deactivated
Red	Error
Yellow	Waiting for calls
Cyan	User logging in
Green	User has logged in successfully
Blue	User is transferring files
White	User is asking a question

[314] Explanation of the LEFT LED color

Right LED color	Meaning
Gray	No activity in the past 1/2 second
Green	Activity has occurred in the past 1/2 second

[315] Explanation of the RIGHT LED color

▼ **To open the 'Phone line x' window**

1 Double click on the LED of an active phone line.

The following window will appear:
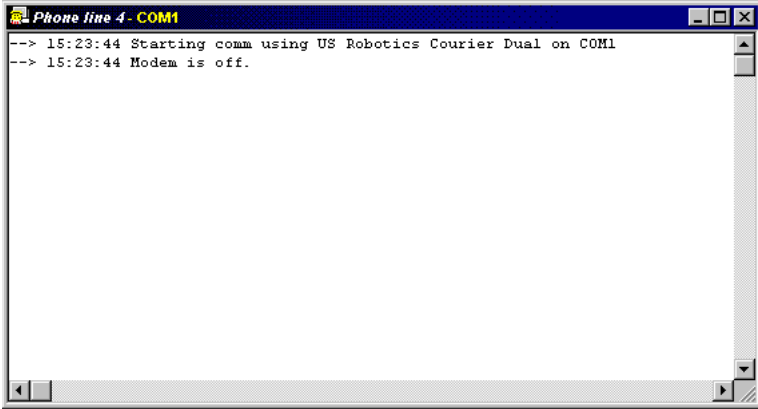
[316] Phone line x window

Note: *If you double click on the LED of an inactive phone line, you are asked if this phone line should be made active.*

2 The 'Phone line x' window shows information about all activities on the selected phone line.

Get information about all phone lines

All events on all phone lines are recorded, and can be shown in the 'Events' window. You can choose for detailed event information, and saving events in a file (see 'Preferences' on page 424).

▼ **Open the Events window**
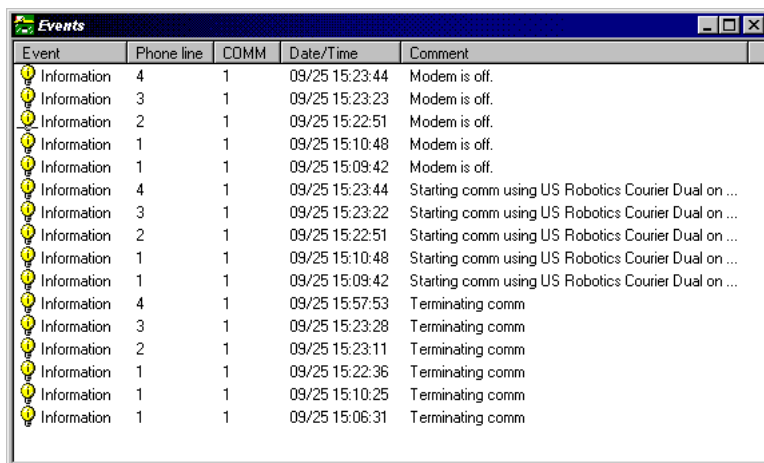
1 Click on the 'Events' button in the toolbar.

[317] Events button

2 The following window will appear:

[318] Events window

3 The events window shows all events on all phone lines. You can change the order in which the events are displayed, by clicking on one of the column headings: Event, Phone Line, COMM, Date/time or Comment. Default the order in which the events are displayed is determined by the date/time.

Note: *The number of days that events are kept in this window, can be specified in the Preferences window (see 'Preferences' on page 424).*

To make sure that the events window shows the latest events, you can generate a refresh:

▼ **Refresh events**

1 Click the 'Events' button in the tool bar.

[319] Events button

2 The Events window will appear (see figure 318).

3 Select 'Refresh Events' in the 'Events' Quick menu.

[320] Select 'Refresh Events' in the 'Events' Quick menu

4 The Event window will be updated with the latest events.

You can clear all events from the Events window as follows:

▼ **Clear all events**

1 Select 'Clear events' from the 'Events' Quick menu.

[321] Select 'Clear Events' from the 'Events' Quick menu

2 All events are cleared after confirmation.

To hang up a phone line

You can disconnect a caller from ApHost as follows:

▼ **Hang up a specific phone line**

1 Click the 'Phone lines' button in the tool bar.

[322] Phone Lines button

2 The following window will appear:
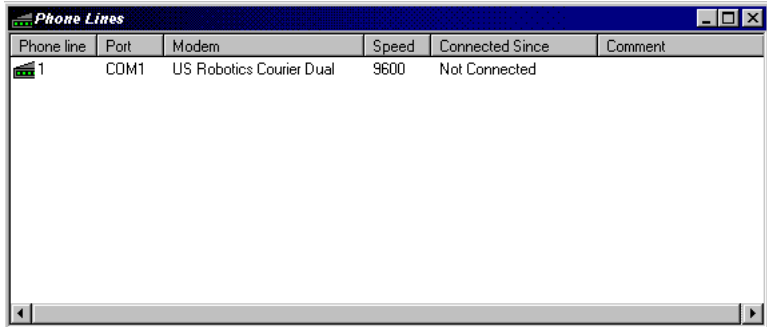
[323] Phone lines window

3 Select the phone line you want to disconnect by clicking its icon in the first column.

4 Click the 'Hang Up' button in the tool bar.

[324] Hang Up button

5 The selected phone line will be disconnected after confirmation.

▼   **Hang up all phone lines**

1 Select 'All Phone Lines' in the 'Hang Up' quick menu.

[325] Select 'All Phone Lines' from the 'Hang Up' Quick menu

2 All phone lines will be disconnected after confirmation.

Broadcast a message to remote users

You can send a message to all remote users that are logged on.

▼ **Broadcasting a message to remote users**

1 Click the 'Broadcast' button in the toolbar.

[326] Broadcast button

2 The following window will appear:
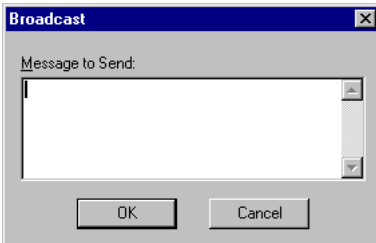
[327] Broadcast window

3 Type in your message
4 Click OK to send your message to all users that are logged on.

Read messages from remote users

Remote users can send messages to ApHost. If a new message arrives, the 'Mailbox' button in the toolbar will be coloured and contains a larger envelope.

▼ **Read messages from remote users**

1 Click the 'Mailbox' button in the toolbar.

[328] Mailbox button

2 The following window will appear:
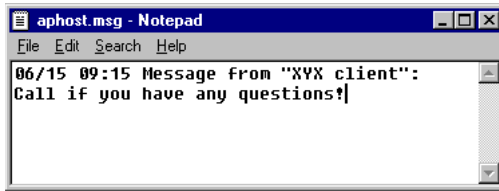
[329] Example of Mailbox window, displaying a message in Notepad

Chapter 25
ApModem: Remote Client

This chapter describes 16-bit and 32-bit versions of ApModem, the communications program used to transfer files from Repro Desk Remote or Repro Desk Remote Plus to Repro Desk Server.

océ

Introduction

This chapter describes ApModem, which is a modem transfer program designed to transfer files created using Repro Desk Remote to a computer running Océ Repro Desk Server.

There are two versions of ApModem, one for 16-bit Windows environments (Windows 3.x) and one for 32-bit Windows environments (Windows 95 and Windows NT). Both versions are referred to in this chapter generically as 'ApModem' and differences between the functionality of the two versions are documented where they exist.

After you have installed Repro Desk Remote, you can use ApModem to transfer jobs from a remote system to a central server. ApModem uses the either the ZMODEM or YMODEM file transfer protocols.

Note: *ApModem is not a general purpose terminal emulator; rather, it is specifically designed to transfer Repro Desk job files in the most efficient manner possible.*

This chapter is intended to document ApModem for administration and problem diagnosis.

Overview

To a Repro Desk Remote user, ApModem is generally transparent after initial configuration. When a user sends a job via ApModem from Repro Desk Remote using the 'Send Job' button, a simple status dialog is displayed. The status dialog includes information on the connection status, script status, and file transfer progress. An example ApModem status dialog is shown below:
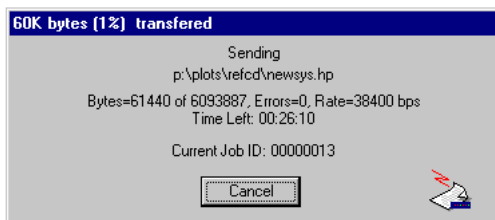
[330] ApModem status dialog

If ApModem encounters an error during file transfer, the main ApModem window opens, containing more details on the nature of the failure. The main window also allows access to ApModem configuration and 'manual' functions.

The figure below shows the ApModem main window:
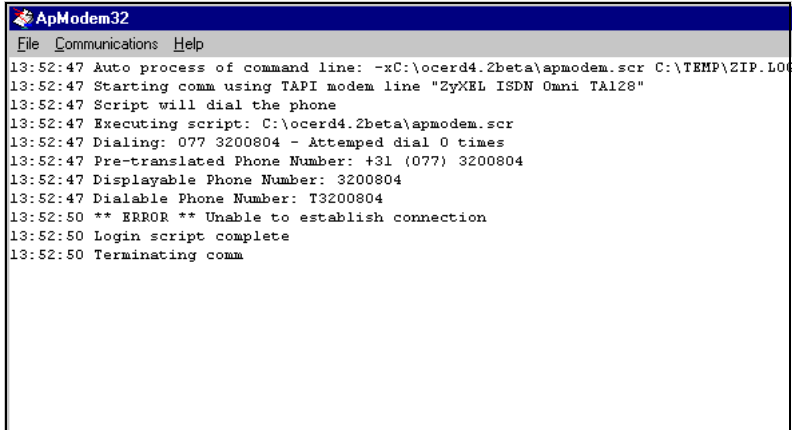
[331] ApModem main window

Menu selections

You can make the following menu selections:

File

Send one This selection is available only when connected to a server and allows for the transmission of a single file.

Send Many When you choose this command after connecting to a server, you are presented with a dialog that will let you choose a 'file of files'. This 'file of files' is a text file listing the fully qualified paths to the actual files you want to transmit. For example if you specify a file which contains the following 5 lines, the 5 files specified will get transmitted. This 'file of files' gets generated when 'Send Job' is performed. Typically, 'Send Many' is used for debugging purposes, and the file specified would be the 'zip.log' file created when sending a job.

```
C:\PM\STANDARD.PEN
C:\VIC\5002-A1.VIC
P:\SAMPLES\5002-A1.VIC
C:\VIC\5002-A2.VIC
C:\TEMP\JOB1.JOB
```

Display log Displays the current log file. If you have not activated logging before, an error is displayed indicating that the log file could not be found.

Exit Exits ApModem. Disconnects from the server if required.

Communications

Retry request If ApModem was started with a 'command line option' (as is the case when it is invoked by the 'Send Job' button in Repro Desk), and the request fails, this option is enabled. By selecting 'Retry Request', the failed request can be retried.

Connect This command causes ApModem to connect to the server. The modem will be initialized and the script will be executed.

Disconnect Once connected to the server, this command will disconnect ApModem from that server. The modem will drop carrier.

Send one This command functions identically to the 'Send one' command in the File menu, except that it does not require ApModem to be connected to a server. Once you have chosen the file to send, ApModem will dial the server and transfer the file.

Send many This command functions identically to the 'Send many' command in the File menu, except that it does not require ApModem to be connected to a server. Once you have chosen the 'file of files' to send, ApModem will dial the server and transfer the file list.

Settings Depending on the version of Windows you are using, either 16-bit Windows 3.x or 32-bit Windows 95 or Windows NT, you will see one of two configuration dialogs when you choose 'Settings' from the Communications menu. ApModem settings for both 16 and 32-bit platforms are detailed in the following sections.

Windows 3.x configuration

The following dialog appears when you configure ApModem for 16-bit Windows platforms:
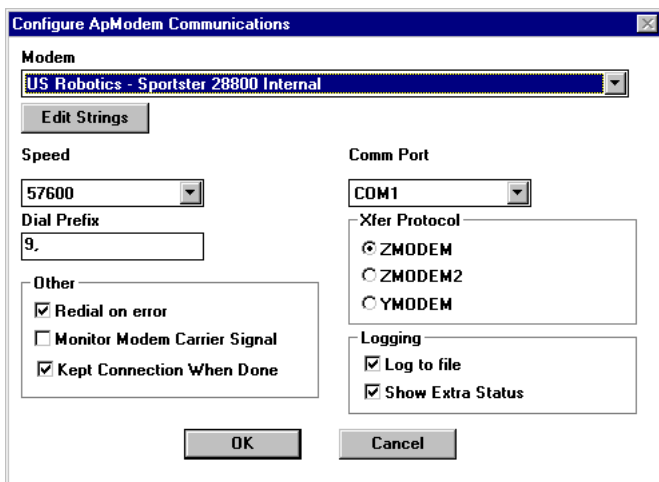
[332] Configure ApModem for 16-bit Windows platform

The following settings are available in this dialog:

Modem type The type of modem you are using. Select the closest match. The modem types and strings are contained in the jobcomm.ini file in the Windows System directory. Please note that those modem types which specify a speed (for example, 'Hayes Compatible 9600'), do not actually affect transmission speed.

Speed This is the speed (baud rate) which will be used to communicate between your computer and modem. The value you select should be equal to greater than the speed of the modem. On Windows 3.1, you may not be able to use speeds greater than 9600. If numerous communications errors occur, try selecting a lower speed. Unless you are running over ISDN, do not select a speed greater than 38400.

Comm port This is the communications port to which your modem is connected. Only available ports for your system will be displayed.

Dial prefix Any prefix that needs to be added to the phone number contained in the ApModem script. For example, if you must specify an area code, you could enter '1-602' in this field, or '9' to get an outside line, as shown above.

Edit strings Allows editing of the initialization and dial strings for the selected modem. The following dialog will appear:
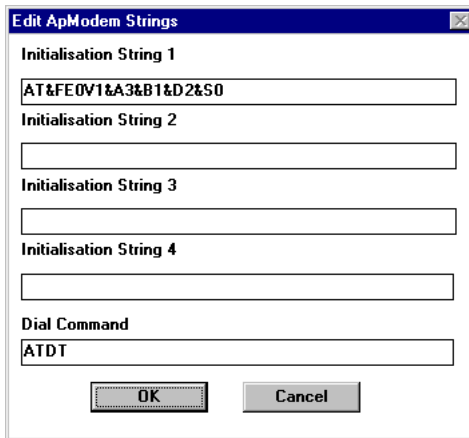
[333] Edit initialization and dial strings

Edit the dial strings, and click OK. Use your modem reference manual as a guide. ApModem assumes that Hardware (RTS) flow control is enabled.

To reset the strings to their default values, select a different modem on the 'Settings' dialog, click OK, reopen the settings dialog, and then reselect your real modem.

Xfer Protocol You have your choice of three transfer protocols:
- Zmodem (default)
- Ymodem
- Zmodem2

In general, Zmodem will usually provide optimum performance for a wide variety of configurations. If you find that you are having problems with transfer errors, you can choose Ymodem which is slightly slower, or, conversely, if you are having no transfer problems you can choose Zmodem2 which may offer a slight performance gain.

Log to file When enabled, this option logs session connection information to a plain text file, 'apmodem.log' in your Repro Desk installation directory. ApModem will append messages from all future sessions to the end of this file. ApModem log files can be useful for troubleshooting communications problems.

Show extra status When enabled, this option prints additional connection information to the ApModem console. The additional information will also be saved to the ApModem logfile if logging is enabled.

Redial on error If this box is checked, ApModem will automatically attempt to redial the server if the server fails to answer, or if the line is busy.

Monitor modem carrier signal If this box is checked, ApModem will drop the connection if the CD (carrier detect) signal is temporarily lost. Some modems require this option to be disabled.

Kept connection when done This option is only applicable when transferring jobs using the Send button in Repro Desk. If this option is enabled, ApModem will display a dialog indicating that the transfer was successful before dropping the line.

Windows 95/NT configuration

The following dialog appears when you configure ApModem for 32-bit Windows platforms:
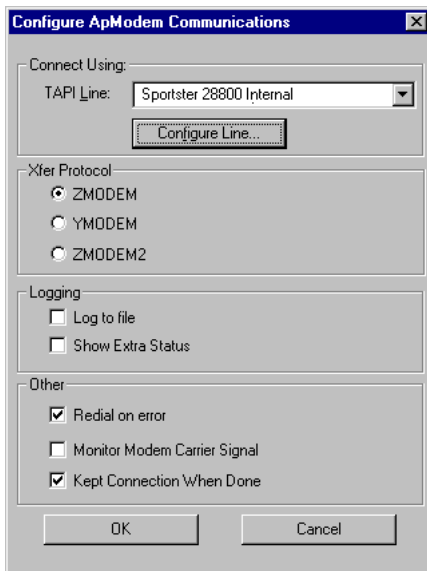
[334] Configure ApModem for 32-bit Window platforms

TAPI line Choose from the available installed modems. For information on installing modems under Windows 95/NT, please refer to your operating system documentation.

Configure line This button brings up the configuration properties for the TAPI line you have selected.The contents of this dialog will vary depending upon the capabilities of your device. An example configuration dialog is shown below:
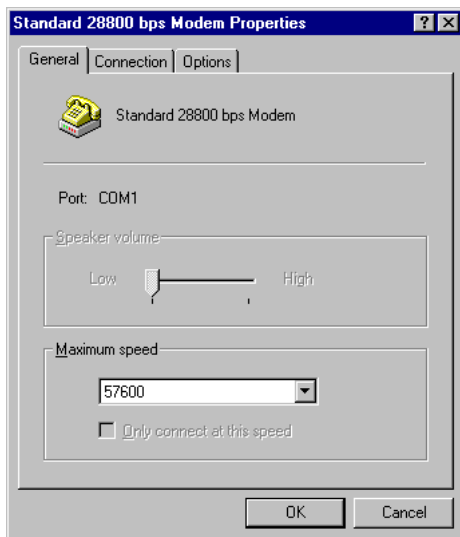
[335] Configuration properties for the TAPI line

For information on configuring your paticular modem, please refer to manufacturer instructions.

Xfer protocol You have your choice of three transfer protocols:
- Zmodem (default)
- Ymodem
- Zmodem2

In general, Zmodem will usually provide optimum performance for a wide variety of configurations. If you find that you are having problems with transfer errors, you can choose Ymodem which is slightly slower, or, conversely, if you are having no transfer problems you can choose Zmodem2 which may offer a slight performance gain.

Log to file When enabled, this option logs session connection information to a plain text file, 'appmodem.txt' in your ApModem installation directory. ApModem will append messages from all future sessions to the end of this file. ApModem log files can be useful for troubleshooting communications problems.

Show extra status When enabled, this option prints additional connection information to the ApModem console. The additional information will also be saved to the ApModem logfile if logging is enabled.

Redial on error If this box is checked, ApModem will automatically attempt to redial the server if the server fails to answer, or if the line is busy.

Monitor modem carrier signal If this box is checked, ApModem will drop the connection if the CD (carrier detect) signal is temporarily lost. Some modems require this option to be disabled.

Kept connection when done This option is only applicable when transferring jobs using the Send button in Repro Desk. If this option is enabled, ApModem will display a dialog indicating that the transfer was successful before dropping the line.

When you click OK, the configuration is validated and the settings are saved. Make sure your modem is connected and is powered on. If there are any errors, you are given the option of continuing anyway.

Script

This option is available only if the 'Lock' key in the jobcomm.ini file is set equal to 0. Selecting 'Script' from the Communications menu brings up the following dialog:
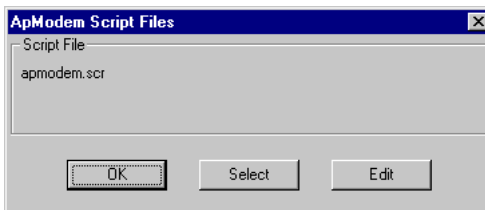
[336] Handling Script file

Select This button brings up a dialog which lets you select a different script.

Edit This button opens the selected script in your default editor (usually notepad.exe).

Help

About The About command in the Help menu brings up the following dialog on 16-bit platforms:
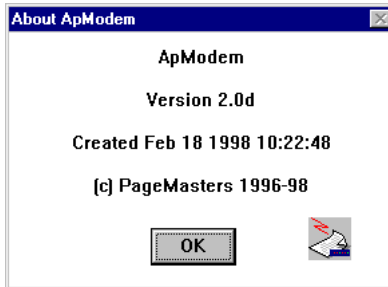
[337] Reference and version number on 16-bit platform

and the following dialog on 32-bit platforms:

[338] Reference and version number on 32-bit platform

When contacting support, please reference the version number and the creation date.

Script file

The default script file used by ApModem is named 'apmodem.scr' and is
located in the ApModem program directory. The template script file supplied
on the setup diskette is not compressed and can be edited before sending the
diskette to a customer to install. The following example script file can be used
to dial the XYZ Company BBS.

Note: *When creating a script either from the CD-ROM or via the Dcustom
program, an option is provided to encrypt the script. If the script is encrypted
it cannot be edited.*

```
; this is a sample script file.  It can be edited to match
; your environment.  You will need to set the phone number, the
; first name last name, and password
;
;
; Set Timeouts, etc.
;
TIMEOUT 50
RETRY 10
;
; dial the phone
;
DIAL (your server phone number goes here)
;
; show user a status message
;
STATUS Logging on to XYZ Company BBS
;
; wait for the first name prompt from the server
;
WAITFOR ame
SEND (first name of user login goes here)
;
; wait for the last name prompt from the server
;
WAITFOR ame
SEND (last name of user login goes here)
;
; wait for the password prompt from the server
;
WAITFOR sword
SENDPW (Password goes here)
```

This script performs the following functions:

- Sets the timeout and retry values
- Dials the phone
- Display a message in the user status box
- Waits for the first name prompt
- Sends 'xyz' as the first name
- Waits for the last name prompt
- Sends 'client' as the last name
- waits for the password prompt
- sends 'iamhere'

Script commands

ApModem supports the following script commands. Lines starting with a space or a semicolon are considered comments and are ignored when the script is executed. The script commands must be in upper case. If any error is encountered when executing the script, the script is terminated.

DIAL format: DIAL <phonenumber>

Dials the phone number, <phonenumber>, establishing a connection to the server.

PROMPTFOR format: PROMPTFOR <message>

The message string specified by <message> is displayed in a dialog box requiring a user response. The response data is then sent to the server. You can use PROMPTFOR to request information from a user such as login name and password rather than hard-coding that information in the script. The following example prompts for a first name:

```
;
; wait for the first name prompt from the server and ask the
user
; for the value;
WAITFOR ame
PROMPTFOR First Name?
```

PROMPTPW Format: PROMPTPW <message>

PROMPTPW works in the same manner as PROMPTFOR; however, when the user enters data, the data has the password attribute and is shown as one or more asterisks. Also, the value entered is never shown in the main window or recorded in the log file.

RETRY Format: RETRY <number>

Specifies the number of times a command is attempted before ApModem reports an error. This value does not apply to the DIAL command.

SEND Format: SEND <string>

Sends a string to the server.

SENDPW Format: SENDPW <string>

Similar to SEND, but the string is not displayed in the main window or recorded to the log file.

STATUS Format: STATUS <message>

Displays a custom message in the status dialog.

TIMEOUT Format: TIMEOUT <number>

Specifies how long to wait between RETRY attempts. The <number> specifies the number of system clock ticks. The system clock ticks 18 times a second, so a value of 18 would cause a delay of 1 second.

WAITFOR Format: WAITFOR <string>

Waits for the specified string to be received from the server.

Create script files

The Diskette Customizer utility is included with Repro Desk Server which can be used by a reprographer to generate an ApModem script file and write the script file to a client's Repro Desk Remote diskette.

▼ **To create a custom ApModem diskette**

1 Double-click the Diskette Customizer icon in the Repro Desk program group or folder.
The following dialog is displayed:

[339] Diskette Customizer

2 Verify that 'Customize for ApModem' is checked and fill in the the following fields:
- 'Your Company Name' Enter the name of the company that ApModem will dial. When dialing, ApModem will display this name as the system being called. The default value for this field will be the company name entered when Repro Desk was installed.
- 'Your Server Phone Number' Enter the phone number of the remote system.
- 'User First Name' Enter the remote customer's first name. This is the first name that will be used to login to the server.
- 'User Last Name' Enter the remote customer's last name. This is the last name that will be used to login to the server

- ■ 'Password' Enter the customer's password.
- ■ Optionally check 'Encrypt Script'. This will prevent an ApModem user from later changing the script.

3 Click the 'Continue' button.

Diskette Customizer will ask you for the location of apmodem.scr.

4 Select apmodem.scr from the installation CD or disk one of your installation floppies.

5 Click OK.

The script will be saved to the disk.

JOBCOMM.INI file keys

The 'jobcomm.ini' file, located in the main Windows directory, contains the settings used by ApModem. While most of the settings are modified by the ApModem configuration dialog, there is one setting that is user editable:

Lock Specifies whether or not the 'Script' command is available in the Communications menu. The Script command brings up a dialog which allows you to select and edit script files. If Lock=1, the script selection is not available, if Lock=0, the user can access the Script dialog and edit and select script files.

Note: *Please use caution when modifying 'jobcomm.ini.' Modifying certain settings can prevent ApModem from functioning reliably.*

Command line options

ApModem supports several command-line options. If any command line option is specified, only the 'status' dialog rather than the ApModem main window. If there is an error when transferring a file, the main ApModem window will open, displaying the details of the problem. The problem can then be corrected, and the request can be retried by selecting Retry Request from the Communications menu.

ApModem <filename> The <filename> specifies a 'file of files,' a file containing a list of filenames, with one filename per line. Each file specified in the 'file of files' is sent to the server. Please see "Send Many" on page 450 for more details on configuring a 'file of files.'

ApModem -s<filename> Send the single file specified by <filename> to the server.

ApModem -c Open ApModem's 'settings' dialog. This is used during setup/installation.

ApModem -x<scriptfile> Use the specified script file when connecting to the server instead of the script defined in ApModem Settings dialog.

Troubleshooting / FAQ

Tips

▼ **If you are having problems:**

1 Connect using another communications product and see if the results are similar. For example, if ApModem doesn't connect at the speed expected, ensure that your existing communication product functions correctly. If another product functions correctly, use the modem initialization strings from the other product in ApModem. Ensure that the string specifies hardware (RTS) flow control.

2 Use a terminal emulator, such as Window 'Terminal' or 'Hyperterm,' to ensure that the login sequence is correct

3 Drop the modem speed as defined in the 'Settings' dialog. Based on the version of Windows (Windows 3.1, Windows for Workgroups, Windows 95, Windows NT), as well as your hardware (i386, i486, Pentium), and the specific hardware used to communicate with your modem (8250 UART, 16450 UART, 16550 UART), performance may vary.

Note: *Setting the speed in the 'Settings' Dialog to a speed higher than the modem has little effect on throughput! Unless you are using ISDN, do not set the speed over 38400. If for example you have a 28.8 modem, using a speed higher than 38400 may do little more than cause errors, actually reducing throughput. Using a speed close to the modem speed will offer the best performance. Since 'Send Job' automatically compresses the data in software, the hardware compression available in many modems will have little effect.*

4 If you are experiencing high error rates when using ZMODEM2, it may be because the modem is not performing proper 'flow control.' ZMODEM2 assumes that the flow control is functioning properly. Try switching to ZMODEM, which has a sliding delay error timeout, or YMODEM, which does its own flow control. The throughput will not be as high as is possible with ZMODEM2, but transfers will be more reliable.

General information

1 Many file transfer applications do not reliably report actual throughput or error rates. If the throughput rate is not what you expect, or if the error rate seems high, it may simply be because more reliable data is being displayed.

2 Sever activity may impact error rates and throughput. If the server you are dialing is extremely busy, errors may be generated.

3 'Send job' has the option to compress files before transmission. The compression can be as high as 50%, meaning that if you are sending 1 megabyte of data, it may be compressed to as little as 500kb. When observing transfer rates in ApModem, keep in mind that the actual data rate may be twice the value shown if compression is enabled.

My modem won't connect

1 Check that modem is connected and powered on.

2 Check that the proper communications port is selected.

3 Check that the proper modem type is selected.

4 Check that a reasonable speed is selected.

5 Check that the proper phone number is in the script file and that the required dial prefix is displayed in the 'Settings' dialog.

6 For 16-bit Windows installations, check that the 'Dial String' in the 'Edit Strings' dialog is correct. The default specifies touch-tone (ATDT) dialing but you may need to use pulse (ATDP) dialing instead.

▼ **If all the above appear to be OK, and the modem still won't connect, try the following:**

1 Try another communications package such as Windows Terminal or Hyperterminal, and verify that it works. If it doesn't, check your hardware, cables, and modem.

2 Lower the modem's speed to 9600, and try again. If this works, try higher speeds until communications fail.

3 On 16-bit Windows installations: Change the 'Modem Type' to 'Generic Modem'. This modem type's initialization string does a simple hardware reset and nothing more.

4   On 16-bit Windows installations: If the previous setting does not work, change the 'Modem Type' to 'Hayes Compatible 9600'. This modem type's initialization does some minor initialization. As with all modem types, the speed indicated (9600 baud here) does not actually impact the actual connect speed.

5   If the other communications package worked, use the modem initialization strings from the other package for ApModem.

I can't log in

1   Review your login script. Ensure that the proper user names and passwords are supplied. Nothing other than the phone number, names, and password should have been modified. The script file does contain some odd looking items (for example, 'ame' where you might expect 'Name') and these should not be modified. Also, there should in all cases be only a single space following the script keyword. For example, there must be one and only one space following 'DIAL' and before the phone number. Also, all keywords must be capitalized.

2   Connect to the server using Windows Terminal or Hyperterminal and manually log in using the values contained in the script. You should also see that the prompts match the strings following the 'WAITFOR'.

3   If everything looks correct, try increasing the RETRY and TIMEOUT values.

I get errors when transferring

1 If you are only getting a few errors, and everything recovers, there is no need for concern.

2 Ensure that your modem is set at a 'reasonable' speed. On Windows 3.1 without the 'High Speed Driver', this is, at most, 19200, and may be lower if the PC contains a 386 or 486, or low performance UARTS (8250). For Windows NT and Windows 95, the speed should be, at most, one step above the modem speed (for example, 38400 for a 28800 modem).

3 See if errors occur when running Windows Terminal or Hyperterminal. Test by transferring a large file. If the errors still occur, you may have either a hardware problem, or a noisy phone line.

4 Try lowering the speed to 9600 or lower, and see if the errors diminish. Increase the speed until the errors re-occur, and then back down one speed.

5 If errors start occurring when about 20000 to 30000 bytes havebeen transferred, there may be a flow control problem between the PC and modem. This is a particular problem with PCMCIA modems. Using the manual that came with the modem, examine the modem initialization strings in the 'Edit Strings' dialog (16-bit Windows installations) and ensure that hardware flow control (RTS) is enabled. You can also try disabling modem compression. Additionally, for 16-bit Windows installations, you can try selecting a different 'Modem Type'. Start with 'Hayes Generic 9600', or another modem in the same family as your actual modem (for example, If you have a USR modem, try another USR modem). If the problem still persists, change the file transfer type to YMODEM.

Chapter 26
ApFTP: Remote Client

This chapter describes the FTP (File Transfer Protocol) program, ApFTP. You can use ApFTP to transfer Repro Desk jobs from a remote system to a central server. ApFTP can communicate with a central server using either a direct network connection, or Windows Dial Up Networking (RAS).

Introduction

You can use ApFTP to transfer Repro Desk jobs from a remote system to a central Repro Desk server. ApFTP communicates via either a direct network connection, or through Windows Dial Up Networking (RAS). ApFTP can only be used on Windows 95 and Windows NT 4.0 (or later).

If you plan on using RAS (Remote access service) with ApFTP, please refer to your Windows documentation or information provided by your Internet Service Provider (ISP) for configuration details. All support questions concerning RAS should be directed to either Microsoft or your ISP. Prior to installing ApFTP, verify that your RAS connection is working correctly using another program, such as Netscape Navigator or Microsoft Internet Explorer.

Note: *ApFTP is not complete FTP implementation. ApFTP can only send files, and all files are sent in binary mode. ApFTP is specifically designed to transfer Repro Desk job files in the most efficient manner possible.*

This chapter is intended to document ApFTP for administration and problem diagnosis.

To a Repro Desk Remote user, ApFTP is generally transparent after initial configuration. When a Remote user sends a job via ApFTP from Repro Desk Remote using the 'Send job' button, a simple status dialog is displayed. The status dialog includes information on the file transfer progress. An example ApFTP status dialog is shown below:

[340] ApFTP status dialog

If ApFTP encounters an error during file transfer, the main ApFTP window is opened and will contain more details on the nature of the failure. The main window also allows access to ApFTP configuration, as well as 'manual' functions.

The figure below shows the ApFTP main window:


```
ApFtp

File  Communications  Help

14:08:08 Auto process of command line: C:\TEMP\ZIP.LOG
14:08:08 Connecting to FTP Server.. Please wait
14:08:08 Starting FTP Server connect to pc2-tdb.oce.nl for Wieger
14:08:08 Resolving name: pc2-tdb.oce.nl
14:08:08 Resolved: 134.188.160.83
14:08:08 Connecting
14:08:08 Connected
14:08:08 Sending Request
14:08:08 Request Sent
14:08:08 Sending Request
14:08:08 Request Sent
14:08:08 Got latest.num file from server!
14:08:09 Creating Directory 00000016 on server
14:08:09 Changing to Directory 00000016 on server
14:08:09 Sending C:\OCERD4.2BETA\STANDARD.PEN to Server as STANDARD.PEN
14:08:09 Elapsed Time 00:00:00
14:08:09 Sending P:\PLOTS\LONG\VW_CHINA.TIF to Server as VW_CHINA.TIF
14:08:10 Elapsed Time 00:00:01
14:08:10 ** ERROR ** Command canceled
14:08:12 Terminating FTP Server Connection
```

[341] ApFTP main window

Note: *To open the ApFTP window, go to Start menu/Programs/Repro Desk/ApFTP.*

Menu selections

You can make the following menu selections:

File

Send one This selection is available only when connected to a server and allows for the transmission of a single file.

Send many When you choose this command after connecting to a server, you are presented with a dialog that will let you choose a 'file of files'. This 'file of files' is a text file listing the fully qualified paths to the actual files you want to transmit. For example if you specify a file which contains the following 5 lines, the 5 files specified will get transmitted. This 'file of files' gets generated when 'Send Job' is performed. Typically, 'Send Many' is used for debugging purposes, and the file specified would be the 'zip.log' file created when sending a job.

```
C:\PM\STANDARD.PEN
C:\VIC\5002-A1.VIC
P:\SAMPLES\5002-A1.VIC
C:\VIC\5002-A2.VIC
C:\TEMP\JOB1.JOB
```

Display log Displays the current log file. If you have not activated logging before, an error is displayed indicating that the log file could not be found.

Exit Exits ApFTP. Disconnects from the server if required.

Communications

Retry request If ApFTP was started with a 'command line option' (as is the case when it is invoked by the 'Send Job' button in Repro Desk), and the request fails, this option is enabled. By selecting 'Retry Request', the failed request can be retried.

Connect This command command causes ApFTP to connect to the server. If ApFTP is configured to use RAS, the modem will be dialed and a connection established.

Disconnect Once connected to the server, this option will disconnect from that server. If ApFTP is configured to use RAS, the modem will disconnect.

Send one This selection is available only when you are *not* connected to a server. It will connect to a server, transfer one file, and then disconnect from the server.

Send many This selection is available only when you are *not* connected to a server. It will connect to a server, transfer multiple files specified in a 'file of files,' and then disconnect from the server.

Settings Selecting the settings command from the communications menu brings up the Configure ApFTP communications dialog:

[342] Configure ApFTP communication setttings

The following settings are available in this dialog:

■ Host name
  This is the name of the FTP server to which ApFTP will connect. The host name can be specified as an Internet Protocol (IP) address, a simple host name, or a fully resolved host name including domain.

■ User login

This is the user name ApFTP will use to login to the FTP server. The default name is 'anonymous'.

■ Password

This is the password associated with the User Login name. If you are using 'anonymous' as your user login, you should specify your email address as the password. The default value is <username>@<company>.

Note: *The Diskette Customizer included with Repro Desk Server can also be used to configure the host name, user login, and password settings.*

■ Change to directory
■ FTP to queue

If this box is checked, ApFTP creates a numbered directory on the FTP server for each new transfer session. If the FTP server is also the Print server, or if the FTP server is visible as a 'mapped drive' to the Print Server, this option should be enabled, and a Repro Desk queue should be created which uses the FTP root directory as the queue directory.

■ Show extra status

If this box is checked, additional information is displayed while ApFTP is communicating with either a modem or a server. If 'Log to File' is checked, this additional information is also written to the log file.

■ Log to file

If this box is checked, all message which display in the main ApFTP window are also saved to a file. The file is located in the ApFTP program directory, and is named 'apftp.log'.

■ Use passive transfer

Whether or not this option should be enabled depends upon the configuration of your internet firewall. Consult your network system administrator for configuration instructions. This item is available only if the 'Use Proxy Server' box is checked.

■ Use dialup networking

This box should be checked if you will be using RAS to connect to a FTP Server. This item is available only if RAS is installed on your system; otherwise, it is grayed out.

Note: *RAS (Remote access service) configuration should be verified by another product (for example, Netscape or Internet Explorer). ApFTP itself can not verify that RAS is properly installed.*

- Connection Name

  This is the specific Dial Up Networking connection ApFTP will use to connect to a server. The RAS connection must have been defined using the Windows RAS configuration utilities. This option is only available if the 'Use Dialup Networking' box is checked.
- Internet login

  This is the login name used with RAS to connect to your ISP. It is not the same as the logon used for the FTP server. This item is available only if the 'Use Dialup Networking' box is checked.
- Internet password

  This is the password used with RAS to connect to your ISP. It is not the same as the password used for the FTP server. This item is available only if the 'Use Dialup Networking' box is checked.
- Disconnect when done

  When Done Check this box if you want ApFTP to automatically drop the RAS connection when a transfer is complete. This item is available only if the 'Use Dialup Networking' box is checked.
- Use proxy server

  Check this box if you connect to FTP resources using a proxy server. When Use proxy server is enabled, the three options below are available.

Note: *For help with configuring proxy server settings, please consult your network system administrator.*

- Proxy host

  Enter the name of your proxy server. The Proxy Host name can be specified as an Internet Protocol (IP) address, a simple host name, or a fully resolved host name including domain This item is available only if the 'Use Proxy Server' box is checked.
- Proxy port

  Enter the port number of the proxy server providing FTP services. This item is available only if the 'Use Proxy Server' box is checked.

Server setup

If you plan on using a computer running Windows NT 4.0 as your FTP server (recommended), you should use either the 'Microsoft Peer Web Server' provided with NT Workstation, or the 'Microsoft Internet Server' provided with NT Server as your FTP server software, rather than the FTP service included with the Microsoft 'Simple TCP/IP Services'. The 'Simple TCP/IP Services' FTP software provides little or no security, and is actually harder to configure. The general steps for configuring a Windows NT-based FTP server are outlined below:

▼ **Configure a computer for FTP access**

1 Make sure the computer is connected to network and that TCP/IP services are correctly configured.
2 Install the appropriate FTP server software:
3 'Microsoft Peer Web Server' if you are using NT Workstation
4 'Microsoft Internet Server' if you are using NT Server
5 Configure your FTP server software. You need to consider the following points:
6 Will you be using anonymous FTP? If not, you'll need to create a user account for FTP transfers.
7 Will all remote users use the same login? If not, you'll have to create multiple user accounts.
8 Finally, you must configure a destination FTP directory and create a Repro Desk queue that points to that directory.

Note: *For specific information on configuring FTP services, please refer to the Microsoft documentation appropriate to your server software. You may also have to contact your ISP or network system administrator for more specific TCP/IP configuration information.*

Create customized diskettes

The Diskette Customizer utility is included with Repro Desk Server. The Diskette Customizer can be used by a reprographer to generate an ApFTP configuration and can write that configuration information to a client's Repro Desk Remote diskette. To use the Diskette Customizer to generate a set of Remote disks, double-click the Diskette Customizer icon in the Repro Desk program group or folder. The following dialog is displayed:

[343] Disk Customizer window

▼   **To create a custom ApFTP diskette**

 1 Verify that 'Customize for ApFTP' is checked and fill in the following fields:
     ■ Enter the domain name of your FTP server (e.g 'ftp.reprographer.com') in the 'Your FTP Server' field. Alternatively, you can enter your IP address in this field.
     ■ Enter your client's login ID in the 'FTP User ID' field.
     ■ Enter your client's password in the 'FTP Password' field.
 2 Click the 'Continue' button. The Diskette Customizer will ask you for the location of apmodem.scr. Select apmodem.scr from disk one of your installation floppies and click OK. The ApFTP information will be saved to the disk.

Command line options

ApFTP supports several command-line options. If any command line option is specified, only the 'status' dialog rather than the ApFTP main window. If there is an error when transferring a file, the main ApFTP window will open, displaying the details of the problem. The problem can then be corrected, and the request can be retried by selecting Retry Request from the Communications menu.

ApFtp <filename> The <filename> specifies a 'file of files', a file containing a list of filenames, with one filename per line. Each file specified in the 'file of files' is sent to the server. Please see "Send many" on page 472 for more details on configuring a 'file of files'.

ApFtp -s<filename> Send the single file specified by <filename> to the server.

ApFtp -c Open ApFTP's 'settings' dialog. This is used during setup/installation.

ApFtp -u<username> -p<password> -h<hostname> You can use the -u, -p, and -h options to specify a different username, password, and hostname other than those used in 'jobcomm.ini.' The following example starts ApFTP and connects to the host 'megaserver' using the username, 'cartman' and the password, 'visitors':

```
apftp.exe -ucartman -pvisitors -hmegaserver
```

Chapter 27
Supported RCF commands

This chapter contains all Remote Control Format commands supported by Océ Repro Desk.

Introduction

Some clients may already be using (Océ) applications that produce RCF commands. Therefore Océ Repro Desk includes support for RCF output.

More information about RCF can be found in the Océ Remote Control Format Reference Manual.

RCF commands

You will find a list of all Océ Repro Desk 4.25 supported RCF commands below.

Appldata 001 Pen attributes

Pens:

Pen number (PN)

Pen width (PW)

Pen patterns (PP)

Transparency (TR)

Appldata 002 Job parameters

Copies (CO)

Job identification (JI)

Account identification (AI)

User identification (UI)

Appldata 003 Transformations

X zoom (XS)

Y zoom (YS)

Note: *X zoom and Y zoom must be the same. Last zoom specified will be used.*

Mirror (MI) -

Note: *Only X-axis mirroring (rotate for y-axis mirroring)*

Rotation (RO)

Autozoom (AS)

Autorotate(AR)

Legend correction (LC)

Note: *LC maps to 180 degrees rotation*

Enhanced scale (ES)

Shift up (SU)

Note: *Cannot be used with image alignment*

Shift down (SD)

Shift left (SL)

Shift right (SR)

Appldata 020 Stamp

Stamp selection (SS)

String number (SN)

Position (PO)

Font size (FS)

Gray scale (GS)

Note: *Changes will take effect for entire job (set).*

Appldata 021 Media selection

Paper format (PF)

Note: *Per drawing.*

Media (ME)

Note: *Per drawing.*

Auto format (AF)

Note: *Only affects processing of non-raster data.*

Bypass (by)

Roll number (RN)

Roll selection (RS)

Note: *Some changes will take effect for entire job (set).*
- Media is per sheet
- Paper size is per sheet
- Everything else is per job.

Appldata 022 Finishing

Fold options (FO)

Fold method (FM)

Note: *Folding settings are per drawing.*

Length (LE)

Width (WI)

Binding edge (BE)

Appldata 023 Delivery

Deposit (DE)

Output device (OU)

Bin number (BN)

Jogging (JO)

Note: *Depositing and High Capacity Stacker delivery is per drawing.*

Appldata 025 Framing

Framing mode (FM)

Area X (AX)

Area Y (AY)

Area width (AW)

Area height (AH)

Note: *Maps to 'Crop inside' & 'Crop outside'.*

Appldata 029 Image alignment

Left right alignment (LR)

Top bottom alignment (TB)

Note: *No support for independent X and Y centering*

Appldata 056 ASCII parameters

Font size (FS)

Note: *Font size may be any size.*

Top margin (TM)

Bottom margin (BM)

Left margin (LM)

Right margin (RM)

Orientation (OR)

Note: *Océ Repro Desk handles character spacing, line spacing, rotation and true type font name which is not in RCF.*

Special remarks

Auto rotate and auto paper detect settings

If either autorotate or autopapersize is turned on for an RCF file, the settings will NOT remain permanently on. The settings take hold temporarily and override the job defaults.

This applies to queuing only. Manually printing RCFs can override the RCF settings, but it will not change the job defaults.

Optional RCF override

When Repro Deskis in job-mode, the main menu will contain an option to ignore all information in RCF headers. This setting is used for all jobs, so it is not possible to have one job open where all RCF headers are ignored and one job where the information from RCF headers is used.

Priority of RCF versus other settings

Note: *The following description is for the case when "Ignore RCF Headers" is NOT selected.*

The general guideline for manipulating files goes like this: The "closer" the information is to the file, the higher precendence it has. So, we come up with this order:

1 RCF header
2 Polling queue settings
3 Job settings (sending through a job is a different path than through a polling queue, so it is tied for second).
4 Queue settings

There are exceptions to this general structure, though. If an RCF file is added to a job and the file is processed to a VIC, the RCF information will populate the job settings and finishing properties (such as the folding settings) for that file. If those settings are edited after the RCF file has been converted to a VIC, the new settings will take precedence over the RCF settings.

If an RCF file is sent to a queue or a polling queue, the RCF information will take precedence over the queue or polling queue information.

For example, when an RCF file that contains folding instructions is sent to a queue (or placed in a polling queue) that is set to "Don't Fold", the file will still be folded according to the RCF instructions.

Now, when a file with RCF folding on is printed directly and the "folding tab" is activated in the finishing properties, then the settings in the finishing properties will take precedence (either to fold or not fold).

Chapter 28
Supported OJT commands

This chapter contains all Océ Job Ticket commands supported by Océ Repro Desk.

océ

Introduction

Some clients may already be using (Océ) applications that produce OJT commands. Therefore Océ Repro Desk includes support for job tickets.

Océ Job Ticket commands

The Océ Job Ticket (OJT) is supported up till version 1.1.

You will find a list of all OJT commands supported by Océ Repro Desk 4.25 below.

Supported commands	Remarks
Account	Maps to Job Info=>Account Number
ASCII	No support for bottom and right margin
Collate	Maps to Digital Collation
Comment	
Copies (per Job)	Maps to Set Count and JobInfo=>Add'l Count
Copies (per Drawing)	Maps to number of copies per drawing
CutMethod	Always cuts to drawing size (Synchro-Cut)
Distribution	Maps to JobInfo=>Additional Instructions
Fold	
JobCollate	
JobName	Maps to Job Info=>Project
MediaType	
MediaFeed	Always maps to next larger size. Supports manual feed
Mirror	
Notes	Maps to Special Instructions
OutputSize	
Pens	
Punch	
Rotate	Only 0/90/180/270 degrees
Shift	
Stamp	Only supports three positions
UserName	Maps to Job Info=>Contact

Autorotate and autopaper detect settings

If either autorotate or autopapersize is turned on for a job ticket, the settings will NOT remain permanently on. The settings take hold temporarily and override the job defaults.

This applies to queuing only. Manually printing job tickets can override the job ticket settings, but it will not change the job defaults.

Chapter 29
Key Operator Settings

Introduction

The Configuration Manager offers a graphical interface to let the printer, scanner and optional units communicate with each other and to control which dialog boxes, tabs and controls display in Repro Desk for end users.
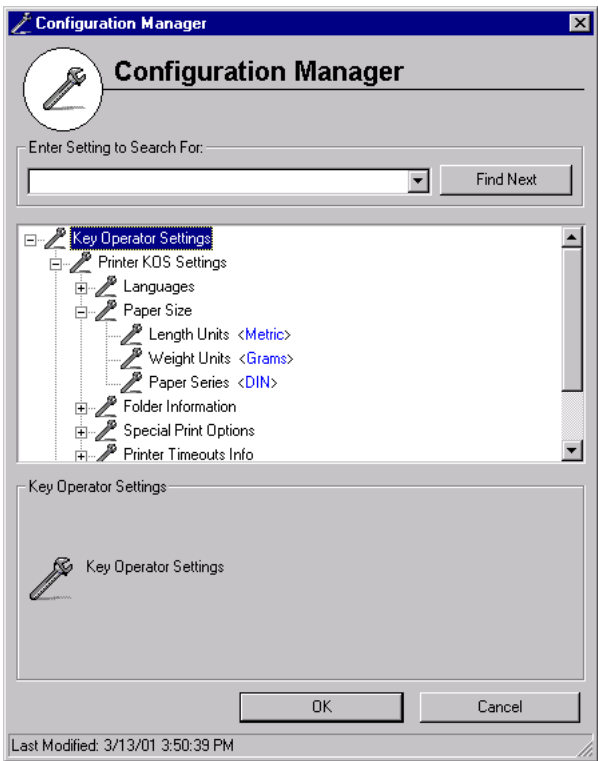
[344] Configuration manager - Key operator settings

Repro Desk does not autodetect most settings. They must be entered or verified.

Note: *The Key Operator password is required.*

Key operator settings in the Configuration Manager

The key operator settings are grouped into the following sections in the Configuration Manager:

System configuration Contains the system configuration that is sent to the scanner and/or printer at system power-up. Includes System setup, Optional information and Counting subsections.

Printer KOS settings This interface is sent after power up and after committing changes of KOS settings on the controller. Includes Languages, Paper size, Folder information, Special print options, Printer timeouts and Contact information subsections.

Scanner KOS settings This interface is sent after the power up and after committing changes of KOS settings on the controller. Includes Zoom steps, Zoom correction, Zooming methods and Scanner timeouts subsections.

System Configuration

System setup	Purpose		Notes
Controller GUI	Set this to indicate whether a controller Graphical User Interface (and keyboard) is present.		Always set this to Yes for the TDS800.
Scanner	Set this to indicate what type of scanner is present.		
Printer	Set this to indicate what type of printer is present.		
Controller	Set this to indicate what type of controller is present.		

[345] System Setup settings

Optional information	Purpose		Notes
Folder	Set this to indicate whether a folding unit is present.		
Reinforcement present	Set this to indicate whether a reinforcement unit is present.		
Horizontal receiving tray	Set to indicate whether a horizontal receiving tray is present.		Always set this to Yes for the TDS800.
High capacity stacker	Set this to indicate whether a high capacity stacking unit (HCS) is present.		
Long print escape	Set this to indicate whether a long-print escape is present.		
Punching present	Set this to indicate whether a punching unit is present.		
Number of belts	Set this to indicate the configured number of available deposit belts.		Always set this to 0 or 1 for the Océ 9600. For the TDS800, it can be 0 or 1 or 2.
Customer finishing unit	Set this to indicate whether a customer finishing unit is present		
Scan to file	Set this to indicate whether the scan to file option is present.		
Original delivery tray	Set this to indicate whether an original delivery tray is present.		

[346] Optional Info settings

Counting	Purpose	Notes
Counting meth-od	Set this to indicate the printer's count-ing method.	Choose Linear Meters, Square Meters, Linear Feet or Square Feet.

[347] Counting settings

Printer KOS settings

Languages	Purpose	Notes
First language	Set this to indicate the primary language used.	Choose 1=Dutch, 2= UK English, 3=German, 4=French, 5=US English, 6=Spanish, 7=Danish, 8=Italian, 9=Swedish, 10=Norwegian, 11=Finn-ish, 12=Portuguese, 13=Polish, 14=Hungarian or 15=Czech.
Second lan-guage	Set this to indicate the second language.	If this is different than the first lan-guage, the scanner panel will display it as an option. Press the button to switch to this language.

[348] Language settings

Paper size	Purpose	Notes
Length units	Set this to indicate whether length measures must be expressed in milli-meters or inches. This applies to the user interface only.	Choose mm or inch-es.
Weight units	Set this to indicate whether weights must be expressed in grams or pounds. This applies to the material weights displayed on the user interface only.	Choose grams or pounds.
Paper series	Set this to indicate the used paper-se-ries range.	Choose DIN, DIN Carto, 8.5", 8.5 or 9 inch or JISB.

[349] Paper size settings

Folder - Packet information	Purpose	Notes
Packet width	Set this to indicate the width of the folded packet.	Choose a number between 1860 and 2300. (0.1 mm units). The default value depends on the paper series selected.
Packet length	Set this to indicate the length of the folded packet.	Choose a number between 2760 and 3100 pixels. The default value depends on the paper series selected.
Binding value	Set this to indicate the width of the binding strip.	Choose a number between 150 and 300. (0.1 mm units)
Binding selected	Set this to indicate whether a binding edge is selected when a print is folded.	

[350] Folder information - Packet information settings

Special fold options	Purpose	Notes
Punching selected	Set this to indicate whether a folded print will be punched.	
Reinforcement selected	Set this to indicate whether reinforcement is selected.	
Legend edge	Set this to define the position of the legend. This information is used to select the appropriate folding program.	Choose Leading edge or Trailing edge.
Fold delivery information	Set this to indicate the delivery destination when the folder is selected.	Choose First Fold Exit, Stack, Belt 1, Belt 2 or (Either) Belt.
Folding method	Set this to indicate the folding method.	Choose DIN, Afnor or Ericsson.

[351] Folder information - Special fold options

Special print options	Purpose	Notes
Number of sheets on belt	Set this to indicate the number of sheets that can be delivered to the belt after the belt sensor has been activated.	Choose a number between 5 and 100.
Reinforce A4	Set this to indicate whether reinforcement should be applied to A4 sheets.	
Off-line folding	Set this to indicate whether off-line folding is allowed. The folding entry will appear on the printer panel's off-line settings menu.	
Special media	Set this to indicate whether special materials can be configured. The Special input field in the printer panel's off-line settings menu will disappear.	Choose Yes or No and check the media information in the printer to see if it must be updated and passed on to the controller.
Sheet length compensation	Set this to compensate for a cutting length deviation. The amount will be added to the specified print length.	Choose a number between -200 to 200 (0.1mm units)
Print mode	Together with the pdl (printer description language) type and original type, the actual printing mode is determined by the printer.	Choose Standard, Lines of text, Poster, Original, No bitmap, 1 to 1 plot or Test plot.

[352] Special print options settings

Printer timeout information	Purpose	Notes
Sleep mode timeout	The scanner will enter sleep mode after the specified time has expired. The timer restarts upon any user activity.	Choose a number between 1 and 120 minutes.
Panel timeout	Set the amount of time after which the settings will return to their default values. The timer restarts upon any user activity.	Choose a number between 0 and 600 seconds.

[353] Printer timeout information settings

Contact information	Purpose	Notes
Telephone number	Type the telephone number that should be called in case of a severe error.	Type up to 30 characters.

[354] Contact information settings

Scanner KOS Settings

Zoom steps	Purpose	Notes
Enlarge step 1	Set the Zoom steps for greater than 100% for console setting. The values must be in increasing order. Define non-used values as the maximum value.	The scanner will add the maximum zoom to the reduction step if the largest (last) value is smaller than the maximum.
Enlarge step 2, 3, 4	Same as above	Same as above.
Reduce step 1	Set the Zoom step for less than 100% for the console setting.	Same as above.

[355] Zoom steps settings

Zoom correction	Purpose	Notes
Horizontal zoom correction	Set this to 0 in most cases. A negative value means that the image will be reduced. A positive value means that the image will be enlarged in the specified direction. It can be used for shrink compensation.	
Vertical zoom correction	Set this to 0 in most cases.	

[356] Zoom correction settings

Zooming methods	Purpose	Notes
Page fit method	Set this to indicate the behavior of the automatic media selection feature on the scanner panel.	Choose Exact Fit, Next Larger, Next Smaller, or Best Fit.
Auto zoom method	Restricts the behavior of the automatic zoom feature on the scanner panel.	Choose Scale to Fit, Shrink to Fit or 100 Percent.

[357] Zooming methods settings

Scanner timeout information	Purpose	Notes
Original alignment timeout	Set the amount of inactivity time during which the user is able to deskew an original.	Choose a number from 500 to 10,000 milliseconds.
Sleep mode timeout	Set the amount of inactivity time after which the scanner will enter sleep mode.	Choose a number from 0 to 120 minutes.
Set timeout	Close the possible pending open set on the scanner after this timeout expires. 0 = Set timeout is disabled.	Choose a number from 0 to 600 seconds.
Panel timeout	All settings as well as the selected language will return to their default values after the specified time has expired. This timer is restarted upon any user activity.	Choose a number from 0 to 600 seconds.
Autofeed timeout	Cancel automatic feed mode after this timeout.	Choose a number from 0 to 600 seconds.

[358] Scanner timeouts information settings

Configuration Manager settings

Configuration Manager	Purpose	Notes
Maximum history of past Finds	Set this to indicate how many previous searches will show up in the drop-down list in the Repro Desk Configuration Manager user interface.	Choose a number from 0 to 20.
Find History	View-only.	
Left, Top, Right and Bottom	View-only.	

[359] Configuration Manager settings

Appendix A
Miscellaneous

How to read this manual

The consistent style that is used in this manual enables you to quickly become familiar with the use of this manual and ultimately the Océ Repro Desk.

Description Each section or subsection contains a description of the feature or operation identified in the title. It might also include possible applications, as well as any guidelines that you should bear in mind.

Procedures A description is followed by a procedure. A procedure always begins with a phrase which briefly describes the procedure, followed by a series of numbered steps that take you, step by step, through all phases of performing the operation.

Figures and tables Figures and tables are titled and numbered sequentially throughout this manual. Figures include pictures of product components, screen dumps, examples, and diagrams of concepts discussed in the description.

Attention getters There are several types of information to which we draw your attention. This information is classified as follows:

Note: *In a 'Note', information is given about matters which ensure the proper functioning of the machine or application, but useful advice concerning its operation may also be given.*

Attention: *The information that follows 'Attention' is given to avoid damage to your copy or original, the copier or printer, data files, etc.*

Caution: *The information that follows 'Caution' is given to prevent you suffering personal injury. .*

User survey

Did you find this manual to be accurate?
- ❏ Yes
- ❏ No

Were you able to operate the product after reading this manual?
- ❏ Yes
- ❏ No

Does this manual provide adequate background information?
- ❏ Yes
- ❏ No

Is the format of this manual convenient in size, easy to read and layed out well?
- ❏ Yes
- ❏ No

Did you find the information you were looking for?
- ❏ Always
- ❏ Most of the times
- ❏ Sometimes
- ❏ Not at all

How did you find the information you were looking for?
- ❏ Table of contents
- ❏ Index
- ❏ Neither

Are you satisfied with this manual?
- ❏ Yes
- ❏ No

Thank you for evaluating this manual.
If you have any other comments or concerns, please explain them on the following page.

Comments:

Date:

This reader's comment sheet is completed by:

Name (optional):

Occupation:

Company:

Phone:

Address:

City:

Country:

Please return this sheet to:

Océ-Technologies B.V.
Attn: ITC-User Documentation
P.O. Box 101
5900 MA Venlo
The Netherlands

Send you comments by E-mail to: itc-userdoc@oce.nl

For the addresses of local Océ organizations see: www.oce.com

Addresses of local Océ organizations

Océ-Australia Ltd.
P.O.Box 363
Ferntree Gully MDC VIC 3165
Australia

Océ-Österreich GmbH
Postfach 95
1233 Vienna
Austria

Océ-Belgium N.V./S.A.
Avenue J.Bordetlaan 32
1140 Brussels
Belgium

Océ-Brasil Comércio e Industria Ltda.
Caixa Postal 3187
01060-970 Sao Paulo, SP
Brazil

Océ-Canada Inc.
4711 Yonge Street, Suite 1100
Toronto, Ontario M2N 6K8
Canada

Océ Office Equipment (Beijing) Co Ltd.
Xu Mu Cheng
Chaoyang District
Beijing 100028
China

Océ-Èeská republika s.r.o.
Hanusova 18
14021 Praha 4
Pankrác,
Czech Republic

Océ-Danmark A.S.
Kornmarksvej 6
DK 2605 Brøndby
Denmark

Océ-France S.A.
32, Avenue du Pavé Neuf,
93161 Noisy-le-grand, Cedex
France

Océ-Deutschland GmbH
Postfach 101454
4330 Mülheim an der Ruhr (13)
Deutschland

Océ (Hong Kong China) Ltd.
12/F 1202 The Lee Gardens
33 Hysan Avenue, Causeway Bay
Hong Kong

Océ-Hungária Kft.
P.O.B. 237
1241 Budapest
Hungary

Océ-Italia S.p.A.
Strada Padana Superiore 2/B
20063 Cernusco sul Naviglio (MI)
Italia

Océ Systems (Malaysia Sdn. Bhd.)
#3.01, Level 3, Wisma Academy
Lot 4A, Jalan 19/1
46300 Petalig Jaya
Malaysia

Océ-Nederland B.V.
P.O.Box 800
5201 AV 's-Hertogenbosch
The Netherlands

Océ Norge A/S
Postboks 53, Grefsen
0409 Oslo 4
Norway

Océ-Poland Ltd.
ul. £opuszañska 53
02-232 Warszawa
Poland

Océ-Lima Mayer S.A.
Av. José Gomes Ferreira, 11
Ed. Atlas II Miraflores
1495 Algés
Portugal

Océ (Far East) Pte. Ltd./
Océ (Singapore) Pte. Ltd.,
#03-00 Wisma Gulab
190 MacPherson Road
Singapore 348548

Océ España SA
Business Park MAS BLAU
C/Osona 2, 2-3a Planta
08820 El Prat del Llobregat (Barcelona)
Spain

Océ-Svenska AB
P.O.box 1231
S-164 28 Kista
Sweden

Océ-Schweiz AG
Sägereistrasse 29
CH8152 Glattbrugg
Switzerland

Océ (Taiwan) Ltd.
No. 99-24 Nan Kang Road Sec.2
Taipeh, Taiwan
Taiwan, RO

Océ (Thailand) Ltd.
16th Floor, B.B. Building
54 Asoke Road, Sukhumvit 21
Bangkok 10110
Thailand

Océ-U.K.Ltd.
Langston Road
Loughton, Essex IG10 3SL
United Kingdom

Océ-USA Inc.
5450 North Cumberland Av.
Chicago, Ill. 60656
U.S.A.

Index

Type of media for accounting   358